

# 现代英语功能 意念表达形式

赵俊英 著



PDG

广西教育出版社

# 现代英语功能 意念表达形式

赵俊英 著

广西教育出版社

# 现代英语功能意念表达形式

赵俊英 著



广西教育出版社出版

(南宁市民族大道88号)

广西新华书店发行 广西民族印刷厂印刷

\*

开本 850×1168 1/32 20 印张 插页 2 470 千字

1992年10月第1版 1992年10月第1次印刷

印数：1—1,000册

ISBN 7-5435-1651-9/H·49 定价：9.00元

(桂)新登字05号

## 前 言

多年来，在公共英语课教学中，我们注重了词汇与语法教学，但对按功能意念的不同表达形式，以及如何运用不同的句型和多种表达方法来表达同一功能和意念，把培养学生运用语言的准确性与灵活性结合起来，不断提高学生使用英语的流利程度做的还不够。本书正是从这一基本点出发，根据《大学英语教学大纲》中《功能意念》表的要求，对其中十二种常用的功能意念的各种表达形式，通过大量的例句，分析和比较，进行了较详细的论述。

全书共收入了近千个单词和短语。在编写过程中，特别注意到目前我国高等院校公共英语课教学的要求和需要，从我国学生学习英语的角度出发，对于每种功能意念的各种表达形式以及同一功能意念的多种不同表达方法，尽可能进行归纳和对照比较，以帮助学生掌握和理解各种不同表达形式和句型，并能区别类似现象，从而做到正确运用，提高语言表达能力和交际能力。但唯限于水平，缺点错误之处，请批评指正。

赵俊英

1991年11月

# 目 录

## 前言

1. “时间”表示法 .....	( 1 )
1) “过去”的表示法 .....	( 1 )
(1) past .....	( 1 )
(2) in the past .....	( 1 )
(3) in those days .....	( 2 )
(4) in the old (or ancient) days / in the good old days .....	( 3 )
(5) in very early times / in ancient times .....	( 3 )
(6) long since (= long ago) .....	( 4 )
(7) some time ago .....	( 4 )
(8) a long time (while) ago .....	( 5 )
(9) ago .....	( 5 )
(10) before .....	( 6 )
(11) long before .....	( 7 )
(12) once / once upon a time .....	( 7 )
(13) at one time .....	( 8 )
(14) used to .....	( 9 )
(15) prior to .....	( 9 )
(16) previous to .....	(10)
2) “直至今现在”的表示法 .....	(11)
(1) down (up) to the present .....	(11)
(2) to date .....	(11)

(3) till (to) this day .....	(12)
(4) till now / up to now / by now .....	(12)
(5) so far / as yet .....	(13)
(6) no longer / not any longer .....	(14)
(7) since .....	(15)
(8) ever since .....	(15)
3) “现在” 表示法 .....	(16)
(1) now / right now / just now / even now .....	(16)
(2) for the time being .....	(17)
(3) at this moment (minute) .....	(18)
(4) at present / for the present .....	(18)
(5) for the moment .....	(19)
(6) at this hour (time) of the day .....	(19)
(7) nowadays .....	(19)
(8) the present day .....	(20)
(9) these days / in these days .....	(20)
(10) today .....	(20)
4) “正在” 表示法 .....	(21)
(1) the progressive tense .....	(21)
(2) at .....	(21)
(3) in .....	(22)
(4) on .....	(24)
(5) under .....	(25)
(6) be + adv. ....	(25)
(7) the present participle or participial phrase .....	(26)
(8) under way .....	(26)
(9) to be busy doing sth. ....	(26)
(10) after .....	(27)

5) “将来” 的表示法 .....	(27)
(1) to be around the corner .....	(27)
(2) to be at (on) hand .....	(28)
(3) to be near / to draw near .....	(28)
(4) get on for (to / towards) .....	(29)
(5) to be on the point (verge / brink) of doing sth .....	(29)
(6) presently .....	(30)
(7) on the way .....	(30)
(8) by and by .....	(30)
(9) after a while / in a little while .....	(30)
(10) in (the near) future .....	(31)
(11) sooner or later / soon or late .....	(32)
(12) in...days (weeks / months / years) / in...weeks' (months' / years') time .....	(32)
(13) in time .....	(33)
(14) before long .....	(34)
(15) from now on .....	(34)
(16) soon .....	(35)
(17) the simple future tense .....	(35)
A. will / shall .....	(35)
B. be to + inf .....	(35)
C. be going to + inf .....	(37)
D. be about + inf .....	(40)
(18) the simple present tense .....	(40)
(19) the present continuous tense .....	(41)
(20) the future continuous tense .....	(42)
(21) as time goes on .....	(43)

- (22) then .....(43)
- (23) later / later on .....(43)
- (24) after .....(44)
- (25) some day.....(46)
- (26) some time or other .....(46)
- (27) one day / one (some) of these days.....(47)
- (28) in the days to come .....(47)
- 6) “当时当地” “当时” 的表示法.....(47)
- (1) on the spot .....(47)
- (2) then and there .....(48)
- (3) right then .....(48)
- (4) right there .....(49)
- (5) then .....(49)
- (6) at that time (moment) / at the time .....(49)
- (7) of the time (day) .....(50)
- 7) “快” 的表示法.....(50)
- (1) at once.....(51)
- (2) right away / straight away / straight off.....(51)
- (3) like a shot .....(51)
- (4) in no time .....(52)
- (5) in a moment / in a minute / in an instant.....(52)
- (6) in the twinkling of an eye.....(52)
- (7) in the same breath .....(53)
- (8) at a (one) stroke .....(53)
- (9) immediately.....(53)
- (10) on the spur of the moment .....(54)
- (11) before you could turn round / before we know  
         where we are / before the ink is dry .....(54)



(12) at this moment .....	(55)
8) “一...就...”表示法.....	(55)
(1) as soon as .....	(55)
(2) no sooner...than.....	(56)
(3) the moment / the instant / the minute.....	(57)
(4) directly / instantly .....	(58)
(5) immediately.....	(59)
(6) hardly ... when (or before) / scarcely ... when/ barely ... when .....	(60)
(7) once .....	(61)
(8) on .....	(62)
9) “起初, 最后”表示法.....	(64)
A. “起初, 开始”表示法.....	(64)
(1) at first.....	(64)
(2) in (at) the beginning .....	(65)
(3) originally .....	(66)
(4) at the outset .....	(66)
B. “最后, 终于”表示法.....	(66)
(1) at last / at long last .....	(66)
(2) in the end .....	(67)
(3) in the long run.....	(67)
(4) at length .....	(68)
(5) finally / lastly .....	(68)
(6) in conclusion .....	(69)
10) “有时, 时而, 不时”表示法.....	(70)
(1) sometimes / sometimes...sometimes .....	(70)
(2) at times .....	(70)
(3) now and then / every now and then / now	

and again / every now and again .....	(71)
(4) now...now / now ... then .....	(71)
(5) from time to time .....	(72)
(6) once in a while.....	(73)
11) “忽然” 的表示法.....	(73)
(1) suddenly .....	(74)
(2) all of a sudden .....	(74)
(3) all at once .....	(75)
(4) on the spur of the moment.....	(75)
(5) unexpectedly .....	(76)
(6) without warning .....	(76)
(7) bring up (short) .....	(76)
(8) take up (short) .....	(77)
(9) break out.....	(77)
(10) break off .....	(78)
(11) burst into (out).....	(78)
(12) burst forth .....	(79)
12) “同时” 的表示法.....	(79)
(1) meanwhile / meantime .....	(79)
(2) in the meantime (meanwhile) .....	(79)
(3) at the same time .....	(80)
(4) at one time.....	(81)
13) “当...时候, 在.....期间” 表示法.....	(81)
(1) when .....	(81)
(2) whenever .....	(82)
(3) while .....	(83)
(4) as .....	(84)
(5) at what time .....	(84)

(6) by the time .....	( 85 )
(7) each (every) time.....	( 85 )
(8) on the point of .....	( 86 )
(9) during.....	( 87 )
14) “永远, 一直”表示法 .....	( 88 )
(1) always .....	( 88 )
(2) forever / for ever and ever .....	( 88 )
(3) all the time .....	( 89 )
(4) all along .....	( 89 )
(5) for good.....	( 90 )
(6) ever .....	( 90 )
(7) on end .....	( 90 )
(8) till / until .....	( 91 )
(9) the present perfect tense and the present perfect continuous tense.....	( 95 )
15) “在...左右”, “将近...”的表示法 .....	( 95 )
(1) about .....	( 95 )
(2) around.....	( 96 )
(3) near .....	( 96 )
(4) towards .....	( 96 )
16) “年、月、日、时、星期”表示法 .....	( 97 )
(1) in.....	( 97 )
(2) on .....	( 98 )
(3) at .....	( 99 )
(4) this morning (afternoon / evening / Sunday / Monday / week / month / year / spring, etc.) tonight .....	(101)
(5) Yesterday morning (afternoon / evening) / last	

- night / last Sunday / last month / last spring  
 /last year, etc .....(102)
- (6) tomorrow morning (afternoon / evening) / next  
 week (month / season / spring / year) / next  
 Sunday (Monday) etc.....(103)
- (7) the next (following) morning (afternoon /  
 evening / day / week / month / year, etc. ....(104)
- (8) the day before yesterday / the year (week /  
 month / night) before last.....(104)
- (9) the day after tomorrow / the year (week /  
 month) after next .....(105)
- (10) three days from now / three days ago.....(105)
- (11) this day (today) week (month, year) / this  
 day (today) fortnight / Sunday (Monday, etc.)  
 week / Sunday (Monday, etc) fortnight .....(105)
- (12) tomorrow week / tomorrow fortnight / yesterday  
 week / yesterday fortnight .....(106)
- (13) all day / all the day / all day long / all  
 night / all night long / throughout the night  
 / all the night through / all the afternoon /  
 the whole morning / day and night / throug-  
 hout the season / all the year round / throug-  
 hout the year .....(107)
- (14) from hour to hour / day after day / day by  
 day / from day to day / day in, day out /  
 day in and day out / week in week out /  
 month in month out / month after month /  
 year in year out / from year to year / year

	by year / year after year.....	(108)
(15)	every hour (day / week / month / year) / every other hour (day / week / month / year) / every three hours (days / weeks / months / years) / every few hours (days / weeks / months / years) .....	(111)
(16)	for hours (days / weeks) / for weeks and weeks / for months / for months and months / for years / for years and years / for ages .....	(112)
2.	<b>“原因”表示法</b> .....	(114)
1)	原因状语从句.....	(114)
(1)	because .....	(114)
(2)	since .....	(115)
(3)	as .....	(116)
(4)	now that .....	(118)
(5)	seeing that.....	(119)
(6)	considering that .....	(120)
(7)	not that ... but that .....	(121)
(8)	in that .....	(121)
(9)	that.....	(123)
(10)	the rather that.....	(124)
(11)	for the reason that / by reason that .....	(124)
(12)	on the ground that.....	(125)
(13)	by the means that .....	(125)
(14)	inasmuch as .....	(125)
(15)	when .....	(127)
(16)	for as much as .....	(127)
(17)	for that.....	(128)

2) 定语从句表原因.....	(128)
(1) who / whose / which / where 引导的非限定性 定语从句 .....	(128)
(2) why 引导的定语从句 .....	(129)
3) 并列结构表原因.....	(129)
(1) for .....	(129)
(2) and .....	(130)
(3) 其他并列结构 .....	(131)
4) 独立句子表原因.....	(132)
5) 介词短语.....	(133)
(1) after .....	(133)
(2) at .....	(134)
(3) between .....	(135)
(4) by .....	(136)
(5) for .....	(136)
(6) from .....	(137)
(7) in .....	(139)
(8) of .....	(139)
(9) on .....	(140)
(10) over.....	(141)
(11) to.....	(141)
(12) under .....	(141)
(13) with .....	(142)
(14) through .....	(143)
(15) because of.....	(144)
(16) due to .....	(145)
(17) owing to .....	(148)
(18) on account of .....	(150)

(19) thanks to .....	(151)
(20) on the ground of.....	(152)
(21) by virtue of / in virtue of .....	(153)
(22) by reason of.....	(154)
(23) in view of .....	(154)
(24) out of.....	(156)
(25) as a result of .....	(157)
(26) on the score of.....	(158)
(27) by dint of .....	(158)
(28) by right of .....	(159)
(29) in consequence of .....	(160)
(30) in consideration of.....	(161)
(31) in default of .....	(161)
(32) what with ... and what with / partly with... and partly with .....	(162)
(33) respecting .....	(163)
6) 动词不定式表原因.....	(163)
7) 分词(短语)表原因.....	(165)
8) 名词表原因.....	(168)
(1) cause .....	(168)
(2) reason.....	(169)
(3) ground .....	(169)
(4) root.....	(170)
(5) wherefore .....	(170)
9) 动词 + 介词.....	(170)
(1) result from .....	(170)
(2) arise from.....	(171)
(3) ascribe ... to .....	(172)

(4) attribute ... to .....	(172)
(5) refer ... to .....	(173)
(6) ensue from .....	(174)
(7) stem from .....	(174)
(8) set down ... to / put down to .....	(174)
(9) account for .....	(175)
(10) be responsible for (to).....	(176)
(11) impute to .....	(177)
(12) relate to.....	(177)
<b>3. “结果”表示法.....</b>	<b>(178)</b>
1) 状语从句表结果.....	(178)
(1) that.....	(178)
(2) so that .....	(178)
(3) so ... that .....	(180)
(4) such that .....	(183)
(5) such ... that .....	(184)
(6) with the result that .....	(186)
2) 并列句表结果.....	(187)
(1) so / and so .....	(187)
(2) therefore.....	(188)
(3) hence .....	(189)
(4) consequently .....	(189)
(5) and .....	(190)
(6) thus.....	(190)
(7) then.....	(191)
(8) accordingly .....	(191)
(9) wherefore .....	(191)
3) 介词短语表结果.....	(191)



(1) as a result (of) .....	(191)
(2) in consequence (of).....	(192)
(3) out of.....	(193)
4) 动词不定式(短语)表结果.....	(193)
(1) too.....to .....	(193)
(2) (only) + inf. ....	(194)
(3) so + adj.(adv.) + as to + v. ....	(195)
(4) such + n. + as to + v. ....	(196)
(5) such as to + v. ....	(197)
5) 分词(短语)表结果.....	(197)
6) 动词.....	(198)
(1) result in.....	(198)
(2) lead to .....	(199)
(3) lead up to .....	(200)
(4) turn out.....	(200)
(5) come of.....	(201)
(6) come off .....	(202)
(7) come out (of) .....	(202)
(8) come to .....	(202)
(9) bring about .....	(203)
(10) give rise to .....	(204)
(11) cause .....	(205)
7) 名词.....	(206)
(1) result .....	(206)
(2) effect .....	(206)
(3) consequence .....	(206)
(4) outcome .....	(207)
8) 质问因果表示法.....	(207)

(1) why.....	(207)
(2) wherefore .....	(208)
(3) how so? / why so? .....	(208)
(4) how come(s)? .....	(208)
(5) how is it that...? .....	(208)
(6) on what ground (account / score)?.....	(208)
(7) owing to what circumstances.....	(209)
(8) what...in view (mind) .....	(209)
(9) by virtue of what .....	(209)
(10) for what reason / for what purpose / from what cause.....	(209)
(11) by $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{whose} \\ \text{what} \end{array} \right\}$ authority / by what chance / by whose permission / by whose order .....	(210)
<b>4. “目的” 的表示法.....</b>	<b>(211)</b>
1) 状语从句.....	(211)
(1) that.....	(211)
(2) so that .....	(211)
(3) in order that.....	(212)
(4) for fear (that).....	(214)
(5) to the end that .....	(214)
(6) lest .....	(215)
(7) in case .....	(216)
(8) for the purpose that .....	(217)
(9) to the effect that .....	(218)
2) 并列结构表目的.....	(218)
(1) 动词 + and + 动词 .....	(218)
(2) 并列分句 .....	(219)

3) 介词短语 .....	(219)
(1) for .....	(219)
(2) for the purpose of .....	(220)
(3) for the sake of .....	(221)
(4) for the benefit of .....	(221)
(5) for the good of .....	(222)
(6) to .....	(222)
(7) against .....	(222)
(8) towards .....	(223)
(9) by way of .....	(224)
(10) with the view of / with a view to .....	(224)
(11) with an eye to .....	(225)
(12) with the aim (object) of .....	(225)
4) 名词purpose / aim / object 表目的 .....	(226)
5) 动词表目的 .....	(227)
6) 动词不定式(短语) .....	(227)
(1) to + v. ....	(227)
(2) in order to + v. ....	(228)
(3) so as to + v. ....	(229)
5. “条件” 的表示法 .....	(231)
1) 状语从句 .....	(231)
(1) if .....	(231)
(2) unless .....	(232)
(3) as long as / so long as .....	(233)
(4) as far as / so far as .....	(234)
(5) once .....	(235)
(6) supposing (suppose) that .....	(235)
(7) in case .....	(236)

(8) provided (providing) that .....	(236)
(9) on condition that .....	(237)
(10) but that .....	(238)
(11) granted (granting) that .....	(239)
(12) assuming that .....	(239)
(13) on the supposition that .....	(239)
(14) with the understanding that .....	(239)
(15) if only .....	(240)
(16) only if .....	(240)
(17) if it were not for .....	(241)
(18) what if .....	(241)
(19) while .....	(242)
(20) when .....	(242)
(21) where / wherever .....	(242)
(22) so that .....	(243)
(23) in so far as .....	(244)
(24) until .....	(244)
2) 并列句表条件 .....	(244)
(1) 祈使句 + and .....	(244)
(2) 不带连词的并列句 .....	(245)
3) 定语从句表条件 .....	(246)
4) 介词短语表条件 .....	(247)
(1) in case of .....	(247)
(2) in the event of .....	(247)
(3) but for .....	(248)
(4) without .....	(249)
(5) in the absence of .....	(249)
(6) in terms of .....	(250)

(7) as for .....	(251)
(8) as to .....	(251)
(9) in (with) regard to .....	(252)
(10) with respect to .....	(253)
(11) as regards / regarding .....	(254)
(12) with (in) reference to .....	(255)
(13) concerning .....	(255)
5) 动词不定式(短语)表条件 .....	(256)
6) 分词(短语)表条件 .....	(257)
<b>6. “方式, 方法” 的表示法 .....</b>	<b>(259)</b>
1) way .....	(259)
(1) way .....	(259)
(2) in...way .....	(259)
(3) all the way .....	(260)
(4) the way (+ clause) .....	(261)
(5) by way of .....	(261)
2) means .....	(262)
(1) by means of .....	(262)
(2) by all means .....	(263)
3) as .....	(263)
(1) as (conj.) .....	(263)
(2) as (prep.) .....	(264)
(3) as + prep. phr. ....	(265)
(4) as...so .....	(265)
(5) just as .....	(266)
(6) as if (though) .....	(267)
(7) as to .....	(268)
(8) according as .....	(269)

4) what .....	(269)
5) 介词短语.....	(270)
(1) according to .....	(270)
(2) in accordance with.....	(271)
(3) in conformity with (to) .....	(272)
(4) in compliance with.....	(272)
(5) in the light of.....	(273)
(6) in line with .....	(274)
(7) in obedience to .....	(274)
(8) by .....	(275)
(9) in .....	(276)
(10) in...manner .....	(277)
(11) on .....	(278)
(12) at .....	(278)
(13) from .....	(279)
(14) with .....	(280)
(15) after .....	(280)
(16) through .....	(281)
(17) via .....	(281)
(18) over .....	(281)
(19) per .....	(282)
(20) under .....	(282)
(21) by dint of .....	(282)
(22) to .....	(282)
(23) on the basis of .....	(283)
6) base... on .....	(284)
7) 分词(短语)作方式状语 .....	(284)
7. “比较” 的表示法 .....	(286)

- 1) “等比” 的表示法 .....(286)
- (1) as...as .....(286)
- (2) no more (or less)...than .....(287)
- (3) the same as / the same ... as .....(287)
- (4) be identical with .....(288)
- 2) “差比” 表示法 .....(288)
- (1) not so (as) ...as .....(288)
- (2) less ... than .....(289)
- (3) not the same (as) / not such...as .....(290)
- (4) behind .....(291)
- 3) “比...更” , “与...比较” 表示法 .....(291)
- (1) than .....(291)
- (2) to .....(292)
- (3) beyond .....(293)
- (4) compare with / in comparison with .....(293)
- (5) contrast with / in contrast to (or with) .....(294)
- (6) in proportion to .....(295)
- (7) against .....(295)
- (8) over .....(296)
- (9) on .....(296)
- (10) beside .....(297)
- 4) “择比” 表示法 .....(297)
- (1) had (would) rather...than / had (would) sooner...  
than .....(297)
- (2) rather than / sooner than .....(300)
- (3) prefer .....(301)
- (4) would (had) ... as soon (or lief) ... as / had as  
good ... as .....(302)

- (5) had (would) as soon .....(303)
- (6) before .....(303)
- (7) not so much...as .....(304)
- (8) more...than .....(305)
- (9) not ...but .....(306)
- 5) “相似” 的表示法 .....(306)
- (1) similar to .....(306)
- (2) like / alike .....(307)
- (3) similarly to .....(307)
- (4) resemble .....(308)
- 6) “与...一致” 的表示法 .....(308)
- (1) agree / in agreement with .....(308)
- (2) accord / in accord with / in accordance with /  
accordant with .....(309)
- (3) coincide / coincidence .....(309)
- (4) consistent / consistently / consistency .....(310)
- (5) in conformity with .....(311)
- (6) correspond with (or to) .....(311)
- (7) conform to .....(312)
- 7) “与...不同” ; “区别” 表示法 .....(312)
- (1) differ / different .....(312)
- (2) distinguish .....(313)
- (3) tell ... from (apart) .....(314)
- (4) discriminate .....(315)
- (5) discern .....(315)
- (6) other than .....(316)
- 8) “越...越” 表示法 .....(316)
- (1) Double Comparatives .....(316)



(2) the...the... .....	(317)
(3) all the more / the more .....	(318)
(4) increasingly .....	(319)
(5) each / every / day by day .....	(320)
(6) as .....	(320)
(7) cannot ... to .....	(321)
(8) in proportion to (as) .....	(322)
<b>8. “比例” 表示法 .....</b>	<b>(323)</b>
<b>1) 与...之比为 .....</b>	<b>(323)</b>
(1) the ratio of ... to / the ratio between ... and .....	(323)
(2) in proportion to / the proportion of ... to .....	(324)
<b>2) 与...成比例 .....</b>	<b>(325)</b>
(1) to be propotional to .....	(325)
(2) vary as / vary with .....	(326)
(3) in proportion to .....	(327)
(4) be proportionate to .....	(327)
<b>3) 与...成正比 .....</b>	<b>(327)</b>
(1) to be directly proportional to .....	(327)
(2) to be directly related to .....	(328)
(3) vary directly as .....	(328)
(4) vary directly with .....	(329)
(5) in proportion as .....	(329)
(6) increase with .....	(330)
(7) in direct proportion to .....	(330)
(8) as .....	(330)
(9) the...the .....	(331)

4) 与…成正比 .....	(331)
(1) to be inversely proportional to .....	(331)
(2) vary inversely as .....	(332)
(3) vary inversely with .....	(332)
(4) the...the .....	(333)
9. “让步”的表示法 .....	(334)
1) 状语从句 .....	(334)
(1) though / although .....	(334)
(2) as .....	(335)
(3) even if (though) .....	(337)
(4) whether...or .....	(338)
(5) no matter how / however .....	(339)
(6) no matter what / whatever .....	(340)
(7) no matter which / whichever .....	(341)
(8) no matter who / whoever .....	(342)
(9) no matter when / whenever .....	(342)
(10) no matter where / wherever .....	(343)
(11) no matter whether (if) .....	(344)
(12) if .....	(345)
(13) if any .....	(345)
(14) if at all .....	(346)
(15) granted (granting) that .....	(346)
(16) while .....	(346)
(17) that .....	(347)
(18) when .....	(348)
(19) so...but .....	(348)
(20) not but that .....	(349)
(21) be it ever so .....	(350)

2) 并列结构表让步意义 .....	(351)
(1) and .....	(351)
(2) but / however .....	(353)
(3) or .....	(354)
(4) either ... or .....	(355)
(5) neither ... nor .....	(356)
(6) as well as .....	(356)
(7) nevertheless / nonetheless .....	(357)
(8) still .....	(358)
(9) yet .....	(358)
3) 介词短语 .....	(359)
(1) in spite of .....	(359)
(2) despite .....	(359)
(3) notwithstanding .....	(360)
(4) after .....	(361)
(5) in (the) face of .....	(361)
(6) regardless of .....	(362)
(7) without regard to .....	(363)
(8) without reference to .....	(363)
(9) irrespective of .....	(364)
(10) independent of / independently of .....	(365)
(11) in the teeth of .....	(365)
(12) for all .....	(366)
(13) in defiance of .....	(366)
(14) with all .....	(367)
(15) against .....	(367)
(16) in any case .....	(368)
(17) in any event / at all events .....	(368)

(18) in any way .....	(369)
(19) by any means .....	(369)
(20) at any rate .....	(369)
(21) at any cost / at all costs .....	(370)
4) 不定式(短语)表让步 .....	(370)
5) 分词(短语)表让步 .....	(371)
6) 其他 .....	(372)
(1) such as it is .....	(372)
(2) no amount of .....	(373)
(3) 否定词 + too .....	(374)
(4) no .....	(375)
(5) any .....	(376)
(6) anyway / anyhow .....	(376)
(7) even so .....	(377)
(8) even .....	(377)
(9) all the same .....	(378)
(10) none the less / none the worse .....	(378)
(11) all .....	(379)
(12) right or wrong .....	(380)
10. “数量”表示法 .....	(381)
1) “无定数目”表示法 .....	(381)
A. “多、少”的表示法 .....	(381)
(A)修饰可数名词 .....	(381)
(1) few / a few / not many / a small number .....	(382)
(2) quite a few / a good few / a few more / some few .....	(383)
(3) some / several .....	(383)

- (4) a number of / a certain number of / a moderate number of .....(384)
- (5) a large number of / large numbers of / a great number of / a considerable number of / quite a number of / any number of .....(385)
- (6) many / many a / a great (good) many / ever so many .....(387)
- (7) a multitude of / multitudes of / a crowd of / legion .....(390)
- (8) 其他 .....(391)
- (B) 修饰不可数名词 .....(392)
- (1) little / a little / a bit of, etc. ....(392)
- (2) some / much / more .....(394)
- (3) a great (good) deal .....(394)
- (4) a large sum of / large sums of .....(395)
- (5) a large amount of / large (great) amountsof .....(396)
- (6) an abundance of .....(399)
- (7) too much .....(399)
- (8) a great volume of / volumes of .....(399)
- (9) a store of .....(399)
- (C) 既修饰可数名词又修饰不可数名词 .....(399)
- (1) a large quantity of / large quantities of .....(400)
- (2) a lot of / lots of .....(400)
- (3) plenty of .....(403)
- (4) heaps of / a heap of .....(403)
- (5) loads of .....(404)

(D) 一定的数目字用以表示不定数目 .....	(404)
one or two / a couple of / dozens of / tens of / scores of / hundred and one / hun- dreds of / thousand and one / thousands of / myriads of / hundreds and thousands of / thousands and thousands of / millions and billions / millions of / hundreds of millions of / billions of .....	(404)
B. “大于某数”表示法 .....	(408)
(1) more than .....	(408)
(2) more .....	(409)
(3) or more .....	(409)
(4) odd / and odd .....	(410)
(5) over / above .....	(410)
(6) hardly (scarcely) more than .....	(410)
(7) some more .....	(411)
C. “小于某数”表示法 .....	(411)
(1) less than .....	(411)
(2) under / below .....	(411)
(3) or less .....	(412)
(4) nearly / almost .....	(412)
(5) up to .....	(412)
(6) hardly (scarcely) less than .....	(413)
D. “有...之多”, “至多”, “不少于”表示法 .....	(413)
(1) as many (much) as .....	(413)
(2) no less than .....	(414)
(3) not less than .....	(414)
(4) no more than .....	(415)

(5) not more than .....	(415)
(6) no fewer than .....	(416)
(7) at most / at the most / at the very most .....	(416)
(8) at best .....	(417)
(9) at the outside .....	(417)
<b>E. 大约数表示法 .....</b>	<b>(417)</b>
(1) or .....	(418)
(2) or so .....	(418)
(3) about / somewhere about .....	(418)
(4) some .....	(419)
(5) or thereabout(s) .....	(419)
(6) more or less .....	(419)
(7) around / round / round about / somewhere round .....	(420)
(8) in the rough .....	(420)
(9) to approximate (to) / approximately / approximation .....	(420)
<b>F. 两数之间表示法 .....</b>	<b>(421)</b>
(1) from...to .....	(421)
(2) between...and .....	(421)
(3) anywhere between...and .....	(422)
(4) anywhere from... to .....	(422)
(5) to .....	(422)
<b>G. “部分”表示法 .....</b>	<b>(422)</b>
(1) part .....	(422)
(2) partly .....	(423)
(3) portion .....	(423)

(4) percentage .....	(423)
(5) proportion .....	(424)
(6) section .....	(424)
(7) most / for the most part .....	(424)
(8) bulk .....	(425)
H. “够, 不够”表示法 .....	(425)
(1) enough .....	(425)
(2) sufficient / sufficiently .....	(426)
(3) adequate .....	(426)
(4) ample .....	(426)
(5) not enough .....	(427)
(6) insufficient .....	(427)
(7) inadequate .....	(427)
(8) short of .....	(427)
(9) lack / want .....	(428)
2) 量的其他表示法 .....	(428)
(1) “一群, 一帮”表示法 .....	(428)
(2) “一批”表示法 .....	(431)
(3) “一队”表示法 .....	(432)
(4) “一串”表示法 .....	(432)
(5) “一堆”表示法 .....	(432)
(6) “一捆, 一包, 一袋”表示法 .....	(433)
(7) “一瓶, 一盒, 一箱, 一杯, 一碗, 一罐, 一 桶”表示法 .....	(433)
(8) “一条, 一块, 一张, 一片”表示法 .....	(436)
(9) “一层, 一片”表示法 .....	(439)
(10) “一双, 一副, 一把, 一条”表示法 .....	(441)
(11) “一轴, 一卷, 一团”表示法 .....	(441)



- (12) “一套”表示法 .....(442)
- (13) “一阵”表示法 .....(443)
- (14) 其他 .....(444)
- 3) “次数”表示法 .....(445)
- (1) once .....(445)
- (2) twice .....(446)
- (3) thrice / ... times .....(446)
- (4) again and again .....(446)
- (5) time and again .....(447)
- (6) once again .....(447)
- (7) once and again .....(447)
- (8) over and again / over and over again /  
over and over.....(448)
- (9) many a time .....(448)
- (10) each time / every time / at a time .....(449)
- (11) for the first (second / third, etc.) time .....(449)
- (12) for the last time .....(450)
- 4) “倍数”表示法 .....(451)
- A. 倍数增加表示法 .....(451)
- (1) “倍数 + as + adj. (adv.) + as + 对比事物”表示  
“是...的...倍” .....(451)
- (2) “分数 + as + adj. (adv.) + as + 对比事物”表示  
“是...的几分之几” .....(452)
- (3) “倍数(分数) + n. (or that) + of + 比较对象”  
表示“是...几分之几”; “是...倍” .....(453)
- (4) “表示倍数意义的动词 + 宾倍”或“动词 + 表  
倍数意义的形容词 + 宾语”表示“是...  
倍”; “增加到...倍”; “增加(倍数-1)

- 倍” .....(454)
- (5) “表示增加意义的动词+倍数+as against”  
表示“是...的...倍”；“净增(倍数-1)  
倍” .....(456)
- (6) “表示增加意义的谓语+by a factor of+倍  
数”表示“增加到...倍”；“增加(倍数-1)  
倍” .....(456)
- (7) “be multiplied by+倍数/multiply+倍数”  
表示“是...的...倍”；“增加(倍数-1)  
倍” .....(457)
- (8) “half as much (many / large / fast) again  
as+比较对象”表示“是...的一倍半”；  
“比...多(大/快)一半” .....(457)
- (9) “half as+adj. (adv.)+as+比较对象”表示  
“是...的一半”；“有...的一半”；“比...  
一半” .....(458)
- (10) “as (much) again as / again as...as”表示  
“是...的两倍”；“两倍于...”；“比...多  
一倍” .....(458)
- (11) “表示增加意义的词+by+倍数(或数字)”表  
示“比...多(大)...倍” .....(459)
- (12) “倍数+形容词(副词)比较级+than+被比  
对象”表示“比...多(大)...倍” .....(459)
- B. 倍数减少表示法 .....(460)
- (1) “表示减少意义的谓语动词+by+倍数(分数  
或具体数字)”表示净减的数 .....(461)
- (2) “具有减少意义的谓语动词+to+倍数(或数  
字)”表示“减少到...” .....(462)

(3) “具有减少意义的谓语动词 + 倍数”表示“减少到 $\frac{1}{\text{倍数}}$ ”；“减少了 $\frac{\text{倍数}-1}{\text{倍数}}$ ” ……(462)

(4) “表示减少意义的谓语动词 + by a factor of + 倍数”表示“减少到 $\frac{1}{\text{倍数}}$ ”；“减少了 $\frac{\text{倍数}-1}{\text{倍数}}$ ” ……(463)

(5) “表示减少意义的谓语动词 + 倍数(或数字) + as + adj.(adv.) + as + 比较对象”表示“减少到 $\frac{1}{\text{倍数}}$ ”；“减少 $\frac{\text{倍数}-1}{\text{倍数}}$ ” ……(464)

(6) “表示减少意义的谓语动词 + 倍数(数字) + 形容词(副词)比较级 + than + 比较对象”表示“减少到 $\frac{1}{\text{倍数}+1}$ ”；“少 $\frac{\text{倍数}}{\text{倍数}+1}$ ”；“是 $\frac{1}{\text{倍数}+1}$ ” ……(464)

- 5) 度量的表示法 ……(465)
- (1) 长度的表示法 ……(465)
  - (2) 宽度的表示法 ……(467)
  - (3) 高度的表示法 ……(467)
  - (4) 厚度的表示法 ……(468)
  - (5) 深度的表示法 ……(469)
  - (6) 面积的表示法 ……(469)
  - (7) 体积的表示法 ……(470)
  - (8) 重量的表示法 ……(470)
  - (9) 速度的表示法 ……(471)

(10) 温度的表示法 .....	(472)
(11) 角度的表示法 .....	(473)
(12) 距离表示法 .....	(474)
(13) 半径/直径/圆周表示法 .....	(475)
6) “种类, 分类”表示法 .....	(475)
A. 名词 .....	(475)
(1) kind .....	(475)
(2) sort .....	(476)
(3) type .....	(477)
(4) variety .....	(477)
(5) form .....	(478)
B. 动词 .....	(479)
(1) classify .....	(479)
(2) divide into .....	(480)
(3) fall into .....	(480)
(4) group .....	(481)
(5) grade .....	(481)
(6) sort .....	(481)
11. 否定形式 .....	(482)
1) 部分否定 .....	(482)
(1) all...not (= not all) .....	(482)
(2) both...not (= not both) .....	(484)
(3) every + n...not (= not every) .....	(484)
(4) not always (or often) .....	(485)
(5) whole (wholly / entirely / completely / totally, etc.) ...not .....	(486)
2) 全部否定 .....	(488)
(1) no .....	(488)

- (2) none .....(489)
- (3) nobody / nothing .....(490)
- (4) nowhere .....(491)
- (5) not...any (a) .....(492)  
 used to的否定式 .....(493)  
 Don't + subj. ...? .....(494)  
 “to be not 与 to be no / to have not 与 have  
 not”用法比较 .....(495)  
 not + 数词 .....(496)  
 “no + 形容词(副词)比较级 + than”与“not + 形容  
 词(副词)比较级 + than”用法比较 .....(496)  
 “not less than + 数词”与“no less than + 数词”用  
 法比较 .....(497)  
 “no more than + 数词”与“not more than + 数词”  
 用法比较 .....(498)  
 “no less...than”与“not less...than”用法比  
 较 .....(499)  
 “no more...than”与“not more...than”用法比  
 较 .....(500)  
 not half bad / not half + 某些行为动词 .....(501)
- (6) not + 非谓语动词 .....(501)  
 A. not 否定不定式(短语) .....(501)  
 B. not 否定分词(短语) .....(502)  
 C. not 否定动名词(短语) .....(502)
- (7) not 否定状语 .....(503)
- (8) not 否定宾语补足语 .....(504)
- (9) not 否定宾语从句 .....(504)
- (10) not 否定原因状语从句或表原因的短语 .....(505)

(11) never .....	(506)
(12) neither / nor .....	(507)
(13) no longer / not...any longer .....	(508)
(14) no more / not...any more .....	(510)
(15) There be + no + v-ing / to be no 'use (no good) + v-ing .....	(510)
(16) not so much as / without so much as .....	(512)
(17) not the least / not in the least .....	(513)
(18) to say nothing of / not to mention / not to speak of .....	(513)
3) 意义上的否定.....	(514)
(1) 含有否定意义的动词 .....	(514)
A. fail to do sth.....	(514)
B. decline .....	(515)
C. refuse .....	(515)
D. deny .....	(516)
E. lack .....	(517)
F. want .....	(517)
G. keep...from .....	(518)
H. prevent...from .....	(519)
I. be free from (of) .....	(520)
J. be short of .....	(521)
K. blind to, be blind to.....	(522)
(2) 含有否定意义的副词 .....	(522)
A. hardly / scarcely.....	(522)
B. seldom / rarely .....	(523)
(3) 含有否定意义的代词: little / few .....	(524)
(4) 含有否定意义的连词 .....	(526)

- A. unless .....(526)
- B. rather than .....(526)
- C. more than / more...than .....(527)
- D. other than / otherwise than .....(528)
- E. let alone .....(528)
- F. much less / still less / much more / still  
more .....(529)
- (5) 介词表否定意义 .....(529)
  - A. without .....(529)
  - B. instead of .....(530)
  - C. above .....(531)
  - D. beyond .....(531)
  - E. out of .....(532)
  - F. but .....(533)
  - G. from .....(534)
  - H. off .....(535)
  - I. at a loss .....(535)
- (6) “too...to”结构表否定 .....(536)
- (7) absence / absent .....(537)
- (8) 肯定形式的反问句表否定概念 .....(538)
- (9) 讥讽的反语所表达的否定概念 .....(539)
- (10) 利用起誓、诅咒或其他形式来表否定概念 .....(539)
- (11) last .....(540)
- (12) 带有否定意义词缀的词表否定 .....(540)
- (13) all (both / every) + v. + 含否定意义的单  
词 .....(541)
- 4) 双重否定.....(541)
  - (1) 主句(否定结构)+ if 条件句(否定结构) .....(542)

- (2) no (not)···unless .....(542)
- (3) 主句(否定结构)+定语从句(否定结构) .....(543)
- (4) not+带有否定前缀的单词 .....(544)
- (5) not (no / never)+带有否定意义的动词 .....(546)
- (6) never fail / without fail .....(546)
- (7) not···without / not without.....(547)
- (8) impossible (not possible)···without .....(549)
- (9) never···without .....(549)
- (10) never···but .....(550)
- (11) 否定词+but .....(551)
- (12) nothing (no one)···so···but / not···such···  
       but .....(551)
- (13) but for···no (not / never) .....(552)
- (14) nobody (no one) but.....(553)
- (15) nothing but .....(554)
- (16) nothing but+v. ....(555)
- (17) can not but+v. ....(556)
- (18) not···any···but .....(557)
- (19) no one (no+n.) but+v. ....(557)
- (20) can not···too .....(559)
- (21) be impossible (or difficult) to···too (or over) /  
       be scarcely possible to···too / can never  
       (hardly / scarcely) enough / can never  
       over+v. (or can not over+v.) .....(560)
- (22) can not help doing sth .....(562)
- (23) nothing if not.....(563)
- (24) not···for (out of) nothing.....(563)
- (25) nothing more than.....(564)



- (26) nothing ... + 形容词(副词)比较级 + than / nothing  
 like / nothing (no other + n.) ... so ...  
 as .....(565)
- (27) nothing less than .....(566)
- (28) nothing more nor less than .....(566)
- (29) nothing else than / nothing else but .....(566)
- (30) no less than.....(567)
- (31) no less...than .....(568)
- (32) no more than .....(568)
- (33) no (none) other than.....(568)
- (34) no other + n. + than / no other + n. + but .....(569)
- (35) 否定词 + except.....(570)
- (36) not a few / not a little .....(571)
- (37) none the less / none the worse .....(572)
- (38) not only...but (also) .....(573)
- (39) not...until .....(574)
- (40) 否定结构 + in the absence.....(575)
12. “除外”表示法 .....(577)
- 1) “除了...还(也)...” 的表示法.....(577)
- (1) besides .....(577)
- (2) aside from / apart from .....(578)
- (3) in addition to .....(579)
- (4) other than.....(579)
- (5) next to .....(580)
- (6) after .....(581)
- (7) over and above .....(581)
- (8) on top of.....(582)
- (9) as well as .....(583)

(10) exclusive of .....	(583)
(11) excluding .....	(584)
(12) among .....	(585)
2) “除了…外，都…”表示法.....	(585)
(1) except.....	(585)
(2) except for.....	(586)
(3) excepting .....	(588)
(4) except that .....	(588)
(5) with the exception of.....	(590)
(6) but .....	(591)
(7) apart from / aside from .....	(592)
(8) save / saving .....	(593)
(9) beyond .....	(594)
(10) than .....	(595)
(11) outside / outside of /.....	(595)
(12) barring .....	(596)
(13) unless .....	(596)
(14) short of.....	(597)
(15) other than .....	(598)

# “时间”表示法

## 1. “过去”的表示法

past, in the past, in those days, in the old (or ancient) days, in very early times, long since, some time ago, a long time (while) ago, ago, before, long before, once, once upon a time, at one time, used to, prior to, previous to

### 1) past 过去的, 好久以前, 刚过去的

- (1) He has lived in Beijing for the past few years.
- (2) It was built 50 years past.
- (3) He has been ill for some time past.
- (4) We have won great achievements on all fronts in the past few years.
- (5) I should like to know his past history.
- (6) In the past 30 years China has made great advances in socialist revolution and socialist construction.
- (7) There have been great advances in space travel in the past few years.

### 2) in the past 过去, 昔日

- (1) We had a smooth sailing in the past.  
(过去我们一帆风顺。)
- (2) Let it remain as it always has been in the past.

(它一向怎么样, 现在也让它怎么样好了。)

(3) We're friends and sisters as in the past.

(我们姐妹友爱, 一如往昔。)

(4) Things moved more slowly in the past.

(过去交通工具比较慢。)

(5) China today is no longer the China of the past.

(6) Ancient history is better understood and our knowledge of the past is directly increased when the remains of old animals and cities are unearthed.

(当古代动物和城市遗迹从地下发掘出来时, 这些遗迹能使我们更好地了解古代历史, 并能增加我们对于过去的感性认识。)

(7) Today's engines are of much greater difference from those used in the past.

(8) In the past, wind power was used extensively.

(过去, 风力用得很广泛。)

(9) The history of the past is a guide for the future.

(10) In the past, people believed that the world was flat.

### 3) in those days 那时候, 在那些日子(岁月)里

(1) In those days he suffered a great deal from cold and hunger.

(2) In those days he used to help her mother with her gardening.

(3) In those days his idealism had been pure and wonderful.

(4) In those days there was no railway here.

(5) In those days they were too poor to bring up their

children properly.

(6) In those days, as (they are) now, most of these people worked hard.

**4) in the old (or ancient) days, in the good old days. 从前, 在过去, 往昔, 昔日**

(1) Children had to learn classics by rote in the old days.

(从前儿童须背诵经书古文。)

(2) In the old days she had fainted on the job many times.

(3) In the good old days we had no accidents because we had no motor cars.

(往昔因为没有摩托车, 所以不会闯祸。)

(4) In the old days radios were so large that they could not be carried by one man only.

(5) Modern athletes are capable of doing things that people would never have dreamed possible in the old days.

**5) in very early times 在远古时代; in ancient times 在古时**

(1) In very early times number names only went up to five for the five fingers on one hand.

(2) In very early times people went from one place to another in search of food.

(3) In very early times people could not count as we do now.

(4) In ancient times there was in China a great scholar called Confucius.

(古时中国有一个大学问家, 名叫孔夫子。)

(5) There is much less ceremony than in ancient times.  
(现在的礼数比古时少得多了。)

**6) long since (= long ago) 久已, 很久以前**

(1) It was long since that I had taken any exercise.  
(我久已不锻炼了。)

(2) This kind of machine has long since been out of use.  
(这种机床早已不用了。)

(3) I first met him long since.  
(我在很久以前第一次遇见他。)

(4) Bows and arrows have long since been out of use.  
(弓箭久已废弃不用了。)

(5) I saw the film long ago.  
(我很久以前看过那个电影。)

(6) He left school long ago for some family reasons.  
(他因为某些家事, 久已退学了。)

(7) He left the University long ago owing to illness.  
(他早已因病离开大学。)

(8) Inscriptions on stone tell of the activities of men long since dead.  
(石碑上的文字把早已死去的那些人的活动情况告诉了我们。)

**7) some time ago 从前, 不久之前**

(1) It was only some time ago that Mary saw them.

(2) Yes, I've been to Beijing, but that was quite some time ago.

(3) We discussed the matter some time ago.

(4) I took the chair at a meeting some time ago.

**8) a long time (while) ago 许久以前**

- (1) I received a letter from him a long while ago.
- (2) He finished writing his novels a long time ago.
- (3) He went on a journey to Edinburgh weeks ago.
- (4) Heat accumulation by the greenhouse effect was invented a long time ago.

(通过温室作用积聚热的办法老早就发明了。)

**9) ago adv. ...以前(指从此刻起若干时间以前,与过去时连用。)**

- (1) He left for Shanghai two days ago.
- (2) About half a century ago, a scientist reported an astonishing discovery. He picked up radio waves from outside the earth.
- (3) The Chinese invented the compass about two thousand years ago.
- (4) As many as 40 years ago a scientist did a series of experiment, the results of which are still not explicable today.
- (5) The Great Pyramid was built thousands of years ago.
- (6) I met him a few minutes ago.
- (7) We laid in a new stock of goods just a few days ago.  
(前几天我们刚进一批货。)
- (8) That was over twenty years ago, but he perfectly remembered.
- (9) The Chinese and the Greeks built bridges thousands of years ago.
- (10) The bill was drafted a fortnight ago.

(议案已经在两星期前草妥了。)

## 10) before

A. *adv.* 从前, 在…以前(指过去某时以前, 表过去的过去, 与过去完成时连用。)

- (1) He asked me who had won the football match the Saturday before.
- (2) I asked him whether they'd received my letter the week before.
- (3) It had been fine the day before.
- (4) He said that he had arrived the morning before.
- (5) He said that he had seen her two days before.

注: before 作副词用时, 也可以泛指“以前”, 与一般过去时或现在完成时连用, 如:

- (1) I have never read the book before.
- (2) I've seen that film before.
- (3) I never met him before.
- (4) I told you that before.

B. *conj.*

- (1) He had left for Beijing just before the letter arrived.  
(他恰好在信到之前到北京去了。)
- (2) We waited a long time before the train arrived.  
(我们等了好久, 火车才到。)
- (3) He was caught before he had time to run away.  
(他来不及逃走就被抓住了。)
- (4) The meeting was over before he arrived.
- (5) I didn't know any English before I came here.
- (6) It was almost night before the reply came.  
(差不多天黑了, 才来了答复。)



(7) He reflected tensely that they might need all their spirit before the month was past.

(他仔细地思考着, 可能他们需要拿出全部勇气来, 才能度过这个月。)

(8) I had not gone a mile before I felt tired.

(没有走到一里路, 我已经疲倦了。)

C. *prep.*

(1) The meeting was over before his arrival.

(2) He had come to Europe before the outbreak of the war.

(3) Only four days remained before the examination.

**11) long before 在...之前...早就...**

(1) Copper and gold were available long before man discovered ways of getting metals from compound.

(在人们找到从化合物中提取金属的方法很久以前就使用铜和金了。)

(2) We see a train approaching long before we hear its sound.

(在听到火车声音之前, 我们早就看见火车驶过来了。)

(3) Marxism was wide spread in China long before the liberation.

(4) The Chinese were a highly civilized people long before the Europeans were.

**12) once, once upon a time 从前**

(1) Once we preferred arts and letters to science and technology.

(从前我们注重文学美术而不注重科学技术。)

(2) I was fond of swimming once.

- (3) Once upon a time there lived a good, wise man in the village.
- (4) Once upon a time my home town was surrounded by a very beautiful lake.
- (5) Once upon a time she was thought to be the most talented actress in the country.
- (6) Once upon a time a plastic was a natural material that could be moulded into many shapes. Today, the word plastic has a quite different meaning. It refers to man-made materials.
- (7) People once thought that heat was a material.
- (8) We once lived in Shanghai.
- (9) Those of sea animals found in mountain ranges, for example, show that the areas which are mountains today were once probably under the sea.

**13) at one time 曾经，过去有一个时期**

- (1) At one time we were all animals.
- (2) At one time it was thought that all atoms of the same element were exactly alike.
- (3) He was a teacher at one time, but now he works for foreign trade.
- (4) At one time my father worked in the diplomatic service.  
(我父亲过去某个时期曾在外交界工作。)
- (5) At one time, amateur radio was his hobby.  
(在过去某个时期，业余无线电曾经是他的爱好。)
- (6) At one time most school teachers were men, but today there are more women than men.

**14) used to 过去惯于**

- (1) Scientist, used to think that an atom was the smallest thing in the world.
- (2) Coal tar used to be allowed to go to waste.  
(煤焦油过去经常被浪费掉。)
- (3) Some plastics are made from materials that used to be wasted—such things as sawdust and peanut hulls.
- (4) The modern conception of the atom is not what it used to be in the last century.
- (5) He used to repeat his experiments until he got sure of the correctness of the results obtained.
- (6) We used to take part in labour on that farm.
- (7) There used to be a bookshelf in this room.
- (8) I don't swim so often as I used to.
- (9) Tom used to be a good student, didn't he?
- (10) Did you used to go swimming a lot when you lived at the seashore?  
(Did you use to...)
- (11) She used not to do the shopping on her way home from the office.  
(or She didn't use to do...; She usedn't to do...)
- (12) He never used to live there.

**15) prior to 在...以前**

- (1) Prior to the age of Galileo it was unthinkable that the earth was not the center of the universe.  
(在伽利略时代以前, 要说地球不是宇宙的中心是不可思议的。)
- (2) The flight had been cancelled prior to my arrival at

the airport.

(在我到达飞机场之前, 这次班机的飞行已经取消了。)

(3) He wrote to me prior to visiting me.

(他来看我之前先写了一封信给我。)

(4) Prior to the development of welding techniques, all portions of the ship's structure were joined by riveting.

(在焊接技术发展以前, 船舶结构的各个部分都是用铆钉连接起来的。)

(5) His coming to the city to reside was prior to his marriage.

(他结婚之前就到这个城市来定居了。)

(6) Prior to his departure, he held a press conference.

(在他起程之前, 他举行了一次记者招待会。)

(7) He called on me prior to his departure.

(他临行前来看了我一下。)

(8) His will was made two days prior to his death.

(他的遗嘱是在他死之前两天留下的。)

#### 16) previous to 在...之前

(1) Such was the state of things previous to the Revolution.

(这就是大革命前的形势。)

(2) He died previous to my arrival.

(3) They made full investigations previous to reaching a conclusion.

(4) I had collected materials previous to writing.

(我在写作以前先搜集了材料。)

(5) He started previous to my arrival.

## 2. “直至现在” 的表示法

down to the present, up to the present, to date, till (or to) this day, till now, up to now, by now, so far, as yet, no longer, not...any longer, since, ever since

### 1) down to the present, up to the present

**直到现在，到目前为止。**

(1) Up to the present, over twenty factories have been set up in our commune.

(2) We have not received any letter from him up to the present.

(3) Up to the present, quite a lot of commune members have bought tractors or trucks.

(4) All the instruments down to the present have served to save man's labour.

(5) Up to the present, everything has been successful.

### 2) to date 到目前为止

(1) To date I have received no information regarding this matter.

(截至今日，我还没有接到关于这事的消息。)

(2) To date twenty students have been accepted into the school.

(3) The police have not found the runaway to date.

(4) To date he has done half the work.

(5) We have only received three replies to date.

(6) I have not received any news from him up to date.

(7) To date we have received more than a hundred

applications.

**3) till (or to) this day 直到今天**

- (1) I haven't told him the whole story to this day.
- (2) Confucian ethics has had great influence over the Chinese people till this day.

(直到今天孔教对于中国人仍有极大的影响。)

- (3) I haven't told him what happened to this day.
- (4) Our main natural energy sources have been coal and oil till this day.

**4) till now, up to now, by now (直)到现在**

- (1) We've received no official information about it up to now.

(2) Up to now, no one has raised any objection.

(3) Up to now, there is no fuel or chemical reaction known that could produce the sun's heat and light.  
(直到现在还没有一种已知的燃料或化学反应能产生太阳的热和光。)

(4) No one has been absent up to now in our class.

(5) Up to now, we haven't heard from him.

(6) Up to now, there is no sign of his showing up.

(7) I didn't know the result of the test till now.

(8) The weather has been hot until now.

(9) By now nearly six years have been spent on this work.

(10) You should realize by now how important your job is.

(11) Up till now, our main natural energy sources have been coal and oil.

(12) I have never heard of it till now.

5) so far  
as yet } 到目前为止, 至今

(1) So far he hasn't told us what happened.

(2) So far they haven't explained it to us.

(3) So far no further methods of cooling have been found.

(4) So far, no practical uses for super conductivity have been found.

(至今仍未找到超导电性的实际应用。)

(5) One of the achievements so far made in radio electronics is the invention of electronic computers.

(迄今为止在无线电电子学方面所取得的成就之一就是电子计算机。)

(6) Atomic energy has been discovered for many years, but so far it has not been widely used in industry or in our daily life.

(7) We have heard nothing about her as yet.

(8) As yet we have not made any plan for the summer vacation.

(9) It is as yet impossible to say how great the changes brought about by the use of atomic energy will be.

(现在还不能说使用原子能所引起的变化将会是多么巨大。)

(10) The answers to many questions require facts not as yet discovered.

(对于许多问题的解答都需要事实, 而这些事实迄今还没有发现。)

- (11) As yet, we have not found any easy and economical way to increase or decrease the direct current voltage.  
(到现在我们还没有找到升高或降低直流电压的任何简易而经济的方法。)
- (12) She has not as yet been trained to any special work.
- (13) She has as yet had no opportunity of relating the incident to him.
- (14) But none of these are as yet carefully thought-out plans.
- (15) I have received no answer from him as yet, but the answer will certainly come.
- (16) We know little as yet about the moon's surface.

**6) no longer, not...any longer 不再, 已不**

- (1) He is no longer living here.
- (2) No longer is television just a laboratory marvel.  
(电视已经不再仅仅是实验室的奇迹了。)
- (3) Once nitrogen is combined, it is not chemically inert any longer.  
(氮气一经化合, 在化学上就不再是惰性气体了。)
- (4) Since we have opened up a number of big oilfields, our country does not depend on foreign countries for oil any longer.
- (5) Science is no longer on march but on swift wings.  
(科学不再是在往前迈进, 而是在往前飞奔。)
- (6) The dry steam is no longer a vapour, and may be considered as a gas.  
(干蒸汽不再是水蒸汽, 而可以当作一般气体。)



(7) No longer does the airman have to guess what lies ahead of him in the way of weather.

(飞行员不再需要猜测未来气候情况如何。)

(8) The temperature of the boiling water does not rise any longer.

### 7) since 自从

(1) It is ten years since the old scientist has been working at this problem.

(2) There have been great changes in our country since liberation.

(3) The electronic computer has been in use since 1964.

(4) I met him in 1975 and haven't seen him since.

(5) My health is much improved since I gave up smoking.

(6) He has been well since his operation.

(7) Electricity has been widely used since it was discovered.

(8) Nearly two thousand years have passed since the Chinese first invented the compass.

(9) It hasn't rained since last Sunday.

(10) Great achievements have been made in our science and technology since New China was founded in 1949.

### 8) ever since 自从...以来, 迄今

(1) He has kept up his study of English ever since 1968.

(自从1968年以来他一直坚持学习英语。)

(2) The oilfield was opened in 1958 and has been

undergoing continuous expansion ever since.

- (3) October 1 has been celebrated ever since the People's Republic of China was established.
- (4) I've known him ever since he was a boy.
- (5) Ever since the invention of the telescope, the moon has been a favourite object for scrutiny and study.  
(自从望远镜发明以来, 月球一直是人们所爱好的探索和研究对象。)
- (6) Ever since the opening of the oilfield, it has been undergoing continuous expansion.
- (7) Ever since the oilfield was opened, it has been undergoing continuous expansion.
- (8) The plan has worked perfectly ever since.
- (9) He has been working at a research centre ever since 1960.
- (10) He came to Shanghai in 1949 and has been here ever since.

### 3. “现在”表示法

now, right now, just now, even now, for the time being, at this moment (or minute), at present, for the present, at this time (or hour) of the day, nowadays, the present day, (in) these days, today

1) now, right now, just now, even now 现在, 现时

(1) When are you going?—Now, right now.

(2) They are discussing the matter right now.

(3) We should be glad to give you the help that you

want, but just now we are rather busy.

- (4) He is learning painting from a well-known artist just now.
- (5) He is just now staying with his uncle in the country.
- (6) He's not at home just now.
- (7) Even now it is not too late.
- (8) Right now I can't think of anyone suited to the post you mention.
- (9) Right now the book is a document of special interest.

(现时书籍为特殊兴趣的文献。)

- (10) Now is the best time for doing it.
- (11) Now is the right time for harvesting.
- (12) Those who were not issued work clothes last time can get them at the general affairs office now.

(上次没有领到工作服的, 现由总务处补发。)

2) for the time being 暂时, 目前

- (1) I have no time to spare for the time being.  
(暂时, 我抽不出时间来。)
- (2) He is getting better for the time being.
- (3) As Comrade Wang is absent, Comrade Liu will take his place for the time being.
- (4) I am sorry I can tell you nothing about this for the time being.
- (5) They will not make the experiment for the time being.
- (6) He could undertake the work for the time being.

(7) This finding also keeps, for the time being at least, a theory that Venus is cool enough to support some form of life.

(8) For the time being you will have to share this room with another person.

**3) at this moment (or minute) 现在, 此刻**

(1) The situation in Africa is taking a turn for the better at the moment.

(2) Who could have thought that he would come at this moment?

(谁料想到他会在此刻来?)

But he has arrived at this minute.

(3) At the moment she is at work on her fourth novel.

(4) She is writing a letter at the moment, I believe.

(5) At this moment, Earth is moving around the sun at more than 18 miles per second.

**4) at present, for the present 现在, 暂时**

(1) Japan is much stronger than China at present.

(2) At present, our country can design and produce semiconductor devices of all types.

(3) Steam engines still serve us well at present.

(4) Coal and oil are at present the chief sources of power.

(5) The matter is under consideration at present.

(6) At present, there are more than three thousand students in our university.

(7) I will consider the incident closed for the present.

(我要把这事暂时当做完了。)

(8) We have enough petrol for the present (= for now), but we need some more for tomorrow.

(9) Would you mind arranging the visit for some other day? I'm rather busy for the present.

(10) For the present we'd better wait and see.

**5) for the moment 暂时, 目前**

(1) Then for the moment there seems nothing to be done.

(2) We should defer further discussion of the physical character of atoms and turn for the moment to the question of atomic structure.

(我们要把原子的物理性质的进一步讨论推迟一下, 暂时转到原子结构问题上去。)

(3) I think perhaps we might leave it for the moment.

**6) at this hour (or time) of the day 在这个时候**

(1) Are you going out at this hour of the day?—Yes even now.

(2) He goes out for a walk at this time of day.

(3) Father comes home at this time of night.

(父亲每晚就在这个时候回家。)

**7) nowadays 现今, 现在**

(1) Nowadays, ballooning is becoming more and more popular.

(2) Nowadays people travel in automobiles.

(3) The houses of nowadays are much more efficient.

(4) That's what most young men and women seem to be doing nowadays.

(5) This cut of uniform is very popular nowadays.

(这种制服的式样现在很流行。)

(6) Nowadays tractors are common sight here.

(7) Matches are good and cheap, but most people nowadays use a lighter.

**8) the present day 现在**

(1) They are doing their scientific research work here the present day.

(2) Science is developing rapidly at the present time.

**9) these days 现在, 现今, in these days 时至今日, 到如今**

(1) Did any young people care these days about anything old people said to them?

(2) Winter used to be very cold here, but these days it seems to be getting milder.

(3) People these days travel by air.

(4) How is your family these days?

(5) The biologists are making an important experiment in genetic engineering these days.

(6) In these days it becomes more and more difficult to keep a secret.

**10) today 今天, 现在, 当今**

(1) Today, rockets not only fly from continent to continent but are also sent around the earth, to the moon, and even to some planets.

(2) Today, Earth is in trouble because of the careless way we have used our limited supplies.

(3) Today we are producing energy by splitting the atom.

(4) At one time most school teachers were man, but today there are more women than men.

## 4. “正在”表示法

the progressive tense, at, in, on, under, be+adv. the present participle or participial phrase, under way, be busy doing sth. after

### 1) The progressive tense

- (1) They are inquiring into the climatic conditions of north China.  
(他们正在调查研究华北的气候状况。)
- (2) The electronic industry is developing on a large scale.
- (3) The ship is sailing against the wind.
- (4) A fire is burning in the fireplace.
- (5) The house is being painted.
- (6) By scientific methods, waste materials are being converted into new and useful products.
- (7) At eight o'clock this morning, I was reading English poems.
- (8) Yesterday, at seven, we were listening to an interesting play on the radio.

### 2) at

- (1) They were at table when called.
- (2) I found him at his books in the library.
- (3) The people's militia are at drill.
- (4) China and Japan are now at peace with each other.  
(中日两国现在和平相处。)
- (5) He proposed a toast to the host when the banquet

was at its height.

(宴饮正酣时，他提议向主人举杯祝饮。)

(6) The two countries were at war.

(两国交战。)

(7) Looking out, I saw flocks and herds out at feed on the village green.

(8) We were at supper when the earthquake occurred.

(9) We are at work on a new dictionary.

(10) The dock is now at its busiest.

(码头此刻正在最忙的时候。)

(11) The debate was at the liveliest when the Party secretary appeared.

(辩论正在最热烈的时候，党委书记来到了。)

(12) The boys are at play.

(13) The storm is at its height.

(风暴正烈。)

(14) The moon is at its full.

(月亮正圆。)

### 3) in

(1) Active preparations are in progress.

(准备工作正在积极进行中。)

(2) The book is in rapid preparation.

(3) The court is now in session.

(法庭现正开庭。)

(4) It is dangerous to attempt to alight when the bus is in motion.

(汽车正在行驶时，试图下车很危险。)

(5) Spring sowing is in full swing.



(春耕正在紧张地进行。)

- (6) Last time I saw you, the novel was still in the press, but it's on sale now.

(上次我看到你的时候,那部小说还在印刷中,现在已经卖了。)

- (7) The flowers in the garden are now in full bloom.

(花园里现在鲜花盛开。)

- (8) The new system is in full operation.

(新制度正在积极实施中。)

- (9) The bridge is in course of construction.

(桥梁正在兴建中。)

- (10) The film actress is a star in the ascendant.

(那位女电影演员是一颗正在升起的明星。)

- (11) The weather forecast says a storm is in the making.

(天气预报说,一场风暴即将来临。)

- (12) I was in the middle of reading some book when he rang me up.

(我正在看书的时候,他给我打了个电话。)

- (13) You have come in the nick of time; we are just about to start.

(你来的正是时候,我们正准备动手呢。)

- (14) They were in the thick of their discussion when I called.

(我去的时候,他们正在热烈地讨论着。)

- (15) It is reported that a new kind of textbook for science students is in the works.

(据说,正在为理科学学生编写一种新教科书。)

4) on

- (1) Our living standard is steadily on the rise.  
(我们的生活水平正在不断提高。)
- (2) The technical cooperation and cultural exchanges between the two countries are daily on the increase.  
(两国间的技术合作和文化交流正日益增加。)
- (3) The birth rate is steadily on the decrease.  
(出生率正逐渐在下降。)
- (4) There I saw a lot of old furniture on the block.  
(我看见那儿有许多旧家具在拍卖。)
- (5) The proposal is already on the carpet, and I think it will be adopted.  
(那个建议现正在讨论之中,我想是会被采纳的。)
- (6) When he got to the seaside, the tide was already on the ebb.  
(他到海边时,潮水已在退了。)
- (7) They are writers on the make, and are promising too.  
(他们是一批成长中的作家,而且也是一批大有希望的作家。)
- (8) Don't worry about his injured leg; it's on the mend now.  
(他腿上的伤已见好转,别担心啦。)
- (9) Our airplanes reported that large enemy forces were on the move.  
(我们的飞机报告,大量敌军在移动中。)
- (10) The clock is on the stroke of five.  
(钟正打五点。)

(11) The ship is on its way to Africa.

(船正在驶往非洲的途中。)

(12) The new drug is on trial.

(新药正在试用中。)

**5) under**

(1) The matter is under consideration.

(这事情正在考虑中。)

(2) Negotiations are now under way between these two powers.

(这两国之间的谈判现在正在进行。)

(3) The question is now under discussion.

(4) I wonder if he has anything to do with the matter under investigation.

(5) We can't use our office at present; it is under repair.

(6) The building under construction will be our new library.

(7) He is under treatment for tuberculosis.

(他正在治疗肺结核。)

(8) A new dictionary is under compilation.

(一本新字典正在编写中。)

**6) be + adv.**

(1) The battle is on.

(战斗正在进行。)

(2) The radio is on.

(3) Strawberries are now in.

(草莓正当时令。)

(4) Is the fire in?

(火还在烧着吗?)

(5) Short skirts are in.

(短裙正时行。)

(6) The flu is about.

(流感正流行。)

**7) The present participle or participial phrase**

(1) Tell the boys playing there not to make so much noise.

(2) The man working by the machine with a worker is a college student.

(3) The house being built now will be our new bedroom.

(4) The comrades working in the countryside will come back the day after tomorrow.

(5) The man talking there with the dean will come to teach us next term.

**8) under way 进行着, 在进行中**

(1) Experiments with the picturephone are already under way.

(2) Production of solar water heater is also under way in many other countries.

(3) Work is under way on a wide scale to find means of utilizing atomic energy for production.

(4) The ship is under way for Hong Kong.

(5) The harvesting of late rice crops was under way.

(6) After a long delay, the construction work is once more under way.

**9) to be busy doing sth. 正忙于...**

(1) The peasants are busy getting in the crops.

- (2) The workers are busy making farm tools for the peasants.
- (3) He was busy getting ready for the experiment.
- (4) She was busy at her desk correcting the test papers.
- (5) He is busy over his lessons when I entered.
- (6) They are busy with their scientific research work.

10) after

- (1) The police are after him.  
(警察正在追踪他。)
- (2) What are you after?  
(你在干什么?)

## 5. “将来” 的表示法

to be around the corner, to be at (on) hand, to be near, to draw near, get on for, to be on the point (verge, brink) of doing sth, presently, on the way, by and by, after a while, in a little while, in future, in the near future, sooner or later, soon or late, in...days (weeks, months, years), in...weeks, (months', years') time, in time, before long, from now on, soon, the simple future tense (will, shall, be to + inf., be going to + inf., be about + inf.) the simple present tense, the present continuous tense, the future continuous tense, as time goes on, then, later, later on, after, some day, some time or other, one day, one (some) of these days, in the days to come

1) to be around the corner 即将到来

- (1) New Year's Day is around the corner.

(2) He told them that a business boom was just around the corner.

**2) be at (on) hand 即将发生**

(1) The athletes are busy training, for the school sports meet is near at hand.

(田径运动员正在加紧训练, 因为校运动会快要召开了。)

(2) A satisfactory solution of the matter is at hand.

(这件事很快就会得到满意的解决。)

(3) I really can't take a holiday, with spring ploughing near at hand.

(春耕即将开始, 我实在不能休假。)

(4) The reopening of the meeting is near at hand.

(会议不久就要再开。)

(5) The time of his departure is at hand.

(他出发的时间就要到了。)

(6) The examinations are at hand.

(考试即将到来。)

(7) The autumn harvest is at hand, we must get ready.

(8) Victory is at hand, but we still have to keep on fighting.

(9) Soon school will end and summer vacation will be on hand.

**3) to be near, to draw near 渐渐临近**

(1) National Day is near.

(国庆节快到了。)

(2) The Congress is drawing near.

(代表大会快开了。)

(3) The Congress is drawing to a close.

(代表会快结束了。)

(4) The autumn draws near, the rice fields have turned golden yellow.

(5) The time is drawing near for us to take examinations.

(6) The Spring Festival is drawing nearer.

(7) As autumn draws near, the corn fields show signs of ripeness.

**4) get on for (to, towards) 接近, 快到**

(1) It's getting on for midnight, let's go to bed.

(2) His grandfather must now be getting on for eighty.

(3) It was getting on to four in the morning when he finished writing the article.

(4) It's getting on for supper-time.

(5) It's getting on for twelve o'clock.

(6) It's getting on for time to light the lamp.

(7) It's getting on towards the end of the term now.

(8) Time is getting on; it's getting on for eleven o'clock, we had better go home now.

**5) be on the point (verge, brink) of doing sth.**

**快要…(的时候)**

(1) These goods are on the brink of being sold.

(这批货快要卖掉了。)

(2) The guests are on the point of going.

(客人们快要走了。)

(3) The ship is on the point of sailing.

(4) The horse is on the verge of death.

(5) The little girl is on the verge of bursting into tears.  
(这个女孩快要哭了。)

(6) The old man is on the verge of ninety.

**6) presently 即到, 不久**

(1) The clock will strike presently.

(钟即刻就要响了。)

(2) I can't come now, but I will come presently.

(3) You will feel the effect of the drug presently.

(4) With the weather so close and stuffy, ten to one  
it'll rain presently.

**7) on the way 接近**

(1) A storm is on the way.

(暴风雨要来临了。)

(2) They are on the way to success.

(3) This model of lorry is on the way out.

(这种式样的卡车快过时了。)

(4) Winter is on the way.

**8) by and by 不久, 不一会**

(1) By and by the bright moon began to appear.

(2) By and by he came to me and apologized.

(3) At first he felt awkward, but by and by he got  
used to it.

(4) You will see the difference by and by.

**9) after a while, in a little while 将来, 即刻, 不久, 过一会儿**

(1) Turn on the radiator and after a while you'll feel  
warm and comfortable.

(打开暖气, 一会儿你就会感到暖和舒适了。)



(2) At first you may not like the dry climate in the North, but after a while you'll get used to it.

(3) In a little while the signal will be hoisted.

(过一会儿, 就会升起信号。)

(4) The gardener will turn up in a little while.

(园丁一会儿就会来的。)

(5) She will be here in a little while.

**10) in future, in the near future 将来, 不久的将来**

(1) What will turn up in future, nobody can tell.

(将来有什么事发生, 没有人能够预言。)

(2) It is certain, therefore, that the laser will affect our lives tremendously in the future.

(3) It is certain that in the future laser will be widely used in industry.

(4) China will become a highly industrialized country in the near future.

(5) Several new lives are being built now and will be completed in the near future.

(6) In the nearest future a new industrial base will be created there.

(7) A new children's reader is to appear in the near future.

(一种新的儿童读物即将出版。)

(8) This will be a hard task, but with the rapid progress of science, this is certainly possible in the future.

(9) In the not-so-distant future, you may cross the ocean in a ship without smokestacks, a ship whose fuel "burns" without fire.

(10) We hope our dream will come true in the near future.

**11) sooner or later, soon or late 迟早, 或迟或早**

(1) Sooner or later you'll be sorry for what you did.

(2) Sooner or later his dream will come true

(3) If you keep on studying English, sooner or later you'll be able to read and speak it with ease.

(4) If you drive like that, sooner or later you will have an accident.

(5) Sooner or later the whole world will belong to the people.

(6) Why should he make so much fuss about it, we will pay him soon or late?

(我们迟早是要还他的, 他何必那样大惊小怪?)

(7) Sooner or later one's sins will find one out.

(人的罪孽终有暴露之一日。)

(8) It was bound to come sooner or later.

(那早晚一定要来的。)

(9) Your situation may take place in life sooner or later.

(你的情况是人生中迟早会有的。)

**12) in...days (weeks, months, years), in...weeks' (months', years') time**

(1) Influenza often will cure itself in a few days.

(流行性感冒往往会于数日内自己好了。)

(2) The carpenter will finish the woodwork of the house in two weeks.

(3) I cannot see you now; come back in an hour's time.

- (4) He will begin another language in three years.
- (5) He says he will finish it in a week's time.
- (6) I'll return the book in three days.
- (7) The tree will grow into a big one in ten years.
- (8) In a few years this factory will be producing more light trucks than other ones.
- (9) In a few months our hydropower station will be feeding power to many industrial plants.
- (10) I shall finish middle school in a month.
- (11) In a week or so, we'll go to the factory for practice.
- (12) I'm feeling a lot better now, and the plaster is being taken off in two weeks' time.

13) in time 将来, 到时候, 迟早, 最后

- (1) The doctor said that my friend would in time recover his health.  
(医生说我的朋友会恢复健康的。)
- (2) If you keep studying, the subject will become clearer to you in time.  
(如果你坚持学下去, 到时你总会学通那门学科的。)
- (3) You might think that in time all the radio active elements would be changed to lead and no longer exist.  
(你也许会认为迟早所有放射性元素将都变为铅而消失了。)
- (4) You will learn how to do it in time.  
(你将来总会学会做这件事的。)
- (5) If you keep on trying, you will succeed in time.

**14) before long 不久, 很快**

- (1) You will find before long that what I said is true.  
(不久你便会知道我所讲的真情。)
- (2) The face of the city will be completely changed before long.  
(这个城市的面貌不久将全部改观。)
- (3) As for science, we shall catch up with the world's most advanced levels before long.
- (4) We shall finish our task before long.
- (5) We shall get to the station before long.
- (6) He is sure to come back before long.
- (7) We were tired of waiting and hoped the bus would come before long.  
(我们已经等得不耐烦了, 希望汽车马上来。)
- (8) It is certain that we shall have made more improvements in the design before long.

**15) from now on 从今以后, 今后**

- (1) I am determined to work with even greater enthusiasm from now on.
- (2) From now on we should remedy this state of affairs.  
(今后我们应当改善这种情况。)
- (3) I hope we will, from now on, do more and talk less.  
(我希望从今以后我们多做事, 少说话。)
- (4) Try to be on time from now on.
- (5) Take better care of your health from now on.
- (6) We must study even harder from now on.

(7) From now on Henry will work in another office.

**16) soon 不久, 即刻**

(1) You will see the difference soon.

(不久你就可以看出不同之点。)

(2) I hope you will come sometime soon.

(3) It will soon be five years since we came to live in London.

(4) Please write to me soon and tell me about your life in your college.

(5) Soon no new house will be able to have a garden.

(6) Very soon, men will leave the earth and start on a great exploration of the solar system.

**17) The Simple Future Tense (一般将来时)**

A. will/shall (表示将来某一时刻或某一段时间里发生的动作或存在的状态。)

(1) We shall further study the structure of the atom next week.

(2) Will you be here at ten o'clock tomorrow?

(3) There will be a report on chemistry tomorrow afternoon.

(4) Will you do any experiment in physics the day after tomorrow?

(5) On which day of the week will May Day be next year?

B. be to + *inf.* (表示按计划、安排将要发生的动作。)

(1) We are to turn out 1000 trucks next month.

(2) A textile mill is to be built in this district.

- (3) We are to meet at the station.
- (4) The atomic energy factory is to go into operation next year.
- (5) There is to be a meeting this evening.
- (6) They are to perform a new experiment this afternoon.
- (7) The new building is to be ten storeys high.
- (8) The meeting is to be held on Saturday.

注: be to + *inf.* 还可表示:

(1) 用于报纸、广播, 宣布官方的计划或决定, 如:

- a. The Prime Minister is to speak on television tonight.
- b. The line is to be open to traffic on October 1.
- c. The President is to visit Canada next month.

(2) 用于条件句中, 表示假设、打算、意图, 如:

- a. If we are to catch the 7:30 train, we must leave at six.
- b. If I were to do the experiment, I would read the instructions carefully.

(3) 表示根据规章制度、客观规律或情况应该做或必须做的事, 或表示命令、请求、禁止, 如:

- a. The form is to be filled in and returned within three weeks.
- b. The traffic regulations are to be observed.
- c. The luggage is to be examined at the custom house.
- d. You are to stop the machine carefully.
- e. You are to do your homework before you

watch TV.

- f. These books are not to be taken out of the reference room.
- g. You are to write your name at the top of each sheet of paper.
- h. The football match is not to be played today.

(4) 表示可能性, 如:

- a. Such digital computers are to be bought in any city of our country.
- b. My pen is nowhere to be found.
- c. The third world countries are not to be cowed.
- d. The dictionary is not to be here.

(5) 用于第一人称疑问句时, 表示征询意见, 如:

- a. Am I to wait here till their arrival?
- b. Where are we to stay tonight?
- c. When are we to perform the new experiment?
- C. be going to + *inf.*

a. 表示主观意图, 即打算在最近或将来进行某事。这种意图往往是事先经过考虑的。这类句子的主语通常指人(在被动句中, 主语可指物, 但动作的执行者仍然是人。)

- (1) We are going to call a meeting to discuss it.
- (2) He's going to be a doctor when he grows up.
- (3) The teachers are going to join us in the English evening.
- (4) The wall is going to be painted green.
- (5) We are going to grow more tomatoes this year.
- (6) Are you going to take the examination?

b. 表示现在已有迹象表明将要发生或即将发生某种情况。

- (1) Look at these black clouds—we're going to have a storm.
  - (2) Watch out! The pile of boxes is going to fall.
  - (3) The ice is going to melt when the sun comes out.
  - (4) That conceited young man is going to make mistakes sooner or later.
  - (5) This table is going to collapse one of these days; the legs are very weak.
  - (6) Good heavens! I must hurry. I'm going to be late.
- 注：这一用法，主语可以是人，也可是物。表示客观事态的发展，而不是表示主观的意图。

c. 表示决心，决定。

- (1) I am going to learn Japanese whether I'll meet with difficulties or not.
- (2) She is going to have her own way.
- (3) The next time I buy a TV set, I'm going to buy a colour one.

d. 表示按计划，安排或决定要做的事。

- (1) We are going to build some reservoirs this winter.
- (2) The line is going to be open to traffic on July 1.
- (3) We are going to show the foreign guests round the mountain city while they're here.

注：在这一用法上 *be going to + inf.* 和 *be to + inf.* 可以互换使用。但含义和强调的略有不同，如：

I'm going to play tennis this afternoon.

(强调现在意图、打算。)



I'm to play tennis this afternoon.

(强调按计划安排或受人指示。)

e. 表示命令

(1) You are going to do the oral exercises as I tell you.

(2) You are not going to wear your skirt. It's cold today.

注: be going to 与 will/shall 的用法比较:

(1) 两者都用来表示意图, 如:

I'm going to (will) climb that mountain one day.

I'm not going to (won't) tell you about it.

但两者所表示的意图有强弱之分 be going to + *inf.*

表示的意图比 will/shall + *inf.* 更为显著。另外,

如果这种意图是事先经过考虑的, 并有一定的安排与计划, 则须用 be going to 而不用 will. 如:

a. Why are you taking down all the pictures?

I'm going to repair the room.

(事先考虑好的)

b. Someone is knocking at the door. I'll go and open it.

(事先没有考虑)

(2) 表示即将发生某事时, be going to 接近于 will, 但在口语中多用 be going to, 如:

a. Is there going to be a meeting this Friday?

(Will there be...?)

b. Who's going to speak? (Who will speak?)

(3) be going to 可用于条件从句, 表将来时间, will

则不能，如：

If you are going to play tennis this afternoon.  
you'd better get your shoes cleaned.

will 用于条件从句时，不是表将来时间，而是表  
意愿，拒绝，坚持，推论等，如：

a. If you will kindly wait a moment, I'll ask the  
manager to speak to you.

b. If he'll listen to me, I'll give him some advice.

c. If he won't come, we'll ask someone else.

D. be about + *inf.* 表示马上或即将进行的动作。

(1) The meeting is about to begin.

(2) We are about to repair that machine.

(3) They are about to start.

(4) We are about to adopt the new process.

(5) The train is about to leave.

(6) The new experiment is about to begin.

## 18) The Simple Present Tense

A. 一般现在时表将来时间，主要是表示根据规定或时  
间表预计要发生的动作或事态。用于这种句中的动  
词，除了 be 以外，一般都是表示开始，终结，往来  
行动的动词，如：begin, come, go, leave, sail,  
start, stop, return, arrive 等。

(1) The train leaves at 7:30 this evening.

(2) When does the experiment begin?

(3) What time does the train go?

(4) The term starts on 23rd August.

(5) The technical training class begins on Oct. 4.

(6) Tomorrow is Saturday.

- (7) Next Christmas falls on a Thursday.
- (8) The Korean delegation arrives in Beijing tonight.
- (9) The match takes place on Wednesday.
- (10) He comes back the day after tomorrow.
- (11) The plane takes off at six tomorrow morning.
- (12) She returns tomorrow.
- (13) She retires next month.
- (14) He dies at dawn tomorrow.  
(他定于明晨处死。)

(15) What do you plan to do tomorrow afternoon?

B. 用于条件和时间状语从句中，表将来时间。这种从句的连接词常用的有：if, as, when, as soon as, till, until, after, before, whenever, unless 等。

- (1) If we try hard, we'll be able to fulfil the plan.
- (2) It won't be long before the rain stops.
- (3) I'll visit him whenever I get the chance.
- (4) Wait here till I come back.
- (5) I'll telephone you directly if I hear the news.
- (6) As soon as you finish your job, let me know.
- (7) After you think it over, please let me know what you decide.
- (8) You'll fail unless you work harder.
- (9) We shall never finish if we go on at this rate.
- (10) When he comes, I'll ring you up.

## 19) The Present Continuous Tense

A. 表示按计划，安排和打算将要发生的动作，这时常有一个表示将来时间的状语。一般说来只适用于动作动词，

不能用于状态动词。常用的这类动词有：

arrive, come, fly, go, invite, have, issue, land, leave, meet, move, plan, play, publish, return, run, sail, send, start, take, take off, walk 等。

- (1) The technician is coming in a minute.
- (2) They are leaving for Beijing tomorrow.
- (3) They are taking the 8 o'clock train.
- (4) I'm going to a picture tonight.
- (5) If you are coming, please send me a telegram.
- (6) He is writing to you tomorrow.
- (7) The plane is taking off at 5:20.
- (8) None of the shops in the town is closing tomorrow.
- (9) We're moving to a different hotel the day after tomorrow.
- (10) I'm spending my holidays in Qingdao this year.
- (11) One of the town doctors is retiring soon.
- (12) They are sending the things up from the shop.
- (13) The new piano is being delivered this afternoon.
- (14) I'm feeling a lot better now, and the plaster is being taken off in two weeks' time.
- (15) The ship is landing the goods at Dover next week.

B. 用在时间状语从句或条件状语从句中，表示将来正在进行的动作。

- (1) Be careful when you are crossing the street.
- (2) I'll telephone you this afternoon while I am waiting.

20) The Future Continuous Tense 表示按计划或预料将要发生的动作。

- (1) We shall be having our class in a minute.
- (2) He will be working at the plant next week.
- (3) We'll be meeting you at the station.
- (4) This time on Friday I shall be flying to Spain.
- (5) We shall be going to San Francisco next week.
- (6) The train will be leaving soon.
- (7) When will you be moving to your new house?
- (8) Will you be going home next week-end?
- (9) What new product will your factory be making beginning from next year?
- (10) I'll be seeing her home after the party tonight.

**21) as time goes on**

- (1) We all know more and more as time goes on.
- (2) Our society grows more and more complex as time goes on.
- (3) You'll get to like the job more and more as time goes on.
- (4) As time goes on, he will understand what I said.

**22) then 在将来的某时, 届时**

- (1) I shall see you on Monday, and will then tell you the facts.
- (2) I'll try and finish this book over the weekend. Then you can borrow it.
- (3) The train will have reached there by then.
- (4) We'll start at five tomorrow morning if it has stopped raining by then.

**23) later, later on 以后, 日后**

- (1) We shall discuss that problem later on.

(2) We shall see later on, when we travel to other worlds, that there are stronger and weaker gravities.

(3) Later on you will meet some complicated molecules that have half a dozen different kinds of atoms in them.

(以后你将遇到某些具有六、七种不同原子的复杂分子。)

(4) I'll tell you more about this later on.

(5) He will find out his mistake later.

(6) Only if we take steps to deal with this problem now can we avoid a severe world wide water shortage later on.

注: (1) later 与过去时连用, 作“后来”讲, 如:

a. Later on he realized his mistakes and corrected them.

b. That happened later.

(2) 以过去某一时刻为起点, 用过去时, 如:

I called on him on 24 July, and called again a week later.

(3) 用于表将来的将来时, 用将来时, 如:

I shall call on him on 2 October and shall call again a week later.

(7) I will explain the matter later on.

(8) Later on you will be able to understand this much better.

## 24) after 以后

A. conj. ……以后

(1) I'll go with you after I finish my work.

- (2) After you think it over, please let me know what you decide.
- (3) What do you plan to do after you have finished your homework?
- (4) What are you going to do after you finish middle school?
- (5) We shall hold a discussion on it after we have listened to the report.

注: after 作连接词时, 常常用过去时或过去完成时, 如:

- a. After the work was done, we sat down to sum up experience.
- b. After electricity had been discovered, it came into general use in all branches of industry.
- c. I found the letter long after he had gone away.

B. *adv.* 以后 (= later)

- (1) We can do that after.
- (2) You come to Jinan first, and to Qingdao after.

注: two days after (= after two days) 这类短语不能用于将来时, 只能用于过去时或过去将来时, 如:

- a. He left on Monday and returned two days after.
- b. He asked me whether I would be in Beijing two years after.

C. *prep.*

- (1) He will return after the first of May.
- (2) He'll start for Beijing after two o'clock.
- (3) I'll visit him after supper.

注: (1) after 作介词, 用于表示将来时, 后边只能跟表示

“一点时间”的词，不能跟表示“一段时间”的词。如果跟表示“一段时间”的词，只能表示过去时，如：

- a. They left for Shanghai last Saturday and returned after three days.
- b. He died after two days.
- c. Two days after his arrival, I called on him.

(2) two days after 等短语不能表将来，但可用于表示将来的将来，如：

I shall finish middle school in a month. Two or three days after my graduation, I shall go down to the countryside.

**25) some day 将来总有一天，有朝一日，将来**

- (1) Some day people will be so used to atomic energy that they can not do without it.
- (2) Some day man will be able to control some of the factors of weather.
- (3) Probably some day science will find out how to build up foodstuffs out of simple substances.
- (4) Probably some day people will make paper aeroplanes or cars.
- (5) You will be a good teacher some day.
- (6) Our victory will surely come some day.
- (7) I'll tell you about this matter some day, but not today.

**26) some time or other 迟早，反正总有一天**

- (1) You must learn it some time or other.  
(你总有一天要把它学会的。)
- (2) I have every reason to believe that we shall get



back to Beijing some time or other. (我有充分的理由相信，我们将来有一天会回到北京。)

- (3) What your father said will come true some time or other.

**27) one day, one (some) of these days 总有一天**

- (1) We have lost 100 times, but one day we shall win.  
(2) I'll come and see you one day.  
(3) If a satellite can one day be put into orbit round Mars, scientists will be able to find out a great deal.  
(4) I'm going to do that sewing some of these days.  
(5) One of these days I'll go and see him.  
(6) If the bridge is not repaired, there will be an accident some of these days.

注: one day 可用来表示过去的某一天, 如:

- (1) One day last week I met him in the street.  
(2) One day in 1877, Thomas Edison was working in his laboratory with a telephone receiver.

**28) in the days to come 将来**

In the days to come we shall all travel by air.

**6. “当时当地”, “当时” 的表示法**

on the spot, then and there, right then, right there,  
then, at that time (or moment), of the time (day)

**1) on the spot 当场, 在现场**

- (1) I will give him a check on the spot, if we close the deal.

(如果我们买卖做成, 我会当场开一张支票给他。)

- (2) The problem was solved on the spot.
- (3) The enemy officer tried to run away, but he was killed on the spot.
- (4) He was run over and killed on the spot.
- (5) The oilfields have their own research centres which help solve problems on the spot.
- (6) The engineer together with the workers made an analysis on the spot.
- (7) The news of important events is often broadcast on the spot over TV.
- (8) If leakages are ascertained, they have to be remedied on the spot.

(假如确定是漏油, 就要当场修理。)

**2) then and there 当时当地 (= there and then)**

- (1) You should have pointed out his mistake then and there.
- (2) I decided to do it then and there.
- (3) She was so struck by the news that she dropped down then and there.

(她被这消息吓得当场立刻昏倒了。)

- (4) He gave a demonstration of the new technique then and there.
- (5) They decided to terminate their partnership then and there.

**3) right then 恰巧那时, 当时**

- (1) You should have pointed it out to him right then.  
(你该当时立刻对他指出这个来。)

(2) We shall dicide what to do right then, when he tells us the true state of affairs.

(3) I think he was sick right then.

(4) Right then I was not at home.

(5) Right then he received a letter from you.

**4) right there**

The decision was made right there.

(当场就作出了决定。)

**5) then 当时**

(1) Prices were not so high then.

(2) I was too tired to do it then.

(3) This crisis led to the downfall of the then government.

(4) If I hadn't left Italy then, I would probably have stayed there for the rest of my life.

(5) He desired nothing except to see Premier Zhou then.

(6) The workers were then engaged in a lively discussion.

(7) They were then almost completely cut off from the outside world.

**6) at that time (moment), at the time 当时**

(1) At that time I was too excited to think calmly.

(2) At that time he was in his middle sixties.

(3) There is a great difference between the situation now and the situation at that time.

(4) Our father was ill at the time.

(5) At that time the country was in great need of petroleum.

- (6) At that time the telescope had not yet been invented, all the observations were made with the naked eyes.
- (7) At that time he was a teacher of mathematics.
- (8) At that time he was at the age of eighteen.
- (9) As each layer of sedimentary rock was formed, the plants and animals which were alive at that time became buried in it when they died.  
(当每层沉积岩形成时,那时生活着的动植物死了之后,就埋在岩层中。)
- (10) At that time, we were both doing the same course at the university.

#### 7) of the time, of the day 当时, 当代

- (1) This early seagoing compass was probably the best type available if we consider the scientific and technical level of the time.
- (2) Joseph Henry was one of the greatest physicists of the day.
- (3) Newspaper headlines of the time contained the words Flying Saucer, but the scientific name given to this machine is the hovercraft.

### 7. “快” 的表示法

at once, right away, straight away (or forth), right off, like a shot, in no time, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, in the same breath, at a (or one) stroke, immediately, on the spur of the moment,

before you could turn round, before we know where we are, before the ink is dry, at this moment.

**1) at once 立刻, 马上**

- (1) We must put it into practice at once.
- (2) We are willing to stop the war at once and leave the remaining questions for later settlement.
- (3) When he heard of the accident, he rushed over at once.
- (4) They decided to begin the experiment at once.
- (5) She recognized him at once.

**2) right away (off), straight away, straight off 立即, 马上**

- (1) I'm sorry I forget to get that medicine for you; I'll take care of it right away.
- (2) You'd better see a dentist right away.
- (3) She's coming to talk to us right away.
- (4) They need the reference books right away.
- (5) I might as well tell you straight away, I will do what I can to help;
- (6) All of us are for starting the work right away.
- (7) He said he would be back right away.
- (8) When he has finished any plan, he will carry it out straight away.
- (9) I told him straight off what I thought about the matter.

**3) like a shot 立刻, 非常迅速**

- (1) He came out like a shot with the answer.  
(他回答问题非常迅速。)
- (2) He bolted out of here like a shot.

(3) As soon as he heard the news, he was off like a shot.

(他立刻从这里冲出去。)

4) in no time 立即, 很快, 立刻 (= in nothing flat)

(1) Take this medicine and you'll feel better in no time.

(2) Four hundred eight-metre-high electric poles were erected so that powerful current was sent to various drilling teams in no time.

(3) When the entire class worked together, they finished the project in no time.

(4) The bus was filled with students in nothing flat.

(5) I'll be back in no time.

(6) I will get it done in no time.

(7) He finished the work in no time.

(8) I'll finish writing the letter in no time.

5) in a moment, in a minute, in an instant 马上, 很快

(1) Just wait a minute, I'll be here in a moment.

(2) I'll join you in a moment.

(3) The job was all done in a moment.

(4) The doctor will be with you in a minute.

(5) I shall be ready in a minute.

(6) I will get it done in a minute.

(7) He was ordered to leave the house in an instant.

(8) This medicine will give you relief in an instant.

(9) It will be over in a minute.

6) in the twinkling of an eye 一霎时 (= in a twinkling)

(1) I did not see the accident. It was over in the twinkling of an eye.

(2) It took me five minutes to do this, but he did it in the twinkling of an eye.

(3) Flames licked up a row of buildings in the twinkling of an eye.

(霎时间火舌便舔着了整排的屋宇。)

(4) In a twinkling, the detective had the handcuffs on the man.

(转瞬间, 侦探给那个人上了手铐。)

**7) in the same breath 立刻, 同时**

(1) He admitted and denied his mistake in the same breath.

(他刚承认错误就又马上赖掉了。)

(2) These two cannot be mentioned in the same breath.

(两者不能相提并论。)

(3) Are you going to do all these things in the same breath?

(这一切你要一口气就做完吗?)

(4) He said "yes" and "no" almost in the same breath.

**8) at a (one) stroke 一下子, 闪电般**

(1) That's nothing, I can do it at a stroke.

(2) A thousand men lost their jobs at a stroke when the factory closed.

(3) All the prisoners escaped at one stroke.

(4) We can't finish at one stroke, we'll have to come tomorrow.

**9) immediately 立即, 马上**

(1) Immediately the machine worked again quite smoothly.

- (2) He thought it better to begin work immediately.
- (3) When I heard the cry for help, immediately I rushed out of my room.
- (4) Immediately on his beginning to speak, everyone was silent.
- (5) If the circuit is broken at any point, the current immediately stops, but it will start again as soon as the break is mended.
- (6) Please close your books immediately and answer these questions.
- (7) It would cause great trouble not to lubricate the bearing immediately.

**10) on the spur of the moment 即时**

- (1) That I can't exactly say on the spur of the moment.  
(那我不能够马上就说。)
- (2) He acts on the spur of the moment.

**11) before you could turn round, before we know where we are, before the ink is dry. 等不及你转过身来, 很快, 一瞬间。**

- (1) I heard a noise, and before you could turn round, I found my leg bitten by a snake.  
(我听见一个声音, 等不及你转过身来, 我已发现被蛇咬了脚了。)
- (2) January will pass before we know where we are.  
(正月一瞬间便会过去的。)
- (3) He will be a minister before we know where we are.  
(他很快就当部长了。)



(4) The agreement had been broken before the ink was dry.

(墨尚未干, 和约就破裂了。)

(5) The enemy officer was captured before he knew where he was.

(敌军官还不知怎么回事就被活捉了。)

(6) I'll be back before you could turn round.

(我很快就回来。)

**12) at this moment 就在这个时候, 马上**

(1) Come at this moment.

(2) I can't think of any fit person at this moment.

## 8. “一...就” “刚...便” 的表示法

as soon as, the moment, the instant, directly,  
immediately, no sooner...than, hardly...when,  
scarcely...when, once, on

**1) as soon as**

(1) The science of engineering began as soon as man learned to use tools.

(人类一学会使用工具, 工程科学就开始了。)

(2) The machine will start running as soon as the electric current is turned on.

(3) As soon as the dam is constructed, the water in the river can be made use of to generate electricity.

(4) I'll phone you as soon as I get an answer from him.

(5) As soon as the experiment was over, we went to

the library.

- (6) As soon as the temperature rises, the chemical reaction speeds up.
- (7) As soon as electrons moved through the wire, an electric current was generated.
- (8) Theory becomes a material force as soon as it has gripped the masses.
- (9) The mercury expands as soon as it is heated.
- (10) He will let you know as soon as he has any news.

注: as soon as 引导的时间状语从句不用将来时, 而用一般现在时表将来意义。

## 2) no sooner...than

- (1) I had no sooner come than it began to rain.
- (2) No sooner had he reached the station than the train was off.
- (3) He had no sooner arrived home than he was asked to start on another journey.
- (4) No sooner had I put down the receiver than she came.
- (5) No sooner had they got there than they began to work.
- (6) We had no sooner reached the airport than the plane took off.
- (7) The push button had no sooner been pressed than the motor began to run.
- (8) We'd no sooner sat down than the telephone rang.
- (9) No sooner was she back at home than she realized her mistake.

(10) No sooner had electrons moved through the wire than an electric current was generated.

注：(1) no sooner 所在的是主句，than 引导的是从句。

主句的动作发生在从句之前，所以一般用过去完成时，而从句用一般过去时。也有主句和从句都用一般过去时的，但不能用一般现在时和一般将来时。

(2) no sooner 在句首时，主句中主谓倒装。

(3) no sooner...than 与 as soon as 都作“刚...立刻就...”解，但 no sooner 引导主句，as soon as 引导从句。no sooner...than 句型一般都可以转化为 as soon as 句型，而 as soon as 句型中谓语动词使用一般现在时或将来时，则不能转化为 no sooner...than 句型，如：

a. The science of engineering began as soon as man learned to use tools.

= No sooner did man learn to use tools than the science of engineering began.

(人类刚学会使用工具，工程学就开始了。)

b. we had no sooner reached the airport than the plane took off.

= As soon as we reached the airport, the plane took off.

c. The machine will start running as soon as the electric current is turned on.

例句C因为 as soon as 从句是一般现在时，所以不能转化为 no sooner...than 句型。

### 3) the moment, the instant, the minute

(1) The moment he finished his work, the bell rang.

- (2) Please let me know the moment he comes.
- (3) I started the moment your letter arrived.
- (4) I'll tell him the moment he gets in.
- (5) The machine will start the moment the button is pressed.
- (6) Telephone me the moment you get the result.
- (7) The moment the blue litmus (蓝色石蕊试纸) paper was put into the acid, it turned red.
- (8) The moment the current starts flowing through the coil, a magnetic field starts growing around the coil.  
(电流一开始流过线圈, 磁场就在线圈周围开始形成。)
- (9) He rushed to the spot the moment he heard of the accident.
- (10) I sent you the news the instant I heard it.
- (11) The instant he opened the door, he saw the thief.
- (12) He started the instant he heard the report.
- (13) The instant the result came out, she told us.
- (14) I told him what we needed the minute I saw him.

#### 4) directly, instantly

- (1) She wrote us a letter instantly she arrived in Beijing.
- (2) The old worker recognized the type of the machine directly he saw it.
- (3) We get up directly the bell rings.
- (4) Let me know directly he comes.
- (5) Directly the gas is turned on, the lamp is lit.
- (6) I'll telegraph to you directly I start off.

- (7) I will come directly I have finished.
- (8) I told him what we needed instantly I saw him.
- (9) The new electronic computer was put into production directly it had completed its testing programme.
- (10) Instantly the electrons begin to move, they create a magnetic field.

### 5) immediately

- (1) Tell me immediately you have any news.
- (2) I knew something was wrong immediately I arrived.
- (3) I left immediately the clock struck twelve.
- (4) She must have written it immediately she got home.
- (5) Immediately his intentions are understood, he may leave.
- (6) I told him immediately he came.
- (7) Immediately I see him I'll tell him the news.

- (8) {  
 Immediately  
 Directly  
 Instantly  
 As soon as } I had done it, I knew I had made a mistake.

- (9) I'll give him your message {  
 immediately  
 directly  
 instantly  
 the minute  
 the moment  
 the instant  
 as soon as } he arrives.

6) hardly...when (or before) = scarcely.....when = barely...  
...when = no sooner.....than 剛...就

- (1) Hardly had the plane landed when the people ran towards it.
- (2) We had hardly started from home when the engine gave out.
- (3) Hardly had we gathered in the wheat when (or before) it began to rain.
- (4) Hardly (Scarcely) had he opened the door when (before) a gust of wind blew the candle out.
- (5) We had hardly (scarcely) got into the country when it began to rain.
- (6) Scarcely (Hardly) had she sat down when she heard someone knocking at the door.
- (7) The circuit had hardly been closed when the current started to flow.
- (8) Hardly had they started to work when the trouble began.
- (9) Hardly had I arrived when I had a new problem to cope with.
- (10) We had hardly sat down when the bell rang.
- (11) Scarcely had aluminium come in contact with air when a coating was formed.
- (12) The heated air had scarcely entered the blast furnace when it combined with the coke, forming carbon monoxide.
- (13) Scarcely had he entered the room when the phone rang.

(14) He had scarcely got home when it began to rain.

(15) He had barely arrived when he had to leave again.

注：(1) 当 hardly, scarcely, barely 位于句首时，主句中的主、谓倒装。

(2) when (or before) 引导的时间状语从句谓语一般用一般过去时，主句的谓语用过去完成时。

7) once 一旦…就… (= as soon as = the moment)

(1) Once the machines are tested, they may be put into service.

(2) Once it is gone, you will never get it back.  
(一旦失去，再也找不回来。)

(3) Once you understand this rule, you will have no further difficulty.

(4) Once bit, twice shy.  
(一朝被蛇咬，十年怕井绳。)

(5) Once you begin, you must continue.

(6) Once the dispute is over, we can go back to work.

(7) It is with time as with the current of water, once it goes, it never comes back again.  
(时间就象流水，一去永远不复返。)

(8) Once these technical problems are successfully solved, the output will be raised on a large scale.

(9) Once the switch is on, the electric current flows through the circuit.

(10) Once an object is started moving, it will move on forever unless something stops it.

(11) Once a spaceship is in outer space, there is no friction because there is no air to press against.

(12) (我们刚把粮食收进来, 天就开始下雨了。)

As soon as	}	We gathered in the grain, it began to	
The moment			rain.
The minute			
The instant			
Instantly			
Directly			
Immediately			

We had hardly	}	gathered in the grain when it be-	
We had scarcely			gan to rain.
We had barely			
Hardly had we			
Scarcely had we			
Barely had we			

We had no sooner	}	gathered in the grain than it
No sooner had we		

8) on

(1) On being heated for 10 minutes, the liquid should be allowed to cool.

(一旦对液体进行十分钟的加热后, 就必须让它冷却。)

(2) On being heated many solids are changed into liquids.

(3) On testing the machine, we discovered that it had been wrongly assembled.

(4) On realizing that a storm was approaching, they returned home quickly.

(5) On seeing the train coming, we all began to hurry.



- (6) On learning that Tom had passed his examination, I rang him up.
- (7) On looking around, he noticed that all the windows closed.
- (8) On entering the room, I was handed a pencil and a sheet of paper.
- (9) On arriving there, we joined the Liberation Army.
- (10) On her return to America, she began studying law.
- (11) ① As soon as I entered the railway station, the train started off.
- ② Hardly had I entered the railway station when the train started off.
- ③ Scarcely had I entered the railway station when the train started off.
- ④ No sooner had I entered the railway station than the train started off.
- ⑤ When I (had) just entered the railway station the train immediately started off.
- ⑥ I had just entered the railway station when the train started off.
- ⑦ The train started directly I (had) entered the railway station.
- ⑧ Immediately I (had) entered the railway station, the train started off.
- ⑨ The train started off the moment I entered the railway station.
- ⑩ On my entering the railway station, the train

started off.

⑪ The minute we entered the railway station, the train started off.

⑫ The instant we entered the railway station, the train started off.

⑬ Instantly we entered the railway station, the train started off.

⑭ We had hardly  
⑮ We had scarcely  
⑯ We had barely

} entered the railway station,  
when the train started off.

⑰ Barely had we

⑱ We had no sooner entered the railway station than the train started off.

以上十八个句子均译为：“我们一进车站，火车就开了。”

## 9. “起初，最后”表示法

at first, at (in) the beginning, originally, at the outset.

at last, in the end, in the long run, at length, at long last, finally, lastly, in conclusion.

### A. “起初，开始”表示法

#### 1) at first 起初，开始时

(1) The driver didn't see the danger at first.

(2) There was a little trouble at first, but things soon were quiet.

- (3) At first the job looked good to Bob, but later it became tiresome.
- (4) At first, the machine ran smoothly.
- (5) Many compounds were thought at first to be elements.
- (6) I found English difficult at first.
- (7) At first there were no factories here.
- (8) At first people had refused to believe such a thing possible.
- (9) At first he set me to work at a radio factory.
- (10) An electronic device, however complex it may at first seem, is a combination of several simple devices.

**(2) in (at) the beginning 起初, 开始**

- (1) At the very beginning, people did not have the idea of number.
- (2) You will find it rather difficult in the beginning.
- (3) As I said in the beginning, this is harmful to the crops.
- (4) At the beginning of the meeting, he broke the ice by speaking first.  
(会议一开始, 他首先发言, 打破沉寂的气氛。)
- (5) In the beginning he could say only a few words in English, but now he can carry on a conversation without much difficulty.
- (6) At the beginning he wasn't interested in it.
- (7) In the beginning he had one small shop; now he is the owner of a vast business, with many branches.

### 3) originally 起初, 原来

This factory was originally very small.

### 4) at the outset 在开始, 起初

(1) Revolutionary forces are always in the minority at the outset, but their future is the brightest.

(革命的力量开始时总是少数, 但却是最有前途的。)

(2) At the outset, it looked like a nice day.

(3) At the outset the situation was helpless, but as time went on it began to improve.

(4) This should have been mentioned at the outset.

(5) I did not trouble myself much about this matter at the outset.

(这事在一开始的时候, 我并不感到十分头痛。)

## B. “最后, 终于” 表示法

### 1) at last, at long last 最后, 终于

(1) We succeeded in scientific experiment at last.

(2) At last, I'll say a few words about our plan for the next week.

(3) When at last they found him, he was almost dead.

(4) James has passed his exams at last.

(5) At last some action is going to be taken.

(6) For a long time he hesitated, but at last he decided to go.

(7) At long last the Young Pioneer found the owner of the watch.

(8) The chemical composition of the substances that go to form the lunar surface will at last be fathomed.

(构成月球表面的物质的化学成分最终将被探测出来。)

(9) We waited for him at the station, and at long last saw him coming down the platform.

(10) At long last they won their independence.

## 2) in the end 最后, 终于

(1) We made eight different plans for our holidays, but in the end we went to the Great Wall again.

(2) We shall be victorious in the end.

(3) In the end they reached a place of safety.

(4) I found it cheaper in the end to put up at this hotel.

(5) You succeeded in the end, because you tried hard enough.

(6) Energy can be changed from one form into another, but the total amount in the end is unchanged.

(7) It will turn out all right in the end.

## 3) in the long run 最后, 终久, 归根到底, 从长远来看

(1) It pays in the long run to buy goods of high quality.

(从长远观点来看, 还是买高质量的商品合算。)

(2) It does not pay, in the long run to be impolite.

(以较远的眼光来看, 无礼貌是无益处的。)

(3) We will certainly win in the long run.

(4) In spite of the higher capital expenditure involved, the machine may prove more economical in the long run.

(尽管所花费的资金较多, 这个机器终久将证明是比较经济的。)

(5) All animals in the long run depend on plants for food.

(6) In the long run, it is always the intellectual and spiritual forces that count most in the affairs of men.

(人类的事业, 最终说来还是知识和精神的力量为第一。)

(7) Real ability will win in the long run.

(真正的才能最终会使人获得成功的。)

(8) You may make good grades by studying only before examinations, but you will succeed in the long run only by studying hard every day.

(考前用功, 可能会有好的成绩, 但每天用功, 才有最后的成功。)

(9) Oil prices are likely to increase in the long run.

(从长远来看, 油的价格也许会增长。)

(10) In the long run they'll be sorry they did it.

#### 4) at length 最后, 终于

(1) We have at length arrived in London.

(2) We had a lot of work to do; at length, we finished it and went home.

(3) We got to the top of the mountain at length.

(4) At length he came to understand it.

#### 5) finally, lastly 最后, 终于

(1) The Chinese mountaineering expedition finally succeeded in scaling Mount Qomolangma.

(2) Lastly, I would like to touch on the problem of study.

(最后, 我想谈一下学习问题。)

- (3) Lastly, I must explain why I won't accept his offer.
- (4) Finally, I wish to thank all who cooperated in this important object.
- (5) He carefully adjusted his tie, took one last look about the room, and finally walked out of the door.
- (6) Lastly, let me stress the importance of everyone's cooperation in this plan.
- (7) He finally convinced her that reading was a pleasure.
- (8) What decision did you finally arrive at?
- (9) Thus the question was finally settled.
- (10) Finally, in 1966, some astronauts landed on the moon.
- (11) The new method has finally proved to be a success.

6) in conclusion 最后

- (1) In conclusion, I'd like to say how much I've enjoyed staying here.
- (2) In conclusion, I should like to thank all those who have worked so hard to bring about this result.
- (3) In conclusion, I wish to thank you all for coming to the meeting tonight.
- (4) In conclusion, it must be said that nuclear energy is presently one of the cheapest form of energy in the market.

## 10. “有时，时而，不时”表示法

sometimes, at times, now and then, now and again, every now and then, now...now..., sometimes...sometimes, from time to time, once in a while.

### 1) sometimes, sometimes...sometimes

- (1) I sometimes think that it is a great mistake.
- (2) Sometimes he does it in this way and sometimes he does it in that way.
- (3) Learned men are sometimes wanting in judgment.  
(学者有时缺乏判断力。)
- (4) Sometimes we go to the cinema and at other times we go for a walk.
- (5) He is sometimes in the library, sometimes in the laboratory.
- (6) Sometimes he listens to the English broadcast.
- (7) Sometimes we work on the college form.
- (8) Jets of water may sometimes be seen in parks, shooting up into the air and forming very beautiful fountains.

### 2) at times 有时

- (1) One will make mistakes at times.
- (2) At times I wondered if we'd ever get there, the way seemed so long.
- (3) At times he prepares his lessons well; at other times he does very poor work.
- (4) It occurs at times that snow falls in April.



- (5) Allan tells me he sees you at times.
- (6) At times he was in good temper, at times bad.
- (7) At times the child missed his mother very much.
- (8) At times he felt well and could work all day; at other times he had to lie still in his bed.

3) now and then, every now and then, now and again, every now and again 不时, 时而, 时常

- (1) The song now and then (now and again) puts me in mind of the hard life before liberation.

(这首歌使我不时想起解放前的苦难生活。)

- (2) Now and again (Now and then) he went to the films during the summer holidays.

- (3) I hear from him now and then (now and again).

- (4) She comes to visit now and then.

- (5) Every now and then she would glance up at the clock.

(她不时抬头看看钟。)

- (6) He would come to borrow books from me now and again.

- (7) A swim now and then, or better still, every day, will do you a lot of good.

- (8) Every now and then a new plane would take off.

- (9) Every now and again a little boat came into the harbour.

- (10) He only comes up to London every now and again.

4) now...now..., now...then... 有时...有时..., 一会儿...一会儿...

- (1) The moon will now shine forth brightly, now hide behind the clouds.

(月亮时而辉煌地照着, 时而匿在云端里。)

- (2) The weather is changeable, now hot, now cold.
- (3) The band played different songs, now fast, now slow, now soft, now loud.
- (4) Billy ran so quickly he seemed to be all over the field; he was now here and now there.
- (5) It's like a stormy day, now wind, now rain.
- (6) What mixed weather, now fine, now showery.
- (7) In English the same word is used now as a noun, now as an adjective, now as a verb.

**5) from time to time 有时, 间或, 不时地**

- (1) From time to time, you may read articles in magazines on how to be safe from atomic "dust".  
(你常常会在杂志上读到有关防止原子“尘埃”的文章。)
- (2) On-the-spot meetings are held from time to time in many factories to popularize advanced production methods.
- (3) She would come to see me from time to time.
- (4) I must make my rounds to look after them from time to time.  
(我时时要巡视一下来照料他们)。
- (5) When I come across a new word, I put it down in my notebook and review it from time to time.
- (6) The earth is believed to be hit from time to time by streams of electrically charged particles poured out by the sun.

(地球被认为时时刻刻受到太阳所放射出来的带电粒子

流的冲击。)

(7) From time to time he turned round as though searching for someone.

(8) From time to time I was taken to consult a doctor in the city.

(9) I see Jack at the library from time to time.

(10) From time to time the leading comrades waved to the paraders.

(11) From time to time we invite experts to give lectures in our college.

6) once in a while 偶尔, 有时 (= once in a way)

(1) The machines should be checked up once in a while.

(2) The rocky crust of the earth gives way and cracks once in a while.

(地球的岩石外壳有时会坍塌和崩裂。)

(3) Once in a while clouds are dark because the wind has blown dust up into them.

(4) He usually goes to work on the bike, but once in a while he goes by bus.

(5) Once in a while we take a walk in the park.

(6) I wrote my brother only once in a while.

(7) They go out together once in a while but not very often.

(8) She calls on us once in a while.

## 11. “忽然” 的表示法

suddenly, all of a sudden, all at once, on the spur of

the moment, unexpectedly, without warning, bring up short, take up short, break out, break off, burst into (out), burst forth

**1) suddenly**

- (1) Suddenly the lights went out.
- (2) When the large masses of rock suddenly move, vibrations are caused, and an earthquake takes place.
- (3) Suddenly a big bear ran out from behind a tree.
- (4) Suddenly they see something black in the trees.
- (5) Suddenly, there was a slight trembling sound from below, and the captain went down to see what had happened.
- (6) They were just about to give up the question when suddenly they found the answer.
- (7) The train stopped suddenly.

**2) All of a sudden**

- (1) All of a sudden, she saw the postman turning round the corner on his bicycle.
- (2) All of a sudden the lights went out.
- (3) The car came to a stop all of a sudden.
- (4) All of a sudden, he rushed out of the room.
- (5) All of a sudden the building crashed to the ground.
- (6) The bus stopped all of a sudden and the passengers were jolted forward.
- (7) All of a sudden the ship struck a rock.
- (8) It started out to be a beautiful day. Then, all of a sudden, it became cloudy and began to rain.

3) all at once 忽然, 突然

(1) All at once, there was a strange sound in the air.

(2) All at once, we heard a loud noise.

(3) Like any of the other sciences, nobody sat down and thought out electronics all at once.

(象任何其它科学一样, 电子学也并不是某个人坐下, 突然间想出来的。)

(4) It is not easy to work out a perfectly rational solution to this problem all at once.

(对于这个问题不容易一下子得到完全合理的解决。)

(5) All at once it began to rain.

(6) I was reading a book when all at once there came a loud knock at the door.

(7) All at once we heard a shot and the soldier fell to the ground.

(8) Suddenly the ship began to go faster. All at once it put on speed.

(9) All at once rain set in.

(忽然下起雨来。)

4) on the spur of the moment (突然地, 一时高兴)

(1) He said that on the spur of the moment.

(2) She saw a help-wanted advertisement and applied for the job on the spur of the moment.

(她看见一则求才广告就突然决定去应聘。)

(3) John had not planned to take the trip; he just left on the spur of the moment.

(约翰并计划去旅行, 他只是凭一时的决定。)

(4) We headed for the beach on the spur of the mo-

ment.

(我们一时高兴便朝海边走去。)

(5) He started for Europe on the spur of the moment.

(6) When he heard that his friend was going to the city, he decided, on the spur of the moment, to accompany him.

**5) unexpectedly 出乎意外地, 突然地**

(1) They arrived unexpectedly early.

(2) He unexpectedly failed to get the nomination.

(他出乎意外地未获得提名。)

(3) All this happened so unexpectedly that we really did not know what to do.

(4) The weather turned warm unexpectedly, making the trees burst into leaf.

**6) without warning 没有警告, 没有预先通知**

(1) All of a sudden and without any warning, the terrible flood came upon the village.

(2) The engineer left without warning.

(3) I never fire any one without warning.

(我不曾没有警告而辞退人员。)

(4) The inspector came here without warning.

**7) bring up (short) 突然停止**

(1) The two trucks brought up short at the same time and a head-on clash was avoided.

(那两辆卡车同时急刹车, 避免了一起撞车事故。)

(2) His remarks brought me up short.

(他的话使我突然停下来。)

(3) The boy was praised for bringing up the runaway

horse.

(4) John was about to enter the room when he was brought up short by a note on the door.

(5) The ship brought up just before it hit the little boat.

(6) The man brought his car up short when the traffic light changed to red.

(7) Tom's father brought his car up short when he saw a blind man walking across the road.

(8) The truck brought up short against a building.

(卡车突然在一幢楼前停了下来。)

注: short = suddenly *adv.*

### 8) take up (short) 突然打断

(1) The teacher took me up short and pointed out to me my grammatical mistakes.

(2) I took him up sharply when he mentioned the wrong date.

(3) I was quickly taken up by my pupils when I spelt a word incorrectly.

### 9) break out (into) 突然发生, 忽然出现, 爆发

(1) A fire broke out during the night.

(2) The audience broke into warm cheers.

(听众爆发出热烈的欢呼声。)

(3) They broke into song.

(他们突然唱起来。)

(4) The Englishman broke into voluble and perfect Italian.

(那个英国人突然讲起流利而又纯正的意大利语来。)

(5) When he appeared on the platform a storm of applause broke out.

(当他在讲台上出现时, 爆发出暴风雨般的掌声。)

**10) break off 突然停止, 突然打断**

(1) The talks broke off yesterday because of Mr Baker's illness.

(由于贝克先生的病, 会谈昨天中断了。)

(2) It was they that broke off the relations between our two countries.

(3) We had to break off our discussion because it was getting late.

(4) They were arguing but broke off when someone came into the room.

(5) He broke off (speaking) to answer the telephone.

(6) Our trading connection has been broken off owing to a disagreement over prices.

**11) burst into (out) 突然开始, 爆发出, 突然进入**

(1) They all burst into laughter.

(他们都大笑起来。)

(2) The crowd burst into prolonged cheering.

(人群中爆发出长时间的欢呼声。)

(3) She burst into song.

(她突然唱起歌来。)

(4) The plane burst into flames.

(飞机化成一团烈火。)

(5) The valley burst into view.

(山谷突然出现在眼前。)

(6) As soon as she saw me, she burst into tears.



(7) After these warm days we shall see the trees burst into leaf.

(8) Bill burst into the conference room.

(9) When I told her the sad news, she burst out crying.

注: burst into 后跟名词; burst out 后接动名词。

## 12) burst forth 突然发出; 突然出现

(1) When he heard the good news, a broad smile burst forth on his face.

(2) As the speaker took the floor, a stormy applause burst forth from the audience.

(讲演者一登上讲台, 观众中顿时响起暴风雨般的掌声。)

(3) The banks of the reservoir gave way, and the waters burst forth.

(4) Then, to our delight, the sun burst forth, hot and brilliant.

## 12. “同时” 的表示法

meanwhile, in the meantime (meanwhile), at the same time, at one time

### 1) meanwhile, meantime

Meanwhile, they set aside part of their funds for the motorized boats.

(与此同时, 他们拨出一部分资金购买机帆船。)

### 2) in the meantime (meanwhile) 同时, 在此期间

(1) He is working in the factory; in the meantime, he is making use of his spare time to study English.

- (2) The rice will be harvested next week, and in the meantime, we are making preparations to sow wheat.
- (3) You pack the cases; in the meanwhile, I'll get the car ready.
- (4) You will be allowed to rest shortly; in the meantime, you must keep working.
- (5) In the meanwhile, our story returns to his school-days.
- (6) Everything will be clear in the meanwhile.
- (7) I shall go to Beijing in August; in the meantime, I shall be occupied in teaching.
- (8) We'll find a cure for cancer one day; but in the meantime this awful disease will claim thousands of victims a year.

### 3) at the same time 同时

- (1) Can a man both read and write at the same time?
- (2) They went their different ways, but arrived at the same time.
- (3) The two runners reached the finish line at the same time.
- (4) At the same time he studied the vibrations that go to make up sound.
- (5) It is possible to send more than one message along a line at the same time.
- (6) When a gas is heated, its temperature will rise and at the same time its internal pressure will increase.
- (7) Two particles of matter cannot take up the same

space at the same time.

- (8) When the sun and moon pull at the same time, tides are highest and are called spring tides.

(当太阳和月亮同时吸引时, 潮水的水位最高, 这种潮水叫大潮。)

注: at the same time 还作“可是, 尽管如此, 还是...”解, 如:

- (1) There is much point in what you say; at the same time we adhere to our own opinion.  
(2) At the same time, I think it will certainly be useful.  
(3) I'll forgive you, at the same time you must never do it again.

#### 4) at one time 同时, 一齐

- (1) They all tried to talk at one time.  
(2) He can play two chess games at one time.  
(3) Mr. Read's bills came all at one time, and he could not pay them.

### 13. “当…时候, 在…期间”表示法

when, while, as, whenever, at what time, by the time, each (every) time, on the point of

#### 1) when 当…时候, 在…时候

- (1) When sunlight falls on the leaves of plants, it is transformed into chemical energy.  
(2) Air is invisible but we can feel it when it moves.  
(3) When these two kinds of chemicals are added toge-

ther, a chemical change takes place.

- (4) Turn off the switch when anything goes wrong with the machine.
- (5) When we speak, sound waves begin to travel and go in all directions.
- (6) When pure, water is a colourless liquid.
- (7) I was taking a walk when I came across him.
- (8) When a substance changes only in state or in form, it is a physical change.
- (9) When a body is doing work, we say that it has energy.
- (10) The lamp lights when the wires are touching each other.
- (11) They were just about to give up the question when suddenly they found the answer.

注① when 从句位于主句后时, 强调动作的突然性。这时

when =  $\begin{cases} \text{just at that time} \\ \text{and then} \end{cases}$

注② when 引导时间状语从句时, 从句的动作可与主句的动作同时发生, 也可先于主句动作。

## 2) whenever 每当…时候, 无论何时, 无论什么时候

- (1) Whenever work is being done, energy is being converted from one form into another.
- (2) Whenever we met with difficulties, they came to help us.
- (3) Whenever we strike a match, we are using friction to produce heat.
- (4) Drop in whenever you have time.

- (5) Whenever she gets a chance, she practises her English.
- (6) Whenever a given amount of energy in one form is used, there is always an equal amount of energy in some other form in its place.  
(一定量的某种能被用掉时,就有等量的某种其他形式的能来代替它。)
- (7) You seem to have a ready-made answer whenever I ask you a question.
- (8) Then you'll go there on Friday or Saturday—or whenever it is.

**3) while 在那段时间, 在…期间**

- (1) While he was waiting for the light to change, he turned on the car radio.
- (2) While he was driving to work, he listened to the news.
- (3) While we were operating the machines, we were very careful.
- (4) You must be very careful while you are making an experiment.
- (5) While water evaporates, a large amount of heat is absorbed.
- (6) Don't touch a broken wire while electricity is on.
- (7) While the fan is turning, the air is being cooled.
- (8) Work while you work, play while you play.
- (9) We were having a lecture while they were doing the experiment.
- (10) Electric current flows along a wire while a switch

is turned on.

注: while 引导时间状语从句时, 一般强调主句动作与从句动作同时发生。

4) as 当...的时候, 一边...一边, 随着..., 正当...

(1) The strength of metals decreases as the temperature increases.

(2) As the temperature increases, the volume of a gas becomes greater.

(3) The atmosphere gets thinner and thinner as the height increases.

(4) The moon rotates as it revolves (around the earth).

(5) I saw him as he was getting off the bus.

(6) As hydrogen and oxygen combine in reaction, water is formed.

(7) We can not see sound waves as they travel through air.

(8) As the piston moves down, the pressure in the cylinder decreases.

(9) A solid begins to change into a liquid as the temperature reaches its melting point.

(10) As water is heated, its molecules move more rapidly.

注: as引导时间状语从句时, 从句与主句的动作同时发生, 或者一先一后十分紧凑。

5) at what time = when...的时候

(1)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{At what time} \\ \text{What time} \end{array} \right\}$  will you be back this evening?

(2)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{At what time} \\ \text{What time} \end{array} \right\}$  does the train for Shanghai leave?

- (3) At what time was he here?
- (4) At what time did you arrive in London?
- (5) At what time shall I come?
- (6) What time do you get up in the morning?
- (7) At what time did you leave your office?

**6) by the time 到...的时候**

- (1) By the time we got there, the film had begun.
- (2) I shall have finished my work by the time he returns.
- (3) By the time we reached the village, it was quite dark.
- (4) By the time Edison died in 1931, he had about a thousand inventions to his credit.
- (5) By the time we reached the airport, the plane had left.
- (6) By the time these various radio waves reach the earth, they are naturally very weak.
- (7) Although Franklin was a wealthy man by the time he was forty-two, money by itself did not interest him.
- (8) Breakfast will be ready by the time you have dressed.

**7) each (every) time 每当...时, 每次**

- (1) Each time we adjusted the temperature, the pressure also changed.
- (2) Each time an experiment was performed, he would check and recheck the results obtained.
- (3) Each time he came to town, he would visit our

school.

- (4) Everytime we breathe, take some of the oxygen out of the air.

注：有的语法家认为 anytime, the second time, the next time, all the time, at the time, the day, the evening, the year 等都可作连接词，引起时间状语从句，如：

- (1) I will lend you the book any time you like.
- (2) The second time we met, he replied to a lot of questions.
- (3) Correct your mistakes the next time you are doing your exercises.
- (4) I shall do that all the time I'm here.
- (5) He fell ill the day he got back.
- (6) I let them know the evening it was arranged.
- (7) The year he was born, his father went to Yan-an.

**8) on the point of 正要...的时候**

- (1) Since he is on the point of action, I will not say any more on the subject.

(既然他正要开始行动，对这事我不愿再多言了。)

- (2) He was on the point of doing something rash, when you stopped him.

(你阻止他时，他正要轻举妄动。)

- (3) I was on the point of commenting when I heard someone else beginning to speak.

(我刚要发表意见的时候，听到另外一个人开口了。)



(4) Just as he was on the point of leaving his house, an old friend of his called, and they had a long chat together.

(5) I found the ship on the point of sailing.

(6) The coach was on the point of giving up the game when our team scored two points.

(7) I was on the point of asking who he was, when he told me his name.

(8) The fireman saved the child just as the house was on the point of giving way.

(消防队员恰好在那栋房子快要倒塌时把小孩救了出来。)

**9) during 在…期间, 在…时候**

(1) The doors will remain shut during the concert.

(2) He was deeply impressed by what he had seen during his visit.

(3) He was in the army during the last few years.

(4) He came to see me during my illness.

(5) The sun gives us light during the day.

(6) He was not there during the first part of the meeting.

(7) He wrote it during the time he was in Europe.

(8) He has worked harder since he left than he ever did during his school years.

(9) During the night, the rain changed to snow.

(10) He learned English while he was in school and during his stay in America.

## 14. “永远，一直”表示法

always, forever, forever and ever, all the time, all along, for good (and all), on end, till (until), the present perfect tense, the present perfect continuous tense

### 1) always 总是，一直，永远

- (1) The students always keep their classroom in good order.
- (2) The sun always rises in the east.
- (3) Be always loyal to the Party and the people.
- (4) He is always thinking of others.
- (5) We'll always keep this in mind.
- (6) He is always the first to answer the Party's call.  
(他总是第一个响应党的号召。)
- (7) The Party always encourages us to put forward rationalization proposals.  
(党总是鼓励我们提出合理化建议。)
- (8) We always mean what we say.  
(我们说话总是算数的。)

### 2) forever, for ever and ever 永远，永永远远

- (1) Do you think the world will last for ever?
- (2) I hope our country will maintain her independence for ever and ever.
- (3) Gone for ever are the days when China had to depend on foreign countries for oil.
- (4) Truth will live for ever.
- (5) We will remember the heroism of the Long March

for ever.

- (6) They said they would remain good friends for ever and a day. (for ever and a day = for ever and ever)
- (7) The memory of Premier Zhou will live for ever in the hearts of the Chinese people.
- (8) In the absence of all forces the bodies in motion would continue to move forever.

**3) all the time 一直, 始终 (= all the while)**

- (1) The atmosphere pressure varies all the time.
- (2) There is energy working around us all the time whether we are aware of it or not.
- (3) Molecules keep bumping against each other all the time.
- (4) It rained all the time you were absent.
- (5) All the time I was making the experiment in the laboratory.
- (6) I have been thinking of the problem all the time.
- (7) The workers have been thinking of improving the equipment all the time.
- (8) He realized all the while that he couldn't go with us.

**4) all along 一直, 始终**

- (1) She knew all along about the accident.
- (2) I knew all along that he was ill.
- (3) She knew all along about our plans.
- (4) She knew all along about your request.
- (5) China has all along persisted in the spirit of hard

work and self-reliance.

**5) for good (and all) 永久地, 永远**

- (1) He told me his lung trouble is cured for good and all.
- (2) In communist society exploitation and oppression will be done away with for good.
- (3) The Taching oil workers made up their minds to get rid of the backward state of our oil industry for good.
- (4) I have given up smoking for good.
- (5) He hoped that the repairs would stop the leak for good.
- (6) Are you going to leave us for good?
- (7) They are discussing the problem of ending war for good.

**6) ever 永远, 总是, 一直, 始终**

- (1) His discovery will ever be thought to be of great importance.
- (2) The sun is ever shining in the sky.
- (3) Our production of electric power is ever increasing.
- (4) You will find me ever at your service.
- (5) China is not a superpower, nor will she ever become one.

**7) on end 一直, 一连**

- (1) It snowed for two days and nights on end.
- (2) For three weeks on end the firing continued.
- (3) We stood there for three hours on end.

(4) During July and August there was no rain for weeks on end.

(5) We worked many hours on end.

(6) He often ate and slept at the well site and battled there for several days and nights on end.

(他时常在钻井工地上食宿，在那里连续奋战几天几夜。)

(7) Judy spent hours on end writing and rewriting her essay.

**8) till, until 一直 prep. conj.**

A. 用于肯定句中表示“一直…；直到…”

(1) I shall wait until you come back.

(2) I'll go on doing it until he tells me to stop.

(3) Stay here till the lights turn green.

(4) I lived in that city until I was fifteen.

(5) This process will continue until all the fuel is burnt up.

(6) We shall go on testing until we get the correct result.

(7) Convection will go on until all parts of the fluid are of the same temperature.

(8) When water is cooled, its volume contracts steadily till its temperature reaches 4°C.

(9) The letter is to be left here until called for.

(这封信留在这里待人认领。)

(10) He worked until he was too tired to do any more.

B. 用于否定句中表示“直到…才…；要到…才…”

(1) The value of health is not esteemed until it is lost.

(人要到失去了健康,才知道健康的可贵。)

(2) He didn't arrive until the meal was over.

(直到饭后他才来到。)

(3) I am afraid I can not finish the work till Friday.

(恐怕要到星期五我才能完成这项工作。)

(4) He didn't go to bed until he finished his work.

(5) He did not know the basic principles until quite recently.

(直到最近他才懂得这些基本原理。)

(6) I remained ignorant of it until after the event.

(直到事后,我才知道这件事。)

(7) I did not receive the notice till this morning.

(8) They will not set off until everything is ready.

(9) The teacher did not begin the lesson till all the students arrived.

(10) A man should never give up until he has come face to face with the Yellow River.

(不到黄河心不死。)

(11) Water will not boil until the temperature reaches 100°C.

(12) A word is not yours until you can use it correctly.

(要到能正确地使用一个词时,你才算掌握了这个词。)

C. 用于否定句中,表示“在…之前…未…;到…之后…才…”

(1) Do not start till I give the word.

(在未接到我的通知以前,不要动身。)

(2) He refused to leave his post till (he was) ordered to do so.

(在接到命令之前，他拒绝离开岗位。)

(3) People seldom know the blessing of health until they lose it.

(在身体衰弱之前，人们不大知道健康时的幸福。)

(4) Few people had any faith in Columbus' projects until he returned from his voyage.

(在哥伦布航海回来之前，相信他的计划的人很少。)

(5) We did not consider the question until he came.

(在他来到之前，我们一直没有考虑这个问题。)

(6) She won't go away till you promise to help her.

(在你答应帮助他之前，她决不肯走开。)

(7) He didn't leave the room until he closed the windows.

(把窗子关上之后，他才离开屋子。)

(8) He didn't stop smoking until the doctor advised him to.

(在医生提出劝告后，他才停止吸烟。)

D. It is not until...that..., 表示“直到...才...”

(1) It was not until 1959 that chemists succeeded in obtaining this compound.

(直到1959年，化学家才得到这种化合物。)

(2) It was not until yesterday that I got the news.

(3) It was not until the next day that I learned the truth.

(4) It was not until World War II that radar was developed into a practical and useful instrument.

- (5) It was not until modern times that people found there are altogether only about one hundred different types of atoms.
- (6) It was not until the 19th century that heat was considered as a form of energy.
- (7) It was not until the teacher came that the students began the test.
- (8) It was not until midnight that it stopped raining.
- (9) It was not until the forties that the first fully automatic factory was built in the world.  
(直到40年代世界上才建成了第一座全自动化工厂。)

- (10) It was not until two decades ago that transistors began to replace electron tubes on a large scale.

E. not until 引导的倒装句, 表示“直到...才...”

- (1) Not until I shouted at the top of my voice did he turn his head.
- (2) Not until we made the experiment did we find out the unusual nature of this substance.
- (3) Not until he came to China did he know what kind of a country she is.
- (4) Not until then did I realize the danger of the situation.
- (5) Not until 1788 was a method of producing an electric current discovered.
- (6) Not until the invention of the jet plane could airplanes travel at supersonic speeds.
- (7) Not until the early years of the 19th century did man know what heat is.



(8) Not until a few years ago did people know of this new element.

### 9) The Present Perfect Tense and the Present Perfect Continuous Tense

(1) Since returning from Sian he's been awfully busy.

(从西安回来以后，他一直很忙。)

(2) He has kept up his study ever since 1958.

(3) He has worked in that power plant since 1958.

(4) This machine has run well since it was last repaired.

(5) For the past few years, my reading has been limited to newspaper.

(6) We have been creating all kinds of plastics to meet the ever-increasing needs of engineering.

(7) That is the problem we have been trying to solve.

(8) We have been testing a new machine these few days.

(9) The power plant has been supplying electricity to a large research centre for many years.

(10) They have been trying their best to apply that theory to practice.

### 15. “在…左右” “将近…” 的表示法

about, around, near, towards

#### 1) about 左右, 大约

(1) It was about twelve o'clock when he left.

(2) The rain began about midnight.

(3) He has been staying here for about eight months.

(4) He has been in the office for about an hour.

(5) I'll go for a fitting in about a week's time.

(我大约一星期后要去试衣。)

(6) We arrived there about five o'clock.

(7) Tomorrow about this time I shall be here.

(8) They started about four o'clock.

**2) around 大约, 左右**

(1) The fighting began around two o'clock.

(2) She left for Beijing around six o'clock at night.

(3) It is around six o'clock now.

**3) near 将近, 快到**

(1) It was near nine o'clock when we reached home.

(2) It's getting near bedtime.

(3) It must be getting near dinner-time.

(4) The shops were crowded, for it was near Christmas.

(5) He must be getting near retiring age.

(6) He is nearer seventy than sixty.

(他早过了六十岁, 都快七十了。)

**4) towards 将近, 快到**

(1) She arrived at the station towards evening.

(2) She must be getting towards fifty.

(3) The students went to bed towards ten o'clock.

(4) It is getting towards bedtime.

(5) Towards midday the fog began to disperse, and the sun broke through.

(将近正午时, 雾开始消散, 太阳破雾而出。)

(6) They left the party towards midnight.

## 16. “年、月、日、时、星期”表示法

1) in

- |                     |   |                           |
|---------------------|---|---------------------------|
|                     | { | in a day.                 |
|                     |   | in the morning            |
|                     |   | in the afternoon.         |
|                     |   | in the evening.           |
|                     |   | in the night.             |
|                     |   | in the day time.          |
|                     |   | in July.                  |
|                     |   | in the summer.            |
| (1) They can finish | } | in 1987.                  |
| the work            |   | in the twentieth century. |
|                     |   | in four hours.            |
|                     |   | in ten days               |
|                     |   | in a week or two.         |
|                     |   | in three months.          |
|                     |   | in five years to come.    |
- (2) Did he come late in the night, or early in the evening?
- (3) I will come here again late in the afternoon.
- (4) In what year were you born? —in the first year of the People's Republic of China.
- (5) It was a fine day in early spring.
- (6) Days are longer in summer than in winter.
- (7) Class begins at eight o'clock in the morning.
- (8) There are twelve months in a year.

- (9) In autumn leaves of trees grow yellow.
- (10) He can accomplish more in a day than any of us.
- (11) She'll come over in a week or two.
- (12) We must finish up this business in a day or two.
- (13) Porcelain-manufacture was introduced into Japan from China in the 16th century.
- (14) In winter they fly south to places that have no snow.
- (15) People can fly around the world in less than 50 hours.
- (16) In 1934 a scientist dived 3,000 feet below the surface in a hollow steel ball.
- (17) He will probably come here in the middle of March.
- (18) People began to use the radio in the telephone service in the 1930's.

2) on

- (1) It occurred {
  - on the 8th.
  - on the 7th of August.
  - on February 16, 1973.
  - on Sunday.
  - on the morning of 7th.
  - on the following morning.
  - on the afternoon of July 13th.
  - on Monday morning.
  - on the evening of October 15th 1984.
  - on Sunday afternoon.
  - on such a night.

- (2) On what day did he come? —On the 10th.
- (3) He came in the morning, on Monday morning.
- (4) He arrived home { on Monday morning.  
in the morning on Monday.
- (5) He left for Beijing { on the morning of the 5th.  
in the morning on the 5th.
- (6) I was born on January 27, 1939.
- (7) The meeting is to be held on Friday.
- (8) On weekends, Central Park—the largest piece of open ground in New York—closed to motor vehicles from sunrise to sunset, and the road may be used by bicycles only.
- (9) On the fifth day the girl's fever went down.
- (10) Where could he have gone on such a night?
- (11) The students are going to get up a concert on May Day evening.
- (12) The conference was opened on May 18 and closed on July 29.
- (13) She passed away in Shanghai on June 11, at the advanced age of 101.
- (14) They arranged between them to meet on Friday.
- (15) We arrived there on Saturday, on June 14th 1918.
- (16) She is leaving for England on the morning of October 15th.
- (17) It was the first time this year he hasn't worked on a Saturday.

3) at

(1) The event was committed

at seven o'clock  
at 6:30 p.m.  
at nine o'clock in the  
morning.  
at this time of day.  
at daybreak.  
at daylight.  
at sunrise  
at high noon.  
at sunset.  
at dusk.  
at night.  
at midnight.  
at the beginning of the  
month.  
at the end of the term.  
at New Year.  
at 6 o'clock at night.  
at 3 p.m. on June 12.

(2) We must leave at daylight.

(3) We usually take breakfast at seven o'clock.

(4) The book appeared at the beginning of the 18th century.

(5) Something will happen at the dawn of tomorrow.

(6) I wake up at dawn to find the people were already out in the fields.

(7) At noon she excused herself on some pretext and left the house.

(8) He fell into the enemy hands and died a martyr at the age of 26.

(9) Summer holidays normally start at the end of July.

(10) What could they be doing at this time of day?

(11) We always pay our rent at the beginning of the month.

4) this morning (afternoon, evening), tonight 今天上午(下午, 晚上)

this Sunday (Monday, etc.) 这个星期天(一, 等)

this week (month, year) 这个星期(月, 今年)

this Spring (summer, etc.) 今春(夏, 等)

this January 今年正月

(1) There will be a concert in the park tonight.

(2) I shall be very busy tonight.

(3) Tell him I'll be at home this evening.

(4) Will you be at your office this afternoon?

(5) I got up at five this morning.

(6) We can do it this morning, afternoon, or evening, in fact, anytime today.

(7) I've written half a dozen letters this afternoon.

(8) I don't feel like going out this afternoon.

(9) This week we have no school.

(10) I've been reading An American Tragedy this week.

(这个星期我一直在读《美国悲剧》这本书。)

(11) This month we had a long spell of rain.

(这一个月我们这里下了很长时间的雨。)

(12) They have been working here this month.

(13) This year the crop was generally abundant.

(14) We've had too much rain this year.

(15) It is oppressively hot this summer.

(今年夏天热得要命。)

(16) I have had three colds this winter.

(17) He didn't go to school this Monday.

(18) He was sent to hospital this January.

(19) Mary was re-admitted into school this January.

(20) Is there going to be a meeting this Friday?

(21) There will be another bumper harvest this year.

**5) yesterday morning (afternoon, evening), last night (evening) 昨天上午(下午, 晚上)**

last Sunday 上一个星期天      last week 上一个星期

last month (spring, summer, year)

上个月(去年春天, 去年夏天, 去年)

last season 上季

(1) I was at home yesterday morning, but you came yesterday afternoon.

(2) He started for Shanghai yesterday evening.

(3) Last night the rain was coming down in earnest.

(4) Last night there was a fire near my house.

(5) She returned home last Sunday.

(6) She fell ill last Tuesday.

(7) Tom was absent from school twice last week.

(8) Last night I over wound my alarm clock and the spring broke.

(9) Last week, I worked until midnight every night.



- (10) The exhibition was held in Nanjing last Month.  
 (11) They were building a dam last winter.  
 (12) My uncle had a heart attack last year.  
 (13) We had a hard time last season, so we hope we shall have an easy time next season.

6) tomorrow morning (afternoon, evening) 明天上午(下午, 晚上)

next week (month, season, spring, year)

下一星期(下一个月, 下一季, 明春, 明年)

next Sunday (Monday, etc.)

下个星期日(一, 等)

- (1) I shall go back home tonight or tomorrow morning.  
 (2) Will you be at home tomorrow afternoon?  
 (3) They will have a class meeting tomorrow afternoon.  
 (4) If you have something important to speak to me, come to my home tomorrow morning, afternoon or evening as you like, for I shall be at home all day long tomorrow.  
 (5) There will be a report on chemistry next Friday.  
 (6) If you are going to play tennis next Sunday, you'd better get your shoes cleaned.  
 (7) We shall make a new experiment next week.  
 (8) He will graduate at the University of Alberta next month.  
 (下一个月他就在亚伯达大学获得毕业学位了。)  
 (9) Marshall will be graduated from Yale next summer.

(明年夏天马歇尔在耶鲁大学毕业。)

(10) I wish the crop will be abundant next year.

(11) I shall be twenty next month.

(12) The atomic energy factory is to go into operation next year.

(13) We are to turn out 100 trucks next month.

7) the next (following) morning (afternoon, evening) 第二天上午(下午, 晚上) the next (following) day (week, month, year) 第二天(周, 下一个月, 第二年)

(1) He was to leave the next day.

(2) I spoke to him about it one day, and though he failed to do it the next morning, he did it the next afternoon.

(3) He said that they would do the experiment the following week.

(4) He asked me to go there again the following month.

(5) I asked him if the telephone would be installed the following Thursday.

8) the day before yesterday 前天, (the) year (week, month, night) before last 前年(前两星期, 前两月, 前晚)

(1) What day of the month was the day before yesterday?

(前天是几号?)

(2) He only came the week before last.

(他前两星期才来过。)

(3) He was graduated from the College the year before last.

(4) The graduation ceremony of the University took place the month before last.

(5) I am not going, as I heard their rehearsal the night before last.

9) the day after tomorrow 后天, the year (week, month) after next 后年(再下一个星期, 再下一个月)

(1) What day of the week will the day after tomorrow be?

(后天是星期几?)

(2) What time will the game begin the day after tomorrow.

(后天的比赛在什么时候开始?)

(3) The construction work of the railway will be completed the year after next.

(4) Work on the new power station will be finished the month after next.

(5) Work will be begun on the auto highway the week after next.

(汽车公路上的工程将在再下一个星期开始。)

10) three days from now 大后天

three days ago 大前天

(1) The new piano is being delivered three days from now.

(2) The meeting is to be held three days from now.

(3) I received a letter from him three days ago.

(4) The treaty was signed three days ago.

11) this day (today) week (month, year) 上星期(上月, 去年)的今天, 下星期(下月, 明年)的今天

this day (today) fortnight

两星期(前, 后)的今天

Sunday (Monday, etc.) week

前(下)星期日(一, 等)

Sunday (Monday, etc.) fortnight

前(下)两个星期日(一, 等)

(1) He went to Shanghai this day week.

(他上星期的今天去上海了。)

(2) I shall go to the country this day week.

(我下星期的今天要下乡。)

(3) If today is May 1, this day month will be June 1.

(4) She was in America this day year.

(去年的今天, 她还在美国。)

(5) We went to hear a lecture by Professor Liu this day fortnight.

(两星期前的今日我们去听过刘教授的讲座。)

(6) Work on the tunnel will be completed today fortnight.

(隧道的工程要于两星期后的今天才能完工。)

(7) The newspapers reported this case Sunday week.

(报纸在前星期日把这事件登载出来。)

(8) Mr. Brown says he will visit us Monday week.

(布朗先生说, 他要下星期一起来看我们。)

(9) Dr. Martin is scheduled to deliver a lecture Wednesday fortnight.

(马丁博士已定于再下一个星期的星期三举行一次演讲。)

12) tomorrow week 到明天一星期, 从明天算起, 再过一星期

tomorrow fortnight 到明天两星期, 从明天算起再过两星期

yesterday week 到昨天一星期(前一个星期的昨天)

yesterday fortnight 到昨天两星期

- (1) He went to Guangzhou tomorrow week.  
(他去广州到明天就一星期了。)
- (2) He will go to Guangzhou tomorrow week.  
(从明天算起, 再过一星期他就到广州去。)
- (3) She was sent to hospital yesterday week.  
(他送入医院治疗到昨天已一个星期了。)
- (4) That play was presented yesterday fortnight.  
(那出戏已于半个月前上演。)
- (5) I will pay my respects to her tomorrow fortnight.  
(我要在半个月后才去拜访她。)
- (6) The structure was finished tomorrow fortnight.  
(这建筑物已于半月前完成了。)

13) all day, all the day, all day long 整天, 终日

all night, all night long, throughout the night,

all the night through

整个晚上, 终夜, 通宵

all the afternoon, the whole morning

整个下午(上午)

day and night 日夜, throughout the season 全季

all the year round, throughout the year 长年, 终年

(1) All day long he did not speak a single word.

(整日他不讲一句话。)

(2) He was at my uncle's all the day.

(他在叔父家呆了整整一天。)

(3) She hasn't been home all day.

(她终日不在家。)

- (4) He used to work in the office all the day.  
(5) Yesterday it rained all day long.  
(6) All day long these electronic computers are going into operation.

(7) A clock will run all day long if you wind it.

注: all day, all day long, all the day long, all the day  
四个短语意义相同, 但 all day, all day long 较常用, 其它两个则用的较少。

(8) It snowed all night last night.

(9) I was up all night long.

(我一夜没有睡觉。)

(10) They kept a lookout for submarines all night long.

(他们通宵守望着敌人的潜水艇。)

(11) They were making an experiment the whole morning.

(12) I sat at my desk all the afternoon.

(13) He wears that suit throughout the season.

(14) In the tropics it is hot throughout the year.

(15) The work at the weather observation station goes on all the year round in spite of any weather conditions.

(16) On the river steamers and boats come and go busily day and night.

(17) They are striving day and night to realize the four modernizations.

14) from hour to hour 时时刻刻  
day after day

日复一日地，一天又一天

day by day

天天，逐日

from day to day

一天一天地

day in, day out, day in and day out

天天

week in week out

一星期一星期的过去了

month in month out, month after month

月月

year in year out, from year to year

year by year, year after year

年年，年复一年，一年又一年地

(1) The atmosphere always contains some moisture, the amount varying not only from day to day, but from hour to hour.

(大气总是含有一定的水分，其数量不仅天天而且时时刻刻在变化。)

(2) She studied hard day after day, until she could master the subject.

(3) Strangely, these radioactive minerals radiated these new rays day after day and month after month.

(奇怪的是，这些放射性的矿物一天天一月月辐射出这些新射线。)

(4) Day after day we look forward to hearing news from Beijing.

(5) He collected all the necessary data day by day.

(6) The new-born forces are growing up day by day in the course of the revolution.

(7) He tried day by day to enlist her help, but to no purpose.

(他日日求她的帮助，但是没有结果。)

(8) We get our experience from day to day.

(9) Timber grows in importance from day to day.

(木材一天比一天重要了。)

(10) In the old society the working people worked day in and day out, but still couldn't get enough to eat.

(11) He worked at his invention day in and day out.

(12) Day in, day out, the postman is busy delivering mail.

(13) Day in and day out our PLA men stand on guard, watching out for all possible invaders.

(我解放军战士日夜站岗放哨，监视一切可能的来犯者。)

(14) I've been expecting you day in day out.

(15) I am looking for the arrival of the repatriation ship week in week out.

(我一星期又一星期地等着归国船只的到来。)

(16) It was a trip they had looked forward to week in week out.

(这是他们每星期都盼望着的旅行。)

(17) She has been expecting me at home month in month out.

(她在家里一个月一个月地盼望我回来。)



(18) She had been looking forward to seeing you month in month out.

(19) We have been on the watch for a word from him year in year out.

(我们年年等候着他的音讯。)

(20) The mathematician has been studying the problem year in, year out.

(21) The scientist has been studying the problem year after year.

(22) The workers have made new inventions year after year.

(23) Production goes up when production costs go down year by year.

(24) They kept up a steady rise in production year by year.

(25) We should do everything possible to enable the peasants to raise their personal incomes year by year on the basis of increased production.

(26) The work of the staff is increasing month by month.

(各部工作人员的工作月月有起色。)

(27) The drought has been continuous week after week.

(旱灾一星期一星期地延续下去。)

15) every hour (day, week, month, year) 每小时(天, 星期, 月, 年)

every other hour (day, week, month, year)

每隔一小时(一天, 一星期, 一个月, 一年)

every three hours (days, weeks, months, years)

每隔两小时(天, 星期, 月, 年) = every third hour...  
every few hours (days, weeks, months, years)

每隔几小时(天, 星期, 月, 年)

(1) The bus comes here every other hour, not every hour.

(2) I don't go there every day, only every other day.

(3) We have English class every other day.

(4) This train goes to Shanghai every other day.

(5) He comes here every other week.

(6) We have a class meeting every other week.

(7) May I call on you every other week for the time being?

(8) She goes to see the doctor every other month.

(9) You should take the medicine every three hours, not every other hour.

(10) this steamer goes to Chongqing every three days.

(这艘轮船每隔两天开往重庆一次。)

(11) The badminton tournament is held every other year.

(羽毛球锦标赛每隔一年举行一次。)

(12) We had a rest every few hours on our way.

(13) I receive a letter from him every few weeks.

(14) He comes to see us every few months.

16) for hours 一连几个小时, for days 多日了

for weeks, for weeks and weeks

几星期,

for months, for months and months

几个月

for years, for years and years

好几年

for ages

多年了

- (1) We had been discussing the question for hours together.
- (2) She has been reading the book for hours in her room.
- (3) He has been ill in bed for days.
- (4) It has not rained for days together.
- (5) I haven't as a matter of fact been myself for weeks.
- (6) This cold wave will last for weeks.
- (7) For weeks and weeks I never went out.
- (8) I have not written him for months.
- (9) For months and months I have not seen him in such high spirits.
- (10) The drought has been continuous for months.
- (11) The war will last for years.
- (12) He has been studying physics for years.
- (13) For years I have not seen my native village.
- (14) I have not consulted doctors for years and years.
- (15) She's been at Embassy work for years.
- (16) He said he's been thinking about it for ages.
- (17) For ages he's been on the look-out for work.  
(多年来他都很留心去找事做。)
- (18) I waited and waited for him for ages, and he never turned up.

# “原因”表示法

## 1. 原因状语从句

### 1) because 因为

- (1) The engine stopped running because the fuel was finished.
- (2) Steel is widely used in industry because it possesses a great number of useful properties.
- (3) He is making rapid progress because he knows why he is studying English.
- (4) The river has risen because it has rained much of late.
- (5) Metals are called conductors because they conduct heat and electricity.
- (6) The reactions are called nuclear reactions, because they take place in the nucleus of atoms.
- (7) Electricity is used most widely because it can be easily produced, controlled, and transmitted.
- (8) A solid has definite shape because the molecules are kept in certain position.
- (9) Things fall to the earth because the earth pulls them to it.
- (10) Air is a form of matter because it has weight and

occupies space.

- (11) I must go now because a friend of mine is waiting for me.
- (12) He drove very fast because he wanted to arrive there before seven.
- (13) Air can not be an element because an element can not be separated.
- (14) All metals are good conductors because there is a great number of free electrons in them.
- (15) He didn't go to class yesterday because he was not well.

注: because 除引导原因状语从句外, 还可引导表语从句, 如:

- (1) I think it's because you're doing too much.
- (2) This is because a conductor carrying a current is surrounded by a magnetic field.

## 2) since 既然

- (1) Since air has weight, it must exert a force on the surface of the earth.
- (2) Since the speed of light is about 300,000 km/sec, it takes the light from the sun a little more than eight minutes to reach the earth.
- (3) Since air is composed of molecules of several different pure substances, air is a mixture.
- (4) Since everybody is here, let's begin our discussion.
- (5) Since this method doesn't work, let's try another.
- (6) Since we are here, we may as well stay and make

the best of it.

(既来之，则安之。)

- (7) Since light travels faster than sound, we see lightning before we hear the peal of thunder.
- (8) Since man can not create or destroy energy, he must use the energy that is available to him.
- (9) Since you say so, there must be something in it.
- (10) Since you insist, he will reconsider the matter.
- (11) Since water is so important to us, it is very important that the water we use should be clean.
- (12) Since free hydrogen occurs in nature only in minute quantities, it must be extracted from its compounds.
- (13) Since we have ten fingers, the number ten has become the foundation of all counting in all parts of the world.
- (14) It must have rained, since the ground is wet.
- (15) You shall have them cheap since there is little demand for them.

(因为这些东西的需求量不大，你可以便宜地买到。)

- (16) We must practise strict economy since every fen counts in our socialist construction.

(我们必须厉行节约，因为每一分钱在我们的社会主义建设中都起作用。)

### 3) as 因为，由于

- (1) As the moving parts of the machine are oiled, the friction in them is reduced.
- (2) As the voltmeter is out of order, we have to postpone the experiment till next week.

- (3) As the rubbing surfaces are very smooth, there is little friction.
- (4) As water vapour is extremely light, it often rises high in the sky.
- (5) As heat makes things move, it is a form of energy.
- (6) As I have not read the book, I can't tell you what I think of it.
- (7) As the weather was fine, we decided to climb the mountain.
- (8) As he was not feeling well, we all told him to stay at home.
- (9) She is well paid as she has done the work well.
- (10) As you are tired, you had better rest.
- (11) As electrical energy is a kind of energy, it can be changed into heat or other kinds of energy.
- (12) As he wasn't ready in time, we went without him.
- (13) Water, as it occurs in nature, is never very pure.
- (14) As the question is of great importance, we will discuss it once again.
- (15) As steel has many good properties, it is widely used in industry.

注(1) as 引导的原因状语从句, 有时用倒装句型, 如:

- a. Complicated as was the experiment, we had to do it with patience.
- b. Light as is aluminium, it is exceedingly useful in making airplanes.
- c. Situated as I am, I can not accept the offer.

(由于我的处境, 我不能接受这个建议。)

- (2) because, since, as 作连接词引导原因状语从句时 because 语气最强, 所引导的从句是全句的重心所在, 一般位于主句之后, 表直接原因, 回答“why”的问题。since 所引导的从句可位于主句之前, 也可位于其后。全句的重心在主句, 从句只是附带说明原因理由, 并且所表的原因是稍加分析后的原因、理由, 且往往是对方已知悉的, 所以有“既然”之义。

as 在这三个词中语气最弱, 所引导的从句往往在主句前, 用来说明原因。全句的重点在主句, 从句只是附带说明原因、理由, 不能回答“why”的问句。

#### 4) now that 由于, 因为, 既然

- (1) Now that I am well again, I can go on with my work.
- (2) Now that you mention it, I do remember.  
(你这样一提, 我就记起来了。)
- (3) Now that we are masters of the country, there is no difficulty that can stand in our way.
- (4) Now that I have finished my lesson, I want to go for a walk.
- (5) Now that you are all here, let's try and reach a decision.
- (6) Now that you have finished your work, you may go.
- (7) Now that it has stopped raining, let's go at once.
- (8) Now that air has weight, it exerts a force on any



object immersed in it.

(9) Now that we have gone so far, we might go a little further.

(10) Now that we are of age, we must set about our work in dead earnest.

(由于我们是成年人，我们应当十分认真着手我们的工作。)

(11) Now that he is here, he may as well see the sights.

(12) Now that the thing is over, you may as well tell it all.

(13) And now that the solution is just round the corner, the strain begins to tell.

(而现在问题马上就要解决了，过去的劳累也开始显示出来了。)

注：(1) Now that 引导的从句中，用现在时或过去时，不可用将来时。

(2) Now that 中的 that 可省略。

(3) Now that 与 since 不完全相同。since 只表原因。now that 表“既然有了这个新情况，因而...”，所以 now that 引导的从句主要用于说明一种新情况，主从句因果关系很小。

#### 5) seeing that 既然，由于

(1) Seeing that he has come, we will settle it now.

(2) Seeing that some comrades were ill, we'll do the work for them.

(3) Seeing that quite a few comrades were absent, we decided to put the meeting off.

- (4) Seeing that they are just beginners they are doing quite a good job.
- (5) He is excepted seeing that he is a foreigner.
- (6) I cannot employ him seeing that he is too young.
- (7) Seeing that he has not yet been abroad, he is good at English conversation.
- (8) Seeing that he is determined to carry the project through, I helped him.
- (9) Seeing that you are here, we'd better settle the matter right now.
- (10) Seeing that they have made us a big concession, we are bound to make them some concession, too.

(既然，他们对我们作出了很大让步，我们也应给他们某种让步。)

注：seeing that 引导的从句多强调结果，少强调原因。

**6) considering that 由于，因为(有“考虑到…；就…而论”之义)**

- (1) Considering that he is just a beginner, he is doing quite well.
- (2) He has no right to vote, considering that he is a minor.  
(他尚未成年，没有选举权。)
- (3) His English is good, considering that he has studied it for only two years.
- (4) He fulfilled his task very well, considering that it was very difficult.
- (5) It is still in excellent condition considering that it was built 600 years ago.

(6) I expected a more enthusiastic welcome, especially considering it is the first time I have come here.

(7) Considering that the facts of the case are not fully known, it is best to defer passing a judgement.

(由于案情还没有全部弄清, 还是先不下判断的好。)

(8) Considering that I have told you three times, you must know it.

**7) not that...but that 不是...而是..., 不是因为...而是因为...**

(1) Not that the machine is out of order, but that I have not learned to operate it.

(2) Not that they will not, but that they cannot help you.

(3) Not that I dislike the work, but that I am unequal to it.

(4) He felt a bit worried, not that the comrades were not working hard, but that they didn't pay enough attention to safety.

(5) Not that she forgot to do her homework, but that she was busy nursing a sick classmate.

(6) Not that the English book is hard to read, but that he has no time.

(7) He met with great success in the scientific research not that he was clever but that he was diligent.

(8) I helped him not that he deserved it but that he is one of our old friends.

**8) in that 既然, 因为, 在于(主要用于正式文体)**

(1) Carbon atoms are unusual in that they can combine with one another and form long, complicated mole-

cules.

- (2) Television is different from radio in that it sends and receives pictures.
- (3) The equipment is good in that it increases efficiency.
- (4) Criticism and self-criticism is necessary, in that it helps us to correct our mistakes.
- (5) A gerund differs from a participle, in that the one is a noun, while the other is an adjective.
- (6) I prefer his plan to yours, in that I think it is more practical.
- (7) This is a difficult course in that it involves a general knowledge of all branches of engineering.
- (8) Liquids are different from solids in that liquids have no definite form.
- (9) This machine differs from the other one in that it is more powerful.
- (10) Stainless steel is different from ordinary steel in that moisture has no effect upon it.
- (11) This is an ideal site for the factory in that it is close to the sources of supply of the raw materials.
- (12) I like the city, but I like the country better in that I have more friends in the country.
- (13) Both games are good for character, in that both call for team work.

(两种运动都对培养性格有益, 因为两者都要求配合协作。)

### 9) that 因为

that 作为连词，单独使用，引导原因状语从句时，一般位于形容词之后。

- (1) I am sorry that I haven't done as much as I should.
- (2) I am proud that our country is forging ahead at such a speed.
- (3) She was upset that the machine had gone wrong.
- (4) He was ashamed that he had made the mistake.
- (5) The experimenters are afraid that this chemical reaction will take place with great violence.
- (6) They were disappointed that you were unable to come.
- (7) I am glad that television sets are becoming cheaper all the time.
- (8) I am delighted that TV provides jobs for many people.
- (9) We are happy that we have more than one TV station.
- (10) We are sure that we will produce the new type of airplane with our own efforts.
- (11) They were anxious that you should return.
- (12) We are certain that TV will be used increasingly in the classroom.
- (13) He cried out with pain that (=because) he had cut his hand.

注：(1)跟这种从句的形容词一般是表示情感、欲望、知觉、信心等意义的词，如：

afraid, ashamed, certain, confident, content, delight-

ed, disappointed, glad, hurt, satisfied. sorry, surprised, sure, proud, pleased, anxious, curious等。

(2) 有的语法家认为这种从句作形容词的宾语,而不是状语。

10) the rather that 因为...所以更加, 因特别缘故, 特为

(1) I'll not go now, the rather that it's too late.

(2) I write this, the rather that we may know there are other parts of the world than these which to us are known.

(3) I have decided to send my son to that school, the rather that the teachers there are good.

(4) He didn't go to work yesterday, the rather that his father was suddenly taken ill.

11) for the reason that, by reason that 由于...理由, 因为

(1) We must master the scientific method for the reason that it is a prerequisite to the study of science.

(我们必须掌握科学方法, 因为它是研究科学的先决条件。)

(2) They refused his suggestion for the reason that it is not a good one.

(3) They gave a wonderful performance by reason that they had good organization.

(由于他们组织得好, 所以他们演得很精彩。)

(4) He was late for the reason that he had been in an accident.

(他因出了事而晚来了。)

(5) People like him for the reason that he is honest.

(6) We have trust in him for no other reason than that (= only because) he is honest.

(7) The store was shut for the reason that it rained hard last evening.

**12) on the ground that 由于**

(1) He did not work on the ground that he was ill.

(2) He should retire from his work on the ground that his health is failing.

(3) She refused to join on the ground that she was not in sympathy with the cause.

(她因不赞同此事而拒绝参加。)

(4) We approved of his suggestion on the ground that it was as well to try what could do no harm.

(我们赞同他的建议，因为反正没有害处，不妨试它一试。)

(5) Jane excused herself for her low grades on the ground that the teacher didn't like her.

(6) He wishes to resign on the ground that his health is failing.

(他以健康不佳为理由希望辞职。)

(7) I recommended him on the ground that he was one of the most diligent students.

**13) by the means that 由于**

They succeeded in treatment by the means that they took all necessary measures in time.

**14) inasmuch as 因为，既然，由于**

(1) The new bridge is likely to prove very useful inasmuch as it will provide a direct route to the north.

(这座桥可能证明是很有用的，因为它将提供一条直达

北方的通路。)

- (2) This is an ideal site for the factory inasmuch as it is close to the sources of supply of the raw materials.

(这个地方是工厂的理想的厂址，因为它靠近原料供应地。)

- (3) A few had to be given extra coaching inasmuch as they had too poor a start.

(有几个人因为起点太低，不得不给予额外辅导。)

- (4) Inasmuch as we serve the people, we are not afraid to have our shortcomings pointed out.

- (5) Inasmuch as they are still new to the job, suitable allowances must be made for their mistakes.

(因为他们对这工作都还陌生，所以对他们的错误应予适当宽容。)

- (6) He cannot be expected to know much English, inasmuch as he has been educated at a village school.

(不可能指望他懂得多少英语，因为他是从农村学校来的。)

- (7) Inasmuch as this is your team, you have the right to choose your own captain.

(因为是你们的球队，你们有权选你们的队长。)

- (8) Inasmuch as the waves are high, I shall not go out in the boat.

(因为海浪很高，我不乘船出去。)

- (9) Inasmuch as you are here, you had better stay.

(既然你来了，最好就留下。)

- (10) Inasmuch as you are well-armed, you need not be



afraid.

(11) I can not reveal to you the names of these persons inasmuch as I gave them my word of honor not to do so.

(我不能把这些人的名字泄露出来，因为我已经以我的名誉担保，答应他们不这样做。)

注：inasmuch as = in as much as = for as much as = inasmuch as, 但现在一般写成 inasmuch as. inasmuch as 相当于 since, 但比 since 正式一些，基本上只用于书面语，而 since 可用于书面语或口语。

#### 15) when 既然，鉴于

(1) There is no need to use wood when you can use metal.

(既然能用金属，就不必用木材。)

(2) How can I help to solve your difficulty when you won't let me step in?

(既然你不让我插手，我怎能帮助解决困难呢?)

(3) How convince them when they won't listen?

(他们既然不愿意听，又怎样去说服他们呢?)

(4) It is only right that we should hit back when they saw fit to hit us first.

(既然他们认为可先打我们，我们进行还击也是完全应当的。)

#### 16) for as much as

(1) For as much as the President is eighty-two years old, we feel that he should not run for reelection.

(总统已经82岁了，我们认为他不应该再竞选连任了。)

(2) For as much as the director's health is failing, we

feel that he should retire from his work.

### 17) for that 由于

- (1) He could not walk for that his legs were seriously injured.
- (2) Mr. Chang declines to teach the school any longer for that his health is failing.

## 2. 关系代词和关系副词引导的(非限定性)定语从句表原因

### 1) who, whose, which, where

当关系代词 who, whose, which 和关系副词 where 引导非限定性定语从句并含有“原因”之义时, 可与 because 互换。

- (1) He should thank you, who (= because you) did so much for him.
- (2) There was no difficulty in finding the city, whose (= because its) smoke was discernible 60 miles away. (要找到城市是不难的, 因为在60英里之外都可以望见它的烟。)
- (3) We often go to the countryside, where (= as) we can learn a lot.
- (4) I'll follow your advice, which (as it) is a very good one to give. (我要听你的意见, 因为这意见提得很好。)
- (5) Particular care must be taken of your eyes, which of all the sense organs, furnish the most information.
- (6) The simplest atom is that of hydrogen, which has a single electron. (= as it has...)

2) **why** why 作为关系副词，引导限定性定语从句，表原因。

- (1) The reason why we science students must study foreign languages is very clear.
- (2) That is the reason why the expansion of liquid takes place at the surface only.
- (3) This is the reason why we wind the coils this way.
- (4) We all know the reason why energy can neither be created nor destroyed.
- (5) This is the reason why things fall to the earth.
- (6) He didn't know the reason why carbon dioxide was needed by plants.

注：why 作为连接副词，引导的表语从句和宾语从句也可表示原因，如：

- (1) That is why the machine parts wear away during use.
- (2) Many plastics have long molecules. That is why they are so strong.
- (3) That is why we use copper to conduct electricity.
- (4) He is ill. That is why he can't come here today.
- (5) She shows why certain elements are very much alike in properties.

### 3. 并列结构表原因

1) **for conj.**

for 作为并列连词，所引的分句只能位于主句之后。for 表示的原因往往提供上文未交代过的情况或述说间接的原因，并常

常是推测性理由。

- (1) It must have rained last night, for the road is wet.
- (2) She looks pale, for she has been ill for some time.
- (3) It took them some time to get there, for it was a long way to go.
- (4) The electric current must have been turned off, for the light went out.
- (5) We must get rid of carelessness, for it often leads to errors.
- (6) It must have rained much of late, for the river is so high.
- (7) When we say a bottle is empty and has nothing in it, that is not really true, for the bottle is ever full of air.
- (8) I seldom go to see a doctor, for I don't much believe in taking medicine.
- (9) Under the Party's direct care — for he was an orphan — he grew up to be a staunch revolutionary.
- (10) We must unite for union is strength.
- (11) It must be morning now, for birds are singing.
- (12) Rockets always carry oxygen with them, for a fuel will burn only with the help of oxygen.
- (13) If we discuss the subject of electricity, some one no doubt will point out that light is another form of electrical energy, for the electric lamp is one of the most common users of electricity.

2) and

and 连接两个分句时，这两个分句可表示逻辑上的因

果关系，即第一分句说明原因，第二分句是第一分句的结果。

(1) He tried hard and he passed the examination successfully.

(他由于刻苦努力，因而顺利地通过了考试。)

(2) My brother was wearing a raincoat and he didn't get wet.

(3) There hadn't been any rain for months, and the crops had failed.

(4) She is very busy and she doesn't come home very often.

(5) He is rather lazy and there is no chance of his passing.

(6) The moon rotates rather slowly and so one day on the moon is as long as two weeks on the earth.

(7) The car broke half way, and they had to stay in a small inn for the night.

(8) He heard a cry for help, and he rushed out of the house.

(9) The pictures and the sound are relayed by the communication satellite. And they are received in all parts of the world.

3) 其他并列结构 不用连接词，用逗号或分号表示的并列结构，也可用来表因果关系。

(1) I am sure of its identity; I saw it myself.

(我确信是它，因为我亲眼看到了它。)

(2) I'm not going tonight; I'm very tired.

(3) Our rights are, in truth, our duties; our rights are

limited by other men's rights.

(我们的权利实际上也是我们的义务, 因为我们的权利同样也受到他人的权利的限制。)

- (4) The nucleus is very heavy compared with the electron; actually, the whole mass of the atom is concentrated in it.
- (5) Atoms are extremely small; it is impossible to convey an idea of their size in any ordinary simple terms. (因为原子极小, 所以要用普通的简单词语表示它们的大小是不可能的。)
- (6) There was no getting on board of her, the sea raged so fiercely. (根本就无法上船, 因为浪涛太猛了。)
- (7) It would have been hard to count these falling stars, they were so many.

#### 4. 独立句子表原因

- (1) He is not going out tonight. He is tired.
- (2) He was tired. This explains why he went bed early.
- (3) Some method of cooling must be adopted. The temperature reached are very high.
- (4) This type of turbine is very widely used. It has a much greater efficiency.
- (5) The apprentices had very little training. That explains why their work was very poor.
- (6) I am sorry I can't go with you. I am very busy now.

- (7) He had to leave the school. He broke the rules.
- (8) He is absent today. He is ill.
- (9) We should help them. They are our friends.
- (10) We can't use the data in our work. They are not quite accurate.

## 5. 介词(短语介词)短语

### 1) after 由于, 以...之故, 因为

- (1) I shall never speak to him again after what has happened.  
(由于所发生的那件事, 我再也不和他说话了。)
- (2) He ought to succeed after such labours.  
(他如此努力, 定能成功。)
- (3) You must be feeling tired after that long walk.
- (4) We dislike her after the selfish way she acted.
- (5) After our objections, they thought better of their plan.  
(由于我们的反对, 他们改变了他们的计划。)
- (6) After what had happened, we decided to call off the scheduled meeting.  
(因为发生了那样事情, 我们决定取消那次预定的会晤。)
- (7) He succeeded in solving the problem after hard work.
- (8) A safety installation was fixed to the machine after several people being injured.
- (9) After making a great effort, he at last gained his end.

2) at 因为, 为了, 为, 由于

- (1) They were all anxious at her absence.  
(他们对他的缺席都很着急。)
- (2) His spirits fell at the sad news.
- (3) He turned the coat collar up at the wind.
- (4) I took that course at my teacher's suggestion.
- (5) They were overjoyed at his return to work.
- (6) We all rejoiced at the success of the experiment.
- (7) Everybody was alarmed at the news that was might break out.
- (8) We all wonder at his good knowledge of foreign languages.
- (9) They have made the changes at the suggestion of the members.
- (10) He was very angry at losing it.
- (11) Were you all surprised at her sudden departure?
- (12) He is delighted at the idea of going to English.
- (13) I am astonished at his rudeness.
- (14) She was frightened at the traffic accident which took place yesterday.
- (15) I solved this problem at his hint.
- (16) The old coach was astounded at the victory of the visiting team.
- (17) At the sight of his sister's body, he gave a loud cry.
- (18) I came at his request.  
(我应他的要求而来。)
- (19) At the words, he lifted up his head.



(20) The students are much delighted at the victory gained by their football team.

注：at 表原因时，与具有感情意义的动词或动词性结构连用。

### 3) between 由于

(1) Between cooking, cleaning, washing, sewing and knitting, she was very busy.

(她要煮饭、打扫、洗衣、缝补和针织，十分繁忙。)

(2) Between the four factories, this project was soon completed.

(在这四家工厂的共同努力下，工程很快就完成了。)

(3) Between astonishment and joy, she could hardly say a word.

(惊喜交集，她一句话也说不出。)

(4) Between panic and despair, the enemy at last surrendered.

(由于惊恐和绝望，敌人终于投降了。)

(5) Between her regular work and household duties, she had scarcely a moment to herself.

(由于正式工作和家务，她几乎没有片刻空闲。)

(6) Between astonishment and despair she hardly knew what to do.

(7) Between the workers and the PLA men the railway was soon completed.

(8) The work was done satisfactorily between Zhang, Li and Wang.

注：between 表原因时，往往表示双重原因。

4) **by** 由于

(1) The machine was rendered useless by unskillful handling.

(由于操作不熟练, 机器给弄得没有用了。)

(2) His writing gained by continued practice.

(由于经常练习, 他的写作水平提高了。)

(3) He succeeded by hard work.

(4) I am sorry, I took it by mistake.

(5) He get heart disease by excessive smoking.

(6) By mere negligence she had seriously wounded the feelings of Maggie.

(7) Animals' power of attention is always on the alert—not by conscious effort, but by natural habit and disposition.

(动物的注意力永远是警觉着的——这并不是由于有意识的努力, 而是由于习惯和天性。)

(8) We lose much by fearing to attempt.

(人们因不敢尝试而所受的损失很大。)

(9) They were kept in by the rain.

注: **by** 表示原因时, 通常接表忍耐、刻苦、勉励等抽象名词, 有时与 **because of** 用法相同, 但后跟动名词时, 则必须用 **by**。

5) **for** 由于, 因为 *prep.*

(1) I can't see the building clearly for the fog.

(2) He went away for fear of disturbing you.

(3) I shall reward him for his service.

(我要酬谢他的劳绩。)

(4) The motorist was fined for careless driving.

(驾驶员因为开车不慎受到罚款。)

- (5) He trembled for fear.
- (6) The child was punished for lying.
- (7) The work has come to a standstill for lack of funds.  
(由于缺乏资金, 这项工作停顿下来。)
- (8) We are grateful to them for coming to our support.  
(我们很感谢他们来给我们以支持。)
- (9) She was given a citation for her outstanding work.  
(她由于工作出色受到了表扬。)
- (10) They have done that for concern for the children.  
(他们这样做是出于对孩子们的关怀。)
- (11) At any rate, if we fail, it won't be for want of trying.  
(至少, 如果我们失败, 将不是由于我们努力不够。)
- (12) He was rewarded for saving the girl's life.
- (13) In very early times number names only went up to five for the five fingers on one hand.
- (14) She cried for joy.
- (15) He was ordered out to France for his health.
- (16) Guilin is known for its beautiful sceneries.
- (17) They could not go on for lack of materials.
- 注: for 表原因时, 常位于某些行为动词或形容词之后, 表示引起此种行为的原因。

6) from 由于, 出于

- (1) Many accidents come from carelessness.
- (2) I felt fatigued from having sat up all night.
- (3) He suffered from a severe headache.
- (4) The crops are suffering from the want of rain.

- (5) We were all weak from hunger, not having had food for over forty hours.
- (6) The worker died from the explosion.
- (7) Mathematics arose from the need of man.
- (8) She did it from ignorance.
- (9) He suffered from starvation and disease.
- (10) Many people, either from ignorance or from carelessness, are far from precise in thought and expression.  
(很多人, 或是因无知, 或是因不注意, 在思维和表达方面, 都很不确切。)
- (11) One loses nothing from owning one's faults.  
(人决不因承认错误而有何损失。)
- (12) The task was a difficult one, all the more difficult from there being little prior experience.  
(这是个艰巨的任务, 而特别因原先缺乏经验而更为艰巨。)
- (13) In the last weeks of the war she collapsed from undernourishment.
- (14) I've got dark rings under my eye from lack of sleep.
- (15) She shivered from cold.
- (16) The two explorers died from exposure to the cold.  
(这两个探险队员被冻死了。)
- (17) The fire goes out from want of oxygen.  
(火由于缺氧而熄灭。)

注: from 表示句中动作或行为的起因, 通常位于动词 arise, come, die, suffer, shiver, do, collapse, break down 等之后。

## 7) in 因为, 为了, 由于

- (1) He rejoiced in his own success.
- (2) The child screamed in terror.
- (3) He gave the information in hope of a reward.
- (4) She shut her eyes in fear.
- (5) She gave up the idea in compliance with his desire.  
(她顺从他的愿望而放弃了她的主意。)
- (6) He gave himself for others, and in so doing his own health broke down under the strain.  
(他全心全意为他人服务, 正因为这样, 在紧张之下他自己的身体垮了。)
- (7) In his eager solicitude for the wounded, Dr. Bethune forgot all about his own health.  
(由于热切关心伤员, 白求恩大夫完全忘记了自己的身体。)

注: in 表原因时, 常指为自己或自己亲近的人的事而乐, 而怒, 而悲; 而 at 表原因时, 常指为他人的事而乐, 而怒, 而悲。

## 8) of 由于

- (1) The economic crisis comes of the capitalist system itself.  
(经济危机是由于资本主义制度本身而引起的。)
- (2) We are glad of your success.
- (3) He died of liver cancer last year.
- (4) This all comes of our neglecting the lessons of the past.  
(这全由于我们忽略了过去的教训。)
- (5) I am ashamed of having done too little for you.

- (6) The accident came of your carelessness.
- (7) He was sick of a fever.  
(他发烧)
- (8) We are proud of the great achievements which we have made since liberation.
- (9) We're tired of having the same kind of food every day.
- (10) She was afraid of making you uneasy too.
- (11) I did it of necessity, not of choice.

注: of 表原因时, 仅用在 die, do, come, perish, sicken 等动词后边, 或在 "be + proud (sick, afraid, ashamed, glad, tired) 的后边。

#### 9) on 因, 以...为理由

- (1) He went up to Beijing on business.  
(他因公到北京去了。)
- (2) They have objected to him on personal grounds.  
(他们由于私人关系而反对他。)
- (3) Only on our insistence was the measure adopted.  
(只是由于我们的坚持, 这措施才被采取。)
- (4) I bought that dictionary on my friend's recommendation.  
(由于朋友的推荐, 我买了这本字典。)
- (5) I took up a second foreign language on my teacher's suggestion.
- (6) He was arrested on a charge of murder.  
(他被控谋杀而被捕。)
- (7) On whose motion was the question taken up?  
(是因谁的提议而讨论了这个问题的?)

10) over 因为, 由于

- (1) We rejoiced over the victory.
- (2) Don't be puffed up over your success.  
(不要因胜利而骄傲自大。)
- (3) It's no use crying over spilt milk.
- (4) She is the kind of person who worries over trivialities.  
(她是为琐事而忧心忡忡的那种人。)
- (5) They quarrelled over some political question.
- (6) She gloated over her son's achievement.  
(她对儿子的成就感到洋洋得意。)
- (7) They worried over his health.
- (8) She wept over the death of her child.
- (9) He sighed over her misfortune.  
(他为她的不幸遭遇而叹息。)
- (10) It's no use arguing over such a minor matter.

11) to 由于

- (1) He fell down to his opponent's blows.  
(他由于受到对手的打击而倒下。)
- (2) Drink to excess has a bad effect on health.  
(饮酒过度对健康会产生不良影响。)
- (3) He owes his achievement to hard work.

12) under 由于

- (1) She sank under the load of grief.  
(她由于受不了悲伤的负担而倒下去了。)
- (2) The roof collapsed under the weight of the snow.
- (3) He signed the document under protest.  
(他在不得已的情况下(由于遭到别人的抗议)签署了这

份文件。)

(4) The material changed under the action of a strong force.

(5) Under the leadership of the Party, we have won one victory after another.

**13) with 由于, 因为**

(1) The walls are black with smoke.

(墙给烟熏黑了。)

(2) On his bed was a pillow yellow and moldy with age and lack of sunshine.

(他床上摆着一个枕头, 由于时日已久和缺乏阳光而变黄发霉了。)

(3) Tired out with her work, she lay ill in bed with a high fever.

(由于工作劳累, 她病倒了, 发着高烧。)

(4) The whole campus was alive with singing and rejoicing.

(整个校院歌声嘹亮, 喜气洋洋。)

(5) With the weather so close and stuffy, ten to one it'll rain presently.

(天气这样闷, 十有八九马上要下雨。)

(6) With such knowledge and experience, he is sure to succeed.

(7) With the help of the teacher, we have made much progress in our studies.

(8) Being thirsty with talking, he hurriedly swallowed a mouthful of tea and then talked on.

(由于谈话感到口渴, 他便急忙喝了一大口茶, 然后再



往下讲。)

(9) Her face was pale with fright.

(他吓得面无人色。)

(10) The workers did not relax with their victory, but strived harder for new contribution.

(11) His mother is pleased with her new house.

(12) The river is swollen with the rain.

(13) Her eyes were bright with excitement.

(14) The girl was shivering with fear.

(15) Grandpa Li was bent with age.

14) through 由于

(1) It is all through the Party that we have come to lead such a happy life.

(2) It all came through our not knowing how.

(这全由于我们不懂得怎样做。)

(3) He became rich through hard work.

(4) She was knocked down by a truck through carelessness.

(5) The mistake was made through your fault.

(6) It was all through you that we were late.

(7) It happened through no fault of mine but through your negligence.

(8) We succeeded through his help.

(9) He made his mistake through carelessness.

(10) He succeeded through his diligence.

(11) They lost themselves through not knowing the way.

(12) That was all done through friendship.

15) because of 由于, 因为

- (1) Because of their good properties, metals are widely used in industry.
- (2) I went back not because of the rain, but because I was tired.
- (3) The device was not used because of safety consideration.
- (4) The energy which an object has because of its motion is called kinetic energy.
- (5) Because of their lightness, aluminium alloys are used in many parts of airplanes, cars, and railroad trains.
- (6) Materials have different properties because of differences in their composition and in the structure of their molecules.
- (7) Because of its advantages over some natural materials, plastics is often preferred by manufacturers.
- (8) Because of a high temperature, this compound was decomposed immediately.
- (9) He didn't go out because of the rain.
- (10) Because of gravity, water flows on the earth's surface.
- (11) We must not relax our efforts because of the big success already achieved.
- (12) Because of gravity, we are always kept on the earth.
- (13) Alloys are widely used in industry because of their useful properties.
- (14) Because of their weight, diesel engines are not used

in airplanes.

(15) Because of its motion, wind has kinetic energy.

**16) due to 由于, 因为**

A. due to + n. 作状语

(1) A part of the energy is wasted in machine due to friction.

(2) The flight was cancelled due to the fog.

(班机因雾停航。)

(3) Due to the latest inventions in electricity our production has reached a high development.

(4) The rocket moves upward due to the push of its exhaust gas.

(火箭由于它所排出气体的推力而向上推进。)

(5) The train arrived late due to the heavy snowfall.

(6) The number and influence of investors are increasing due to several causes.

(投资者的人数和影响都在增加, 其原因是多方面的。)

(7) The name was omitted due to oversight.

(由于疏忽这名字漏列了。)

(8) 1000 mu of young crops were destroyed due to waterlogging.

(水淹死了一千亩的幼苗。)

(9) Due to the change, a scheduled visit to a factory has been cancelled.

(10) He failed due to carelessness.

(11) Joe's application to the University was not accepted due to his failing English.

(12) The supplies of rubber were stopped due to shipping

trouble.

(橡胶的供应因运输问题而中止。)

(13) Due to the long drought, the crops have failed.

(14) We can communicate over long distances due to the invention of the radio.

B. due to + *n.* 作表语

(1) The late arrival of the train is due to the heavy snowfall.

(2) Changes in society are chiefly due to the development of the internal contradictions in society.

(3) The delay was due to an accident.

(4) The accident was due to the negligence of the sign-man.

(5) The sun's appearing to rise in the east is due to the revolution of the earth on its axis from west to east.

(6) Pressure in a liquid is due to its weight.

(7) Light is due to the electrons spinning round the nuclei of atoms.

(光是由于原子核周围电子在旋转而引起的。)

(8) Potential energy is due to the condition or position of matter.

(位能就是由于物质的状态或位置所产生的能量。)

(9) The colour of the blue sky is due to the scattering of sunlight by the atmosphere.

(10) These mistakes are due to his carelessness.

(11) The accident was due to careless driving.

(12) This was in part due to financial difficulties.

(13) What one thinks and feels is mainly due to tradition, habit, and education.

(14) The bubbles must be due to a reaction taking place.

(15) What are earthquakes due to?

C. due to + *n*. 作定语

(1) This is the resistance due to friction.

(2) The force due to gravitation causes objects to have weight.

(3) A force due to the motion of the molecules of a liquid tends to keep them apart.

(由于液体分子运动所引起的力倾向于使分子保持分离。)

(4) Kinetic energy is energy due to motion.

(5) Mistakes due to carelessness may have serious consequences.

(6) A power failure, due to a break in the cable, brought the whole factory to a standstill.

(7) The acceleration due to the force of gravity is 32 feet per second each second.

(由于重力而产生的加速度是32英尺/秒<sup>2</sup>。)

注: (1) due to + *n*. 还可作“应归于”解, 如:

a. All our achievement are due to the correct leadership of our Party.

b. The discovery was due to her hard work.

c. It is due to you that an apology should be made by him.

(应该是你接受他的道歉或他应该向你道歉。)

d. To what was the victory due?

注: (2) due to + v. 可作“预定、预计”解, 如:

- a. The plane is due to arrive at one o'clock.
- b. The exhibition is due to close on Friday next week.
- c. What time is the concert due to end this evening?
- d. The new motorway is due to open to traffic tomorrow.

(3) due to 在标准英语中, 多用作表语和定语, 如果作状语多用owing to。但现在 due to 作状语的用法也很普遍。

#### 17) owing to 由于, 因为

(1) From this experiment, we see that water, besides its downward pressure, exerts a side pressure owing to its weight, too.

(从这个实验中, 我们可以看出水除了有向下的压力外, 由于重量关系也还有侧压力。)

(2) Owing to our joint efforts, the task was fulfilled ahead of schedule.

(3) Owing to his lack of experience, he didn't do the work well enough.

(4) High carbon steel owing to its high strength and hardness may be used for tools and working parts of machines.

(5) The motor kept on moving owing to its inertia.

(6) Computers have been created owing to the development in the field of electronics.

(7) Owing to the care of the workers, the machines of

this factory are all in good conditions.

- (8) They decided to postpone the trip owing to the bad weather.
- (9) Owing to the fog the train is running behind schedule.
- (10) The sea often seems blue owing to the reflection of the sky.
- (11) There isn't much fruit this year owing to the bad weather.
- (12) There is too much pressure in the ocean depths owing to the weight of water above.
- (13) The railway traffic was out of order owing to floods.
- (14) We could not get there in time owing to a severe storm.
- (15) Owing to the bad weather, the ship was two days behind the schedule.
- (16) Owing to the precautionary measure we had taken, the typhoon did not work damage.
- (17) Owing to his illness, he has been absent from school no less than a month.
- (18) It was owing to this difficulty that the plan did not succeed.

注：owing to 引导的介词短语一般作状语，due to 一般作表语和定语，但现在这种区分不很严格。有时 owing to 也作表语，如：

(1) The accident was owing to his negligence.

(2) His recovery is owing to the strength of his

constitution.

(他的健康的恢复是由于他体质好。)

**18) on account of 由于, 因为**

(1) I invited him to dinner but he declined on account of urgent business.

(我请他吃饭, 但他因要事婉谢。)

(2) The wall declined slightly on account of the earthquake.

(这墙因地震而微斜。)

(3) The flight was postponed on account of bad weather.

(4) On account of the abundance of water, the atmosphere always contains more or less water vapour.

(由于有大量的水存在, 大气里总是含有或多或少的水蒸气。)

(5) The machine broke on account of its having been operated in a wrong way.

(6) The energy that a body has on account of its position or state is called potential energy.

(7) He is unlikely to take part in the construction of the bridge on account of his being busy at present.

(8) On account of what you have said, I shall ring the secretary up right away.

(9) Very few foreigners travel in Sweden in the winter on account of the intense cold.

(10) We have to give up our plan on account of your objection.

(11) We didn't place orders with this firm on account of the high price.



(由于价格太高，我们没向这家公司定货。)

(12) Better put on a little more on account of the night air.

(因为天冷，还是多穿一点的好。)

(13) Traffic suffered on account of the snow.

(交通因下雪受阻。)

(14) The match had to be called off on account of the rain.

(因为下雨，比赛不得不作罢。)

(15) Steam pressure falls on account of condensation in the cylinder.

(由于缸内蒸气冷凝，气压下降。)

(16) I can not leave home on account of having a visitor.

(17) { Because of  
On account of  
Owing to  
due to } the high temperature, special alloys are used.

注：on account of 引导的短语通常作状语，表原因。

### 19) thanks to 由于，幸亏，多亏

(1) Thanks to their help, we succeeded in our experiment.

(2) Thanks to the experiments conducted by scientists, many technical problems were solved.

(3) Thanks to a sudden rain, he came home wet.

(4) Thanks to your advice, much trouble was saved.

(5) Thanks to science, we are free from many evils.

(由于科学，我们摆脱了许多苦难。)

(6) The brigade has doubled its pasture land thanks to

the irrigation projects.

(由于灌溉工程的建成, 大队的牧场扩大了一倍。)

(7) Thanks to his kind help, we finished our work.

(8) Thanks to the efforts of the Party secretary, we managed to tide over the difficulties.

(9) Thanks to these gloves, I did not freeze my hands.

(10) Thanks to the efforts made by its workers, the mill recovered 6,861 tons of alkali in the first half of this year.

(由于工人们的努力, 全厂今年上半年回收6,861吨碱。)

(11) By mistake, two trains were rushing toward each other; but thanks to the air brakes, a collision was prevented.

(12) Thanks to your help, we accomplished the task ahead of schedule.

注: thanks to 引导的短语, 一般用于褒义, 含有感谢的意味。但偶尔也可用于贬义, 表示幽默或讽刺, 如:

Tom broke his leg, thanks to his carelessness.

**20) on the ground of 由于, 以…作理由, 因为**

(1) We opposed the decision on the ground of injustice.  
(我们因判决不公正而表示反对。)

(2) It is said that he was dismissed on the ground of neglect of duty.

(据说他以玩忽职守作为理由而被辞退。)

(3) He refused to take the post on the ground of ill health.

(4) He was excused on the ground of his young.

(5) We proposed a postponement of the meeting on the ground of too few persons being present.

21) by virtue of = in virtue of 由于, 因为, 凭借

(1) The sun appears to rise and set by virtue of the earth's rotation.

(由于地球的转动, 太阳显得会升起, 落下。)

(2) Potential energy is energy held by virtue of position in a force field.

(位能就是由于力场的位置所拥有的能量。)

(3) The energy possessed by an object by virtue of its motion is called kinetic energy.

(4) A body tends to resist the influence of an outside force by virtue of inertia.

(因为惯性的作用, 物体有对抗外力影响的倾向。)

(5) He succeeded by virtue of industry.

(6) By mass energy we mean energy which all bodies possess in virtue of their mass.

(7) The planets rise and fall by virtue of the earth's rotation.

(8) All three won special distinctions in virtue of their outstanding achievements in scientific research.

(三个人都因科研方面卓著成就而获得特殊荣誉。)

(9) A steam turbine does mechanical work by virtue of steam acting on its blades.

(由于蒸气对轮叶的作用, 汽轮机能做机械功。)

(10) Plastic bags are useful for holding many kinds of food, by virtue of their clearness, toughness, and low cost.

(11) He rose from a humble messenger boy to general manager of the company by virtue of his ability, honesty and diligence.

(12) He knows it very well by virtue of continual practice.

(13) He deserves a pension in virtue of his long service.

(由于他的长期服务, 他应得养老的年金。)

(14) The professor was honoured in virtue of his profound knowledge.

**22) by reason of 以...为理由, 由于, 以...之故**

(1) He failed by reason of illness.

(2) Today the great nations exist mainly by reason of their trade and commerce.

(今日大国之存在, 大都由于贸易与通商。)

(3) The plan failed by reason of bad organization.

(4) We won by reason of good team work.

(我们因配合得好而打赢了。)

(5) The price of corn has risen by reason of the foreign demand.

(6) Atoms can unite with and hold other atoms by reason of a force called affinity.

(由于亲和力, 原子能够与其他原子相结合。)

(7) The bearings may get heated by reason of the lack of oil.

(8) All living things must by reason of physiological limitations, die.

(一切生物, 由于生理上的限制, 总是要死亡的。)

**23) in view of 鉴于, 因为**

(1) In view of the grave situation, we must not do such

things.

(鉴于局势严重, 我们决不做这样的事了。)

(2) You must do your best in view of those facts.

(鉴于那些事实, 你应当尽力而为。)

(8) In view of what you tell me about London, I shall not go there.

(鉴于你告诉我的有关伦敦的情况, 我就不去伦敦了。)

(4) In view of the facts, it seems useless to continue.

(由这些事实看来, 继续下去似乎是无效果的。)

(5) In view of the situation, the date must be postponed.

(由于这种形势, 原定的日子是必须延期了。)

(6) In view of the fact that the war is not over yet, the work will be held up.

(由于战争还没有完, 这项工作是会宣告停顿的。)

(7) Schools were closed for the day in view of the heavy snowstorm.

(学校由于大风雪而停课。)

(8) In view of rising labour costs, many companies have turned to automation.

(鉴于劳动成本提高, 很多公司采用自动化操作。)

(9) We must make up our minds at once in view of the urgency of the case.

(由于情况紧急, 我们必须立即下决心。)

(10) In view of the state of the ground the match had to be called off.

(由于场地的情况, 比赛不得不作罢。)

(11) In view of the big gap existing between us and the advanced countries in science and technology, we

must lose no time and spare no effort in catching up.  
(由于我们和先进国家在科技方面存在着巨大的差距,我们必须分秒必争和不遗余力地赶上去。)

(12) In view of this, it is desirable that some one of us should attend the conference.

(由于这点关系,我们应该有个人去参加这个会议。)

(13) Solar energy utilization would be the almost ideal Solution in the future in view of these requirements.

(鉴于这些要求,太阳能的利用在将来也许会理想的解决办法。)

(14) In view of the limitations set by the earth's atmosphere, the advantages of lunar observatory are obvious.

(鉴于地球大气所造成的局限性,月球天文台的优点就显而易见了。)

(15) In view of the above-mentioned facts, we do not think this step advisable.

(考虑到上述的这些事实,我们认为这个措施不恰当。)

24) out of 由于, 出于

(1) The failure of the experiment was out of carelessness on their part.

(2) I opened the box out of curiosity.

(3) Out of concern for his comrades, he criticized her mistake.

(4) She made the mistake chiefly out of carelessness.

(5) We criticized him out of comradeship.

(我们出于同志的情谊才批评了他。)

(6) He did it out of necessity.

(7) They helped us out of pity.

(8) Out of consideration for her feelings, I didn't say anything more than was absolutely necessary.

(由于照顾她的感情, 除了绝对必要的话以外, 我什么也没有说。)

注: out of 引导的短语作原因状语时, 有“发自内心”之意。out of 后边常跟抽象名词, 如: curiosity, pity, concern, envy 等。

**25) as a result of 由于…的结果 (= as the result of)**

(1) As a result of this research work, a considerable amount of data was collected.

(2) As a result of chemical changes in matter, it is possible to form a new substance.

(3) Carbon dioxide is continually entering the air as a result of burning and breathing.

(4) As a result of careful studies and experiments, men have learned how to separate the electrons from their nucleus.

(5) Solar cells, as a result of their importance as a main power source for space craft, already exist as high performance devices.

(由于作为宇宙飞船主要能源这种重要作用, 太阳能电池已经成为高效能设备。)

(6) As a result of their cooperation remarkable achievements have been made in the work.

(7) As a result of a hit or collision a large hole is opened in the side of the ship.

(8) Science is systematic knowledge possessed as a result

of study and practice.

(9) As a result of this extensive borrowing, English has the richest vocabulary of any foreign language.

(10) These plants have long been buried under beds of sand as the result of certain geological changes in the earth's crust.

(11) As a result of hard work, he made much progress.

(12) He is unable to go to work as a result of the fall from his bike.

**26) on the score of 因为, 由于**

(1) The firm failed on the score of bad business.

(该公司因为生意不好倒闭了。)

(2) The proof-reader asked for a change of employment on the score of failing eyesight.

(校对员因视力衰退而请求调换工种。)

(3) He was excused from attendance on the score of illness.

(他因病获准缺席。)

(4) I declined his kind invitation on the score of ill health.

(我因身体不适谢绝了他的友好邀请。)

(5) The proposal was rejected on the score of impracticality.

(这个建议由于不切合实际而被否决了。)

**27) by dint of 由于, 凭借**

(1) What education he possesses he had gathered without a teacher by dint of hard work.

(他所得的教育, 非受之于教师, 全是由于苦学。)



- (2) He succeeded by dint of perseverance.  
(他的成功是由于坚持到底之力。)
- (3) By dint of continued application we eventually mastered the intricacies of the mechanism.  
(由于不断努力, 我们终于掌握了该机械结构的复杂奥妙。)
- (4) By dint of good teamwork and skillful cooperation we finished our spring sowing in less than three days.  
(由于良好的配合和巧妙的协作, 我们不到三天就完成了春播工作。)
- (5) By dint of repetition the truth was brought home to the masses.  
(由于一再重复, 终于使大众明白了这一真理。)
- (6) He gained the prize by dint of steady application.  
(他由于坚定不移的刻苦用功而得了奖。)
- (7) By dint of much trying we finally achieved our object.
- (8) By dint of good teamwork we finished our task in less than a month.

28) by right of, in right of 由于, 凭借, 根据...所有的权利

- (1) He was best entitled to the honour by right of worth.  
(由于才德, 贡献, 他最有权利享受这荣誉。)
- (2) He interfered by right of his office.  
(由于他的职责, 他进行了干预。)
- (3) I, in right of my great physical strength, took heavier ones than the others.

(我因力大, 比别人担承的重一些。)

(4) The dean shall be one of the trustees in right of his office.

(教务长因他的职位的关系, 应该是董事之一。)

29) in consequence of 因为, 由于 (= as a consequence of)

(1) In consequence of heating the length of bar increased.  
(加热的结果, 杆的长度增加了。)

(2) In consequence of its rise in temperature the gas expands.

(3) In consequence of the belated spring, all fruits came in later than usual.

(4) In consequence of his leg injury, he was dismissed by his boss.

(5) In consequence of these efforts many threatened species of wild plants and animals were saved from extinction.

(由于这些努力, 许多类有灭绝危险的野生动植物得到保护, 生存下来。)

(6) In consequence of the deep snow, school will not open today.

(7) In consequence of his promise to pay for the broken window Bill was not punished.

(8) I can not start in consequence of his sudden illness.

(9) In consequence of the heavy rain, there was a landslide along the railway line.

(由于大雨, 路轨上发生了土崩。)

(10) The ship could not sail in consequence of contrary winds.

(11) He got thoroughly wet, and in consequence of it, he took a violent cold.

**30) in consideration of 因为, 考虑到, 由于**

(1) He was acquitted in consideration of his youth.

(念他年轻, 恕他无罪。)

(2) I gave him ten pounds in consideration of his labour.

(我给他十镑以为酬劳。)

(3) In consideration of what you say, I will put off my departure till tomorrow.

(4) In consideration of its importance, this plan must be studied with great care.

(5) In consideration of his hard work he may be allowed another chance.

(6) In consideration of the extra work he had done, the firm gave him an extra week's pay.

(7) I will pardon him in consideration of his past service.

(8) They didn't give him heavy work in consideration of his youth.

**31) in default of 因为没有, 因缺少**

(1) In default of sufficient evidence the suspect was released.

(因为证据不足, 嫌疑犯获释了。)

(2) In default of tools, she used a hairpin and a button-hook.

(因为没有工具, 她利用了一支发针及一钮钩。)

(3) In default of help, they had to entirely rely on their own efforts.

(4) In default of the right one, we had to make do with a substitute.

(因为没有合适的, 我们只能凑合使用代替品。)

(5) The work failed in default of experienced hands.

32) what with ... and what with = partly with ... and partly with

(一则由于...二则由于...; 一方面由于...另一方面由于...)

(what adv.)

(1)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{What} \\ \text{Partly} \end{array} \right\}$  with teaching, and  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{what} \\ \text{partly} \end{array} \right\}$  with writing,

my time is wholly taken up.

(又教书又写作, 我一点空闲时间也没有。)

(2)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{What} \\ \text{Partly} \end{array} \right\}$  with overwork, and  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{what} \\ \text{partly} \end{array} \right\}$  with hunger,

John fell ill.

(一则由于工作过度, 再则由于饥饿, 约翰病了。)

(3)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{What} \\ \text{Partly} \end{array} \right\}$  with his studies, and  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{what} \\ \text{partly} \end{array} \right\}$  with his

sports, the school boy has no time left for idle thoughts.

(这学童一方面学习, 另一方面运动, 没有时间闲思默想。)

(4) What with lack of raw materials and what with shortage of labour, they just managed to fulfil the production quota.

(一方面由于原料缺乏, 一方面由于劳力不足, 他们好

不容易才完成了生产定额。)

- (5) What with the weather, and what with the heavy load on board, this ship was late in getting to port.
- (6) What with his illness, what with the high prices; he finds it hard to get along.
- (7) What with fatigue, and what with hunger, I could not walk any farther.
- (8) I couldn't visit you, what with the snowstorm and the cold I had.
- (9) What with dishes to wash and children to put to bed, mother was late to the meeting.
- (10) What with one thing and another, I can't go there this Sunday.

### 33) respecting 由于, 鉴于

- (1) Respecting the bad weather, the match had to be postponed.
- (2) Respecting the facts, it seems useless to continue.
- (3) Respecting the serious results of the accident, a committee is to be appointed to go into it.  
(由于这次事故造成了严重后果, 所以要派一个委员会对它进行调查。)

## 6. 动词不定式表原因

### 1) infinitive and infinitive phrase

- (1) She smiled to hear the news.
- (2) We jumped with joy to hear of your new success.
- (3) The old woman wept for joy to hear that her son

returned safe and sound.

- (4) She trembled to think of it.  
(一想到这件事她就不寒而慄。)
- (5) We are all proud to be born and bred in New China.
- (6) We were all relieved to see the rescuing party back in safety.  
(我们都因看到营救队全部安全返回而无比宽慰。)
- (7) He grieved to hear of your failure.
- (8) We jumped with joy to hear of the successful launching of our first man-made satellite.
- (9) I'm sorry to have to say good-bye to you.
- (10) I shall be happy to give you such advice as I can.
- (11) We are much pleased to take part in trial-producing the new instrument.
- (12) He was disappointed to find that all the tickets were sold out.
- (13) Everybody was anxious to know what had happened.
- (14) This new equipment is expensive to instal.
- (15) She was wrong not to attend the meeting.
- (16) He was stupid to make such a mistake.
- (17) She seems reluctant to talk about the matter.
- (18) You were careless to leave your bike unlocked.

注：动词不定(短语)作原因状语主要位于：

- (1) 某些表感情的不及物动词之后，(2) 表示主语的情绪或感情的作表语的形容词之后(有时过去分词)，(3) 表示主语的愿望或意愿的作表语的形容词或过去分词之后，(4) 表示主语的品质、性格特点的作表语的形容词。

之后。

**2) the "for ...to" construction**

- (1) He is anxious for his students to pass the entrance examination.
- (2) I'm unwilling for you to leave.
- (3) Lesson Five is difficult for him to understand.
- (4) The lake is safe for us to swim in.
- (5) I am anxious for the painting to be ready on time.
- (6) He is quite willing for your friend to come with you.
- (7) Everybody is anxious for you to accept the position.

## 7. 分词(短语)表原因

**1) the present participle**

- (1) Not knowing how to solve the problem, I asked the teacher.
- (2) Seeing nobody at home, she decided to leave a note.
- (3) Not having done it right, he tried again and succeeded.
- (4) Burning less fuel oil than other machines, this kind of machine is used in many factories.
- (5) Being a weapon in the struggle of life, foreign languages are taught in our college.
- (6) Being much needed by the peasants, this kind of tractor is produced in increasing number.
- (7) Being easy to produce and easy to transmit over long distances, electric power is much used in our

life and production.

(8) Being a beginner of physics, he knows little about electricity.

(10) Being very powerful, laser beams can do many things for us.

## 2) the past participle.

(1) Not given careful consideration, the work can not be easily completed.

(2) Taught by mistakes and setbacks, we have become wiser and handle our affairs better.

(错误和挫折教育了我们,使我们比较地聪明起来了,我们的事情就办得好一些。)

(3) Helped by the teachers, the first year students have made the design.

(4) Repaired by the workers yesterday, the motor works very well now.

(5) Taught by an engineer, the students learnt how to run and repair the new type of machine tool.

(6) Asked by the Young Pioneers, the old Red Army soldier told them a story about the Long March.

(7) The children, exhausted, fell asleep at once.

(8) Led by the Party, the Chinese people have won great achievements in socialist construction.

## 3) the participial absolute construction

(1) So many comrades being absent, the meeting had to be put off.

(2) They being our friends, we should help them.

(3) There being a lot of problems to deal with, we



worked till midnight.

- (4) All the tickets having been sold out, they went away disappointed.
- (5) The question being rather difficult, we must take time to consider it carefully.
- (6) Circumstances changed, it is necessary for you to make a new plan.
- (7) The bus being about to start, he took a hurried leave of his friends.
- (8) His leg badly hurt, he had to stay in bed.
- (9) There being no evidence of his crime, the prisoner was set free.
- (10) Nobody being in the room, I didn't go in.

#### 4) the participial absolute construction

- (1) With the task completed successfully, they went home happily.
- (2) Without any grain left in the house, he had to go begging.
- (3) With the weather so hot and stuffy, they could not stay in the small room any longer and went out.
- (4) With so much work to do, I am afraid I shall have no time to visit him.
- (5) With only three minutes to go, they made for the classroom in great haste.
- (6) With nobody to help him, he worked late into the night.
- (7) With her to help me, I feel quite at ease.
- (8) With the weather changed, we decided to put off

the sports meet.

(9) With city water mains cracked or broken, for a while there was not enough water.

(10) With the temperature falling rapidly, they couldn't go on with the test.

#### 5) such being the case 既然如此

(1) Such being the case, I can hardly attend the meeting.  
(既然如此, 我就不能参加会议了。)

(2) Such being the case, we were very lucky to have a laboratory of our own.

(情况既然是那样, 当时我们能有自己的实验室是很幸运的。)

(3) Such being the case, I can not go.

(既然如此, 那我不能去了。)

(4) Such being the case, it is no use complaining.

(5) Such being the case, we had better give it up.

(6) Such being the case, I'll go there alone.

(7) Such being the case, I can not agree with you.

## 8. 名词表原因

### 1) cause 原因, 缘故, 理由。着重指产生某种结果的原因

(1) The cause of the fire was carelessness.

(2) One little mistake was the cause of all her trouble.

(3) The cause of the fire was a cigarette-end.

(4) The flood was the cause of much damage.

(5) Carelessness is often the cause of an accident.

(6) The underlying cause of the strike was that some

workers were dismissed by the factory.

- (7) The cause of your illness is that you didn't take care of yourself carefully.
- (8) Carelessness was the cause of his failure in the examination.

**2) reason 理由, 原因, 缘故。着重指产生某种行为或想法的理由**

- (1) The reason for his absence was illness.
- (2) The reason (why) he went to bed early was that he was tired.
- (3) The reason (why) some method of cooling must be adopted is that the temperatures reached are very high.
- (4) The reason why atomic power is not available in sufficient quantity is that coal is still a very valuable source of power.
- (5) The reason why exhaust gases can be used to heat the incoming air to the boiler is that they still possess a great deal of heat.
- (6) The reason he went to Beijing was the climate.
- (7) The reason for his success is perseverance.

**3) ground 理由, 原因, 根据**

- (1) They've objected to me on personal grounds.
- (2) What grounds have you for dismissing him?
- (3) There are many grounds for our not helping them.
- (4) On what grounds do you think it would be better to do so?
- (5) I have many grounds for believing the information.

#### 4) root 根源, 原因

- (1) The root of his mistake is that he is full of conceit.
- (2) The root of the trouble with your car is that you didn't have it serviced regularly.

#### 5) wherefore 原因, 理由

- (1) The whys and wherefores of it have remained a mystery.
- (2) We must always go into the whys and wherefores of anything.  
(我们对任何事情都要问一个为什么。)
- (3) Never mind the whys and wherefores.  
(不用管什么原因。)

## 9. 动词 + 介词

#### 1) result from 由于, 起于, 来源于

- (1) The rise in temperature resulted from the chemical change.
- (2) The accident resulted from his carelessness.
- (3) Magnetism results from the movement of electrons.
- (4) The world's great inventions have resulted from applying theory and observation to practical use.
- (5) Success results from continuous practice and study.
- (6) A compound results from the chemical union of two or more elements.
- (7) The heaviness of the diesel engine results from the thick cylinder wall.
- (8) Now we can handle the dangerous radiation resulting

from nuclear fission.

- (9) The war resulted from a frontier incident.
- (10) The development of computers resulted from the rapid growth of the electronics industry.
- (11) The damage resulted from the fire.
- (12) Sickness often results from eating too much.
- (13) Flood resulted from heavy rain.
- (14) Let us hope that peace will result from our talks.

注: result from 表示某种结果由于某种原因产生。

**2) arise from 由...而产生 arise out of 由...引起**

- (1) Development arise from the contradiction inside a thing.
- (2) At least 50% all demand for electricity arises from industry in the USA.  
(在美国, 至少50%的电用于工业。)
- (3) This question arises out of the present market situation.
- (4) Mistakes often arise from lack of organization.
- (5) It was reported that the trouble arose from overload.
- (6) In the field of mechanics, potential energy arises from two properties of matter—its weight and elasticity.
- (7) The movement of charged particles arising from the presence of the electric field is called the electric current.
- (8) Mathematics arose out of the needs of men.
- (9) Accidents arise from carelessness.
- (10) The country's present difficulties arise from the

reduced value of its money.

- (11) Many of the minor illnesses of modern industrial society, headaches, tiredness, and stomach upsets are thought to arise from breathing polluted air.

**3) ascribe ... to 把...归因于, 把...归功于, 把...归咎于... (= attribute to)**

- (1) He ascribed his failure to inexperience.
- (2) The invention of electronic computer has been ascribed to a number of scientists.
- (3) The discovery of America is usually ascribed to Columbus.
- (4) The invention of the telephone is ascribed to Alexander Graham Bell.
- (5) He ascribed his success to many years of hard work.
- (6) They ascribed the forest fire to carelessness.
- (7) Medical researches ascribe much of the rise in the incidence of lung cancer to the widespread use of cigarettes.
- (8) He ascribes his good health to proper diet and exercise.

**4) attribute ... to = ascribe... to 归因于, 归功于, 归于**

- (1) A large part of leakage losses from pipes can be attributed to corrosion damage.
- (2) Many of the accidents which occur on roads should be attributed to human error.
- (3) The discovery of this process has been variously attributed to a number of scientists.
- (4) The apparently different nature of radio waves from

light waves is attributed to the great difference in wavelength.

(无线电波与光波在性质上显而易见的区别归因于波长上很大的差异。)

(5) They attributed the success of their work to the correct leadership of the Party.

(6) He attributed his failure to poor judgement.

(他的失败是由于判断上的错误。)

(7) The collapse of the bridge was attributed to structural weakness.

(8) The optical spectra and X-ray spectra are each attributed to the external electrons of atoms.

(光谱和 x 射线谱都是由于原子的外层电子造成的。)

(9) Mr Brown attributes his good health to careful living.

(10) The car accident was attributed to faulty brakes.

(11) This can be attributed to their better life and the local medical service.

(12) His death was attributed to a heart attack.

5) **refer...to** 是由于...引起的, 把...归咎于, 把...归功于

(1) He referred this phenomenon to electrical disturbances.

(他认为这种现象是由于电气干扰引起的。)

(2) They referred their success to the correct leadership of the Party.

(3) He referred his mistakes to ignorance.

(4) He refers the evils to the aggressive war.

(他把罪恶归因于侵略战争。)

(5) He referred his success to the good teaching he had had.

(6) Many successful businessmen refer their success to hard work and good judgement.

6) **ensue from 因...而发生, 由于...而起 (= ensue on)**

(1) The evils ensue from lack of a stable government.

(这些弊害系由于缺乏巩固的政府而起。)

(2) The trouble ensued from that misunderstanding.

(3) Floods ensued from the heavy rain.

(4) Who knows what troubles may ensue from overpopulation?

7) **stem from 由...发展, 由...而产生**

(1) His back trouble stems from an old war injury.

(2) Newspapers stemmed from the invention of the printing press.

(报纸是由于印刷机的发明而发展起来的。)

(3) Errors of this kind usually stem from carelessness.

(4) Our friendship stems from a chance meeting.

(5) Their failure stems from bad organization.

(6) Nervous illness can stem from being treated inconsiderately in childhood.

8) **set down...to } 由于...的缘故, 归因于**  
**put down to }**

(1) The teacher set down the boy's poor English to his foreign birth.

(老师解释这孩子英语程度差, 是由于出生异国的缘故。)

(2) He set down his success to hard work.



- (3) Sometimes they set down their students poor comprehension to a lack of intelligence.
- (4) He put the odd weather down to nuclear explosions.
- (5) I don't think you can put all his success down to pure luck.
- (6) We all agree that our low efficiency should be put down to poor management.
- (7) The fever was put down to bad water.
- (8) We set down our achievements to the correct leadership of the Party.
- (9) I set his bad temper down to his recent illness.

**9) account for 说明(解释)…的原因(或理由)**

- (1) Illness accounts for his absence.
- (2) The molecular kinetic theory was proposed to account for diffusion, gas pressures and similar phenomena.  
(分子运动理论被提出来解释扩散、气体压力和类似的现象。)
- (3) The burning of ordinary fuels would not account for either the high temperature of the sun or the tremendous quantity of energy radiated.  
(各种普通燃料的燃烧既不能解释太阳的高温,也不能解释太阳辐射出来的巨大的能量。)
- (4) Electric conduction in solution is accounted for by the presence of ions in solution.  
(溶液的导电作用可以由溶液中存在离子来解释。)
- (5) Idleness often accounts for poverty.  
(贫穷常常起因于懒惰。)
- (6) Late frosts accounted for the poor fruit-crop.

- (7) The father's carelessness accounted for the child's death.
- (8) He is very capable; That accounts for his rapid promotion.
- (9) Regular reflection accounts for the formation of some images.
- (10) The result is that Newton's law of gravitation accounts for the first of Kepler's laws.  
(结果就是牛顿的万有引力定律可作为开普勒第一定律产生的原因。)
- (11) It was his carelessness that accounted for the breakdown of the machine.
- (12) The change in speed of the moving molecules accounts for the change of state of matter.
- (13) Melting snow accounts for the regular spring floods in the valley.

10) be responsible for }  
be responsible to } 是...的原因, 对...负责

- (1) The weather is responsible for the delay.  
(由于气候关系才耽误了。)
- (2) Man-made fibers are responsible for the revolution in textiles.  
(人造纤维是引起纺织业变革的原因。)
- (3) The bad weather is responsible for the small attendance.  
(由于天气不好, 出席的人稀少。)

注: 作“对...负责”讲时, be responsible for 对人对事负责, be responsible to 一般指对人负责, 如:

- (1) The engine-driver is responsible for the passengers' safety.
- (2) We must be responsible for the task entrusted to us.
- (3) Each operator is responsible for the proper maintenance of his machine.
- (4) The engineer is also responsible for the safety of the men working in the workshop.
- (5) The people's government must be responsible to the people.
- (6) An officer is responsible to his superior for the men under him.  
(一位军官应对其上下级负责。)
- (7) Our duty is to hold ourselves responsible to the people.

#### 11) impute to 归咎于, 归罪于

- (1) Some politicians impute the rise in crime to the greater freedom being enjoyed by young people.
- (2) I impute his failure to laziness.
- (3) At the inquest, the accident was imputed to a mechanical failure of the signalling system.

#### 12) relate to 归因于

- (1) It is not fair to relate the failure to his carelessness.  
(把失败归因于他的粗心是不公正的。)
- (2) It is difficult to relate these results to any known cause.  
(把这些结果归因于众所周知的原因是困难的。)

## “结果”表示法

### 1. 从属连接词引导的状语从句表结果

#### 1) that 因而，从而，所以，结果

- (1) Something may be wrong that the machine has stopped running.
- (2) What has happened that you all look so excited?
- (3) I got up very early that I was in time for the express.
- (4) Our group did very well in the workshop that we were praised by the workers.
- (5) The hot sun evaporates sea-water on the salt fields that the salt is left behind.
- (6) The students studied very hard last term that they got good marks in the examination.
- (7) The problem is very difficult that it will take us a lot of time to work it out.
- (8) The sun gives us exceedingly much light that it is dangerous for us to look at it.

#### 2) so that 因而，因此，所以，以致于，结果…

- (1) Aluminium is light and strong, so that it widely used in aircraft industry.
- (2) All these problems are hard enough, so that he can

not solve all of them.

- (8) He spoke in a very low voice, so that it was difficult to hear them.
- (4) He didn't plan his time well so that he didn't finish the work in time.
- (5) The day is cloudy, so that we can not take good pictures.
- (6) Bacteria can not make their own food, so that they must live on living or dead animals and plants.
- (7) The temperature is increased so that the volume of the gas becomes greater.
- (8) The total number of the charges of the nucleus and that of the electrons are equal, so that the atom is electrically neutral.
- (9) Semi-conductors have many advantages so that they are widely used in industry.
- (10) The transistor is small in size, long in life, so that it plays an important part in the electronic industry.
- (11) We went early, so that we fulfilled our task on time.
- (12) The temperature is very low, so that it can not melt the metal.
- (13) These computations are extremely complicated, so that it is difficult to work them out without the help of an electronic computer.
- (14) The temperature of the gas is rising very rapidly, so that it expands in the cylinder at once.

(15) The population is increasing very rapidly, so that there is a food shortage.

注: that, so that 引导的从句位于主句之后, 表示主句中某一动作或状态所产生的结果。

3) so...that 这样(如此)…以致于, 因而, 因此

A. *subj. + v. + so + adj. (adv.) + that clause*

- (1) The increase in population is so rapid that there is a food shortage.
- (2) The force of gravitation is so great that it can keep the planets in their orbits around the sun.
- (3) Electrons weigh so little that they aren't even counted in the atomic weight.
- (4) He worked so carefully that he did not make a single mistake.
- (5) Terry ran so fast that he broke the previous speed record.
- (6) Susan worked so diligently that she received an increase in salary.
- (7) The student had behaved so badly that he was dismissed from the class.
- (8) Electronic computers work so fast that they can solve this problem in a few seconds.
- (9) The machine is so heavy that we can't move it in without a lifting machine.
- (10) Electricity is so useful and so common that we can't do much without it.
- (11) This kind of instrument is so common that you can see it wherever you go.

(12) Mary was so ill that we had to send Tom for doctor.

(13) Oil can be moved and stored so easily that it is widely used.

(14) They have worked so hard that they will be able to finish their work ahead of time.

(15) Oxygen is so important to life that we can not live without it.

(16) The sun shone so brightly that Maria had to put on her sunglasses.

(17) The world requirements for rubber are so great that both natural and synthetic rubber are used in large quantities.

(18) He has changed so much that I can hardly recognize him.

(19) So fast does light travel that it is difficult to imagine its speed.

B. *subj.* + *v.* + so + many (few) + plural count *noun* + that clause

(1) I had so few job offers that it wasn't possible to select one.

(2) There are so many things in the shop that it is difficult to know what to buy.

(3) There are so many stars in the universe that it is impossible to count them all.

(4) There were so few students registered that the class was cancelled.

(5) There were so many people on the bus that we dec-

ided to walk.

C. *subj.* + *v.* + so + much (little) + non-count *noun* +  
that clause

- (1) The grass received so little water that it turned brown in the heat.
- (2) He has invested so much money in the project that he cannot abandon it now.

D. *subj.* + *v.* + so + *adj.* + a + singular count *noun* +  
that clause

- (1) It was so hot a day that we decided to stay indoors.
- (2) It was so interesting a book that he couldn't put it down.
- (3) We had so good a time at the party that we hated to leave.
- (4) It is so good a picture that it may be sent to the exhibition.
- (5) It is so lovely a day that I'd like to go swimming.
- (6) The teacher gave us so difficult a text that none of us could read it.
- (7) Electricity is so important an energy that modern industry can not develop without it.
- (8) It is so difficult a problem that it will take us a lot of time to work it out.
- (9) Sodium is so highly reactive an element that it is never found in a pure state in nature.
- (10) This is so old a machine that we can't use it any more without changing some of its parts.



(11) The laser is so powerful an energy that it can burn holes in metals.

(12) It was so amusing a play that it made everybody laugh.

4) such that 是这样的…，以致…

(1) When the state of a body is such that it can do work, the body is said to possess energy.

(当物体处在能作功的状态时，我们就说该物体具有能量。)

(2) The direction of the induced current is such that it will oppose the original current.

(感应电流的方向是与原来电流的方向相反的。)

(3) The force of the explosion was such that all the windows were broken.

(4) The strength of the new material is such that it can stand heavy loads at high temperature.

(这种新材料的强度很高，使它可以在高温时承受重载。)

(5) The effect of the medicine was such that the boy regained consciousness after half an hour.

(这药真有效，半小时以后，那孩子就恢复了知觉。)

(6) The weather was such that I could not go out.

(这样的天气使我不能外出。)

(7) The size of the flow meter is such that the flow is uneffected by it.

(流量表的尺寸大小应使流量不受其影响为宜。)

(8) The job is such that it demands the greatest skill.

(这种工作不简单，它要求最高超的技能。)

(9) The diameter of the pipe must be such that the liquid flows at a moderate speed.

(10) Working conditions in this factory are such that few workers stay for longer than three months.

注：(1) such that = so...that, 所以两种句型可以互相转换, 如:

a. His behaviour was <sup>(such)</sup><sub>(so bad)</sub> that everyone disliked him.

b. The force of the explosion was <sup>(such)</sup><sub>(so great)</sub> that

all the windows were broken.

注：(2) such 在这种句型中是代词, 在句中作表语。

that 是连词引导的结果状语从句, 修饰 such。

such that 句型, 一般不能逐字翻译, 要根据全句的含义按汉语的习惯, 恰当的表达出来。

5) such + n. + that clause 这样(如此)...以致于

(1) Electricity is such an important energy that modern industry can not develop without it.

(2) We left in such a hurry that we forget to lock the door.

(3) This is such a good dictionary that you ought to have it.

(4) Mercury is such a heavy fluid that a piece of iron will float on it.

(5) Atomic energy finds such wide and varied application in our life that our age might be called the age of atom.



catch him up.

(4) such...that, so...that 中的 that 可以省去, 如:

He is so strong and healthy, he never takes any medicine.

5) with the result that 结果是..., 因此..., 从而...

(1) The temperature of the gas is rising very rapidly, with the result that it expands in the cylinder at once.

(2) The aircraft is limited in speed, with the result that it will soon become obsolete.

(这种飞机的速度受到了限制, 因而它将很快被淘汰。)

(3) They worked very hard, with the result that they fulfilled their production plan ahead of time.

(4) The problem is very complex, with the result that it can only be solved by computers.

(5) The country has many natural resources, with the result that it can support itself easily.

(6) They discussed the matter in detail, with the result that they came to an understanding.

(7) The charges of the nucleus and the electrons are equal, with the result that the atom is electrically neutral.

(8) The temperature in the sun is very high, with the result that nothing can exist in solid state.

(9) Sodium is highly reactive, with the result that it is never found in a pure state in nature.

(10) He was careless with the result that all his work was untidy.

(11) He did not study hard with the result that he failed to get promotion.

注: with the result that 同 so that 引导的结果状语从句, 可以互相转换, 如:

a. The temperature of the gases rises  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{so that} \\ \text{with the} \\ \text{result that} \end{array} \right\}$

it expands in the cylinder.

b. The transistor is small in size and light in weight

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{so that} \\ \text{with the result that} \end{array} \right\}$  it is finding wider

and wider use in electronics industry.

c. On high mountains the air pressure is very low

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{so that} \\ \text{with the result that} \end{array} \right\}$  water will boil at temperature

below 100°C.

## 2. 并列句表结果

### 1) so, and so 因此, 所以

(1) Radium can locate and diagnose different growths, so it is often used for medical purposes.

(镭能找出并诊断不同的赘瘤, 因此经常被用于医学上。)

(2) The train is faster, so he takes it to work every day.

(3) The new service is successful, so the train tracks will probably be extended.

- (4) Many commuters use the new train, so automobile traffic is decreasing.
- (5) The train is operated by computers, so only one attendant is needed.
- (6) The bill was signed by the President and so became a law.

(法案经总统签署, 因而正式成为法律。)

- (7) It has been suggested that birds can sense the magnetic lines of force stretching from the north to south magnetic poles of the earth, and so direct themselves.
- (8) He was inaccurate, so he lost his position as an accountant.

(他做事不够准确, 所以失去了做会计员的工作。)

- (9) This rain is not likely to stop for some time, so (= therefore) we had better hurry home.
- (10) I'll let you know my address as soon as I get there, and so (and therefore) you will be able to give me the latest news without delay.

## 2) therefore 因此, 所以

- (1) He broke the rules of the school, therefore he had to leave.
- (2) You are in the right, therefore we should support you.
- (3) Common salt consists of two elements, sodium and chlorine, therefore it is called sodium chloride.
- (4) He doesn't like the heavy traffic, therefore he takes the train to work.

(5) The train doesn't cause pollution, therefore the air will become cleaner.

(6) I was ill, and therefore could not come.

(7) He was the only candidate; therefore, he was elected.

(8) The population is increasing very rapidly. Therefore there is a food shortage.

3) hence 因此, 所以

(1) You have now heard all the arguments pro and con the question, hence it is time for you to decide.

(关于这个问题, 现在你已听到一切赞成与反对的理由了, 所以你解决的时候已到了。)

(2) It is very late, hence you must go home.

(3) The temperature of the gas rises. Hence it expands in the cylinder.

(4) The wind was blowing hard, hence we must close the door.

(5) They did excellent work, hence they deserved to be commended.

4) consequently 因此, 所以, 结果

(1) He is the popular candidate, consequently, he will be elected.

(2) I overslept and, consequently, was late.

(3) The rain was heavy—and consequently the land was flooded.

(4) I missed the train and consequently was late for school.

(5) The documents were not ready. Consequently we

could not sign them.

(6) It rained heavily for three days on end. Consequently, all the land was under water.

(7) The factory in New York was burned down last night; consequently (= as a result) many workers are thrown out of employment.

5) **and**: and 连接的两个分句，第一分句表原因或条件，第二分句表结果。

(1) She was sick and took some medicine.

(2) He heard the explosion and he phoned the police.

(3) He is rather lazy and there is no chance of his passing.

(4) There hadn't been any rain for months, and the crops had failed.

(5) He tried hard and he passed the examination.

(6) Sound is carried by air, and without air there can be no sound.

(7) He is good at maths and he solved the problem in a few minutes.

(8) She missed the bus and had to take the next one.

6) **thus** (= therefore = so) 因此

(1) They worked hard; thus they overfulfilled their task.

(2) He studied hard; thus he got high marks.

(3) Industries thrive where coal abounds; thus you will find coal-mines and many factories side by side.

(多煤的地方工业兴盛，因此你可以见到煤矿和许多工厂并立着。)



7) then (= so = therefore) 于是, 因而

It's getting late, then you'd better go home.

8) accordingly (= therefore = so) 因此, 从而

(1) He was not at home { and accordingly  
and therefore } I left my  
and so

card.

(2) I am satisfied; { accordingly  
therefore } I will pay.  
so

(3) He was too ill to stay——accordingly, we sent him home.

(4) He was told to speak briefly; accordingly he cut short his remarks.

9) wherefore 因此

(1) he was angry, wherefore I was afraid.

(2) We ran out of kerosene, wherefore we used coal.

### 3. 介词短语

1) as a result 结果, 因此(作插入语)

as a result of (phr. prep.) 由于……的结果(请参阅157页介词短语表原因部分。)

(1) As a result, he had been given an excellent job.

(2) As a result, they separated alcohol from water.

(3) As a result, tools made of the cast alloy material have high red hardness and strength.

(因此, 铸造合金材料做的刀具有高的红硬性和强度。)

- (4) The workers are mobilized again. As a result, the output of the iron and steel company went up rapidly.
- (5) When the radiant energy of the sun falls on the earth, it is changed into heat energy, and as a result the earth is warmed.
- (6) The temperature of the gas rises. As a result, it expands in the cylinder.
- (7) The aircraft speed is limited. As a result, it will soon become obsolete.

2) in consequence 结果, 因此(作插入语)

(= as a consequence)

in consequence of (phr. prep.) 由于…的结果(请参阅160页, 介词短语表原因部分)

- (1) He got thoroughly wet and, in consequence, he took a bad cold.
- (2) It rained heavily and, in consequence, the river arose.
- (3) We hadn't enough money to pay our bus fare, and in consequence we had to walk.
- (4) My father is taken ill, and I cannot start in consequence.
- (5) I did not prepare my lesson well, and in consequence I could not recite it.
- (6) Jennie got up late, and in consequence she missed the bus.
- (7) You studied hard, and in consequence you passed the test.

### 3) out of (结果)使...不

- (1) We persuaded him out of doing that.
- (2) He is reasoned out of those foolish ideas.  
(他被说服放弃了那些愚蠢的想法。)
- (3) He talked me out of my resolution.  
(他说服我放弃了原来的决心。)

## 4. 动词不定式(短语)

### 1) too.....to

- (1) We found the room too small to hold so many people.
- (2) The place was too far away to be reached in two hours' time.
- (3) The problem is too complicated to be solved in a few hours.
- (4) The distances from the earth to other stars are too great to imagine.
- (5) This material is too heavy to be used in the construction of planes.
- (6) Molecules are too small to be seen even with the most powerful microscope.
- (7) The man-made satellite flies too high to be seen clearly.
- (8) The doctor was too busy to answer the telephone.
- (9) This book is too large to go in your pocket.
- (10) Ultrasonic waves are too high in frequency to hear.
- (11) The metal is too hard to machine.

(12) The air fifty miles up is too thin to carry sound.

(13) He was too impatient to work in the laboratory.

(14) I've come too late to prevent him from going there.

(15) He was too short to reach the book on the shelf.

注: (1) “too + *adj.* (*adv.*) + to + *v.*” 结构, 可以扩展为“so ...that” 构成的结果状语从句, 如:

a. The problem is too complicated to be solved in a few hours. 可以改为:

The problem is so complicated that it can not be solved in a few hours.

b. He was too excited to fall asleep. 可改写为:

He was too excited that he could not fall asleep.

(2) “too……to” 结构的两种不同的意义的用法, 请参阅“否定形式”3.“意义上的否定”6) “too…to 结构表否定” 的注释。

(3) “too……for……to” 结构表结果, 如:

a. The speed of light is too great for us to measure in simple units.

b. The book is too difficult for the first-year students to read.

c. The laser technique is too complicated for you to master now.

2) (only) + *inf.*

(1) He hurried to the house only to find that it was empty.

(2) I rushed to the station as fast as I could, only to find the train had already gone.

- (3) The old scientist hope that he would live to see the realization of the four modernizations in China.
- (4) The chemicals are acting on each other to produce electric current.
- (5) Sodium acts on water to liberate hydrogen.
- (6) Hydrogen combines with oxygen to form water.
- (7) I went to see him only to find him out.
- (8) He got to the top only to find that someone else had reached it first.
- (9) I hurried to the building only to find that the meeting had been cancelled.
- (10) He reached the station exhausted only to learn that the train had just left.

3) **so + adj. (adv.) + as to + v. 如此地...以致**

- (1) He was so kind as to show me the way.

(他好心地给我指路。)

- (2) Any aircraft engine must be so designed as to keep the weight not too great.

(任何航空发动机都必须设计得保持不太大的重量。)

- (3) He wrote so carefully as to make every word clear.
- (4) The country has so little oil as to make it necessary to import large quantities.
- (5) Ultrasonic frequencies are so high as to be out of the range of the human ear.
- (6) Sunlight travels so fast as to take only a few minutes to reach the earth.
- (7) Thermal expansion of solids is so small as not to be detected by our eyes.

- (8) The substance is so brittle as to be easily ground to powder.
- (9) The friction losses are so much reduced as to become negligible.
- (10) We shall work so hard as to overcome our difficulties.

4) such + n. + as to + v.

- (1) There is such a rapid increase in population as to cause a food shortage.
- (2) The computer is programmed in such a way as to gather a wide range of information from outer space.

(计算机要设计得使它能从外层空间广泛收集信息。)

- (3) Modern forms of transportation are designed and constructed of such shape as to give little resistance to the air.

(现代运输工具应设计得和制造得使其形式对空气呈现很少的阻力。)

- (4) These two compounds react in such a way as to liberate oxygen.
- (5) The induced current flows in such a direction as to oppose the change of flux.

(感应电流以阻碍磁通变化的方向流动。)

- (6) The book was written in such an interesting way as to be enjoyable to young and old alike.
- (7) He wrote with such a care as to make every word clear.

5) such as to + v. 是这样的…，以致

- (1) The diameter of the pipe must be such as to permit the liquid to flow at a moderate speed.  
(管子的直径必须使液体能以适中的速度流过。)
- (2) The characteristics of this alloy are such as to make it very suitable for this purpose.  
(这种合金的特点是能使该合金适合于这种用途。)
- (3) The size of the flow-meter is such as to have no effect on the flow.  
(流量表的尺寸大小以不影响流量为宜。)
- (4) The job is such as to demand the greatest skill.  
(这种工作非同小可，它要求最高超的技能。)
- (5) The working conditions are not such as to cause the machine to be out of order.  
(操作条件不至于使机器发生故障。)
- (6) His illness was not such as to cause anxiety.  
(他的病不足以令人焦虑。)
- (7) His remarks were such as to annoy everybody at the meeting.  
(他的话使会场上的人人反感。)

## 5. 分词(短语)

- (1) The workers have worked out new control elements, making the operation much easier.
- (2) The oxygen in the air acts on iron pipes, making them rust.
- (3) Last year the yield climbed again, reaching 1300 jin.

- (4) He didn't come today, ~~there~~ by making it necessary for us to find someone to do his work.
- (5) We increase the length of the wire, thus increasing its resistance.
- (6) Their car was caught in a traffic jam, thus causing the delay.
- (7) Hydrogen burns in oxygen or air, forming water.
- (8) Coal is burning, giving us warmth.
- (9) This type of radio equipment is not very efficient, wasting a large quantity of electric power in the form of heat.
- (10) They opened fire, killing one of our patrolmen.

## 6. 动 词

### 1) result in 导致(终于造成)……结果, 结果形成……

- (1) The chemical change resulted in the rise in temperature.
- (2) His carelessness resulted in an accident.
- (3) The experiment resulted in failure.
- (4) Their research resulted in new discoveries in the field of nuclear physics.
- (5) A rise in the temperature of the gas results in its expansion.
- (6) Every failure results in an improvement.
- (7) The discovery of electricity resulted in quick development of industry.
- (8) Friction in machines results in a waste of energy.



- (9) Physical changes do not result in the formation of new substances.
- (10) A number of new machines were installed in the factory, thus resulting in an increase in production.
- (11) The rapid growth of the electronics industry resulted in the development of computers.
- (12) Differences in air temperature result in atmospheric pressure differences.
- (13) A chemical change always results in forming at least one new substance.
- (14) The experiment today resulted in finding out some harmful substances.
- (15) The electro-chemical change will result in breaking up water into hydrogen and oxygen.

注: result in 是某种原因导致某种结果;  
result from 是某种结果由某种原因所引起。

2) lead to 导致..., 引起..., 得出..., 以...作为结果

- (1) The use of atomic energy will lead to a great technical revolution.
- (2) The introduction of this method led to a rapid increase of production in our factory.
- (3) Any scientific advance will lead to some advance in technology.
- (4) Developments in engineering leads to further improvements in production processes.
- (5) Hard work leads to success.
- (6) This kind of discussion will certainly lead to still greater differences between the two parties.

- (7) Such a rapid increase in population leads to a food shortage.
- (8) The discovery of the means of producing an electric current with a moving magnet leads to the development of the electric generator.  
(用运动磁体产生电流这种方法的发现使得发电机研制成功。)
- (9) New types of instrument, frequently lead to discoveries.
- (10) Electronic computers will lead to a higher degree of efficiency in the production.
- (11) Disobeying the law can lead to trouble.
- (12) Virtue leads to happiness, vice leads to misery.

### 3) lead up to 导致

- (1) The series of events led up to his resignation.  
(这一连串的事件导致了他的辞职。)
- (2) The first chapter of the book describes the events led up to the war.
- (3) Those conditions led up to the strike.
- (4) The newspapers faithfully reported the events that led up to the Minister's dismissal.
- (5) The border conflict led up to an all-round war between the two countries.

### 4) turn out

A. *vi.* + *adv.* 结果是..., 原来是...

- (1) It turned out that we had a bumper harvest again that year.  
(结果是那年我们又获得了丰收。)

- (2) It turned out that a screw worked loose.  
(原来是有一颗螺钉松了。)
- (3) It turns out that all substances have "zero" energy.  
(原来所有的物质都具有“零级”能量。)
- (4) It turned out that his method didn't work at all.
- (5) It turned out that the experiment was a success.
- (6) On examination it turns out that his arguments are groundless.  
(经过检查, 发现他的那些论点是不能成立的。)

B. Link-*v.* + *adv.* 结果..., 证明是...

- (1) Unexpectedly the weather turned out pretty nice that day.
- (2) Everything turned out all right in the end.
- (3) The affair turned out better than was expected.
- (4) Petroleum has turned out to be an important raw material for the organic chemical industry.
- (5) Our performance turns out (to be) a tremendous success.
- (6) Though it looked like rain this morning, it turned out a fine day.
- (7) The news turned out false.
- (8) This turned out to be a great help to the scientific researchers.
- (9) The person I spoke to turned out to be an Italian.
- (10) She was afraid things weren't going to turn out smooth for us.

5) come of 是...的结果 (= result from)

- (1) Now you see what comes of taking things for gran-

ted.

(现在你该看到想当然的后果了。)

(2) No harm can come of trying.

(试一下不会有什么坏处的。)

(3) There is the danger that nothing may come of it.

(有得不到结果的危险。)

(4) This comes of carelessness.

(5) Skill comes of practice.

(6) That's what comes of disobeying the instructions.

(这就是不按指示办事的结果。)

(7) It has been proved that theory comes of practice.

(8) They made most elaborate plans, but nothing came of them.

6) **come off 结果是, 证明为 (= turn out)**

(1) The day came off fine.

(2) Everything came off all right.

(3) They came off well in the last table tennis game.

(上次乒乓球比赛中, 他们打得不错。)

(4) The concert came off well.

7) **come out (of) 有…的结果, 结果…**

(1) The calculations have come out right.

(2) Nothing came out of all this talk.

(3) No one can say what will come out of the discussion.

(4) Well, what came out of all your careful planning.

8) **come to 得到…结果 (= attain)**

**导致…结果 (= lead to)**

(1) By observing facts and by using the results of exper-

riments we come to the real knowledge of natural phenomena.

(2) A series of attempts having been made, he came to a successful solution of the problem.

(3) These plans will come to fruition according to schedule.

(这些计划将如期实现。)

(4) The international situation is certainly serious, but we hope it will not come to war.

(5) All his plans come to nothing.

(6) Mr. Smith lived to see his invention come to success.

9) bring about 引起, 导致, 产生

(1) The development of science and technology will bring about the rapid development of industry and agriculture.

(2) Their discovery brought about a revolution in man's understanding of the structure of matter.

(3) The electronic computer has brought about basic changes in carrying out mathematical computations.

(电子计算机导致了数学计算的根本性变化。)

(4) It is through chemical change that new material can be brought about.

(5) Conversion from one state to another can be brought about by varying the temperature and pressure.

(温度和压力的变化能够引起物态的转变。)

(6) Technology has brought about great social changes.

(7) The laser has brought about a rebirth of science.

(8) The technical innovation has brought about its desired effect.

(9) The conference failed to bring about an understanding.

(10) Energy is needed to bring about changes in materials.

(11) The harnessing of electricity brought about a new revolution.

(电的驯服曾引起一次新的变革。)

(12) Cooling in the air conditioning is generally brought about by a special refrigerating machine.

(空调的冷却通常都是由一个专用的冷冻机进行的。)

10) **give rise to 导致, 造成, 使...发生**

(1) Reflection of sound gives rise to echoes.

(声的反射引起回声。)

(2) Changes in temperature may give rise to changes in the length of the bar.

(3) The high temperature may give rise to cracks in the furnace walls.

(4) This experiment will give rise to new method of construction.

(5) Automation will give rise to a lot of unemployment.

(6) That statement, if not properly explained might give rise to misunderstanding.

(7) The problems to which these developments give rise are capable of solution if we keep our original purpose in mind.

**11) cause 引起, 起因于, 造成, 给...带来**

- (1) The rise in temperature caused the mercury to rise up the tube.
- (2) The pressure of oxygen causes the mixture to burn rapidly.
- (3) The failure of both engines caused the aircraft to crash.
- (4) The risk of an explosion caused the workers to leave the factory.
- (5) The speed of the train caused it to leave the rails on the curve.
- (6) The sharp rise in temperature caused the engine to overheat.
- (7) The growth of industrial towns caused many people to leave the countryside.
- (8) Heat causes metal to expand.
- (9) The electric pressure causes the current to flow through a conductor.
- (10) Sometimes the air moves very fast and causes a very strong wind.
- (11) Looking directly into a laser beam can cause blindness.
- (12) The scattering of light by gas particles in atmosphere causes the blue colour of the sky.
- (13) The fire caused much damage.
- (14) The waves of the sea are usually caused by wind.

## 7. 名词

### 1) result 结果, 效果

- (1) His limp is the result of a car accident last year.
- (2) Her success is the result of her efforts.
- (3) The result was beyond our expectation.
- (4) Do you know the result of the examination?
- (5) The fire was the result of carelessness.

### 2) effect 结果, 效果

- (1) The medicine had no effect on him.  
(这药对他无效。)
- (2) The effect of this measure will be to raise the productivity of labour.  
(这一措施的效果将是劳动生产率的提高。)
- (3) The acid had no effect on the metal.
- (4) It may be the effect of this illness.
- (5) All our efforts were of no effect.

### 3) consequence 结果, 后果

- (1) The consequence was that he caught a bad cold.
- (2) A more important consequence of the war was the completion of the unification of Germany.
- (3) Nobody can tell what the consequences may be.
- (4) Do you think that the rise in lung cancers is a consequence of cigarette smoking?
- (5) Such a mistake would perhaps lead to disastrous consequences.
- (6) He acts regardless of consequence.



注: consequence 表示结果、后果的意思时,指随着某一事件而产生的必然后果,但不意味着同“原因”有直接联系。

effect 则指由于某种行动、步骤、人或事物而直接产生的结果或效果,与原因有着直接的联系,是 cause 的相对语(因果)。

result 是最普通用语。应用比较广泛,着重指由由一些效果(effect)或后果(consequence),最后所产生的结果。

#### 4) outcome 结果, 后果

(1) The final outcome of the game was a 0-0 tie.

(比赛最后结果是一场零比零的和局。)

(2) What was the outcome of your interview?

(3) The outcome of the election is still unknown.

(4) The outcome of a war is decided by the people.

注: outcome 和 result 意义较近,但它往往指的是竞赛或悬而未决的事最后“见分晓”,“见输赢”。

## 8. 质问因果表示法

### 1) why

(1) why did you break your promise?

(你为什么食言?)

(2) Why do hydrogen ions and hydroxyl ions combine readily?

(氢离子和氢氧根离子为什么很容易结合?)

(3) Why did you decide to put the meeting off?

(4) Please tell me why the computer is so important in

scientific research.

**2) wherefore 为何, 何故**

- (1) Wherefore did you fail to fulfil your promise?
- (2) Wherefore so sad?
- (3) Wherefore did you go?

**3) how so? 何以如此? why so? 何故如此?**

- (1) How can it be so? (怎么会这样呢?)
- (2) You haven't any desire to go? How so?
- (3) Why are you panting so?  
(你为什么那么喘气?)
- (4) You were dismissed from the factory? Why so?

**4) how come(s)? 为什么? 是怎么回事?**

- (1) How comes your fountain pen to be lost?  
(你的自来水笔怎么会丢了?)
- (2) How come you are late?
- (3) How come you never visit us any more?
- (4) How come he isn't here?
- (5) How come he made such a mistake?

**5) how is it that.....? 何故, 何以**

- (1) How is it that he does not come?
- (2) How comes it that John is so much healthier than his elder brother James?
- (3) How comes it about that you are not at home today?
- (4) How is it that he doesn't come to office today?

**6) on what ground (account, score)? 有什么根据..., 为什么**

- (1) On what ground do you say that is true?
- (2) On what account will he help us out?

(3) On what ground have you dismissed him?

(4) On what score did they arrest him?

**7) owing to what circumstances 由于什么情况, 为什么**

(1) Owing to what circumstances have you not turned up till now?

(为什么你一直到现在才来?)

(2) Owing to what circumstances has he been absent from school for more than a week?

(3) Owing to what circumstances has the crop failed?

**8) what...in view (mind), with what in view 是如何考虑的, 为什么**

(1) What have you in view (or mind) that you agree with him to such terms?

(你心中是如何打算的才答应他这种条件?)

(2) With what in view did you agree to let him go scot-free?

(你为什么答应让他干休?)

(3) With what in view do you think the problem is not so complicated as I think?

**9) by virtue of what 由于什么, 为何**

(1) By virtue of what have they such influence over you?

(他们何以对你会有这样的影响?)

(2) By virtue of what was he promoted?

**10) for what reason, for what purpose, from what cause 为什么, 为何**

(1) For what reason did you promise to go?

(2) For what reason did they decide to hold a meeting

to discuss it again?

(3) For what purpose do they be friend such a person?

(他们为何跟那种人做朋友? )

(4) For what purpose did you make such an experiment?

(5) From what cause did they break up their friendship?

11) by  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{whose} \\ \text{what} \end{array} \right\}$  authority 凭  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{谁的} \\ \text{什么} \end{array} \right\}$  权限, 奉谁的命令

by what chance 由于什么机会

by whose permission 由于谁的允许

by whose order 由于谁的命令

(1) By whose authority do you order me to get out?

(2) By what authority did he enter into this contract?

(他以什么权限订立这个合同? )

(3) By whose authority is this journal published?

(这本刊物是经谁批准而出版的? )

(4) By what chance has he become a scientist?

(5) By whose permission was this man admitted?

(6) By whose order did the guards open fire?

## “目的”表示法

### 1. 状语从句

#### 1) that

- (1) Let's work hard that we may make greater progress.
- (2) Let's take the seats that we may see more clearly.
- (3) We must keep ourselves healthy that we may study and work well.
- (4) Stir the solution that the compound may dissolve more quickly.
- (5) The machine must be very strong that it might not break in use.
- (6) We are working hard that we may build our country into a powerful socialist state.
- (7) We study and work hard that we may make greater contributions to the four modernizations.
- (8) Cables are usually laid underground that their life may be prolonged.
- (9) We kept that battery in a dry place that electricity might not leak away.
- (10) They gave their lives that we might live a happy life.

#### 2) so that

- (1) The temperature is raised so that water may be

turned into steam.

- (2) Come early so that we may catch the train.
- (3) He made the experiment with care so that he might get good results.
- (4) Some supplies of water must be treated so that they can be used.
- (5) The notices are written in several languages so that everyone can understand them.
- (6) They hurried so that they might not miss the train.
- (7) I'll leave a note so that they will know where I have gone.
- (8) I sent the letter by air mail so that it might reach her in good time.
- (9) We keep regular records on all the experiments so that we may have enough data.
- (10) I'll give you all the facts so that you can judge for yourself.

**3) in order that 为了, 以便, 为的是**

- (1) We started early in order that we might arrive before dark.
- (2) We opened several technical training courses in order that the workers could attend them during their spare time.
- (3) He will write it in simple language in order that everybody may understand it.
- (4) We should do our utmost in order that we may be able to overfulfil the task.
- (5) In order that the compound might be used, it had

to be purified.

- (6) A chemical change must be made in order that water may be broken up into oxygen and hydrogen.
- (7) He took medicine in order that his illness might recover.
- (8) In order that such a reaction may occur, heat must be applied.
- (9) I will send him our proposals now in order that he may have time to consider them.
- (10) He is shouting at the top of his voice in order that he may be heard.
- (11) The teacher explained the poem again and again in order that every student might understand it thoroughly.
- (12) She has bought the book in order that she can follow the TV lessons.
- (13) I lent him my bike in order that he could save some time.
- (14) A large amount of energy must be used in order that the electrons may be broken loose from the influence of the nucleus.

(必须用很大的能量才能使电子摆脱原子核的束缚。)

注: in order that = so that = that, 如:

(1) We must keep fit  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{that} \\ \text{so that} \\ \text{in order that} \end{array} \right\}$  we may work well.

(2) I'll play it again  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{that} \\ \text{so that} \\ \text{in order that} \end{array} \right\}$  you may notice the difference.

**4) for fear (that)以防, 以免, 不致于, 唯恐**

- (1) Take an umbrella with you for fear it may rain.
- (2) He is working hard for fear that he should fail.
- (3) We use insulators for fear that electricity should leak away from the wire.
- (4) I checked all the results time and again for fear that there should be any mistakes.
- (5) He told us to keep quiet for fear that we might disturb others.
- (6) Batteries should be kept in a dry place for fear that electricity should leak away.
- (7) Steel and iron products are often coated for fear that they should rust.
- (8) He handled the instrument with care for fear that it should be damaged.
- (9) He wrote down the number for fear he should forget.
- (10) They packed the instruments carefully for fear that they should be broken during transportation.

**5) to the end that 为了, 为的是, 以便**

- (1) We criticized his mistakes to the end that they may not be repeated.
- (2) Steel bridges have to be built in sections to the end that the members may be allowed to expand freely.  
(为了使构件能够自由伸展, 钢桥必须分段铺设。)



③ We work hard to the end that we can make greater contributions to the mankind.

(4) To the end that a stronger current may be gotten, the resistance must be decreased.

(为了得到较强的电流, 必须减少电阻。)

(5) To the end that the rays can not get out, an atomic reactor must be surrounded by heavy thick walls.

(为了使射线不致辐射出去, 原子反应堆必须用很厚实的墙围起来。)

(6) The steamboat was fully furnished with life preservers, to the end that the passengers might be saved in case of accident.

(7) He is saving money to the end that he may set up in business.

(他现在正在存钱, 以供设店营商之用。)

(8) We do our best to help him to the end that he may improve his English.

(9) He took medicine to the end that he might recover.

#### ⑥ lest 以免

(1) I am telling you this lest you should make a mistake.

(2) We must check and recheck the results of our experiments lest there should be any errors in them.

(3) Write your name in the book lest he may forget who lent it to him.

(4) Never let children play with matches lest they may set themselves on fire.

(5) They tried to produce a substitute lest supplies should

be stopped.

(6) We must keep this gas in a special vessel lest it be evaporated.

(7) Lest important data be overlooked, these inquires should be careful.

(应仔细进行这些调查, 以免忽略了重要资料。)

(8) Steel parts are usually covered with grease lest they should rust.

(9) They covered the parts of the machine with canvas lest they should be damaged by rain.

(10) Batteries must be kept in dry places lest electricity should leak away.

(11) You'd better take an umbrella lest it should rain.

注: lest 和 for fear that 可互换使用, 如:

I shall remind him for fear that (or lest) he should forget.

### 7) in case 以防, 以免, 免得

(1) You'd better take your tools in case some machines require repairing.

(2) You'd better be ready in case they come.

(3) Please remind me of it again tomorrow in case I forget.

(4) Take warm clothes in case the weather is cold.

(5) Keep the windows closed in case it rains.

(6) You'd better take an umbrella with you, in case it should rain.

(7) I shall stay in the hotel all day in case there is news of Harry.

(8) Ted ought to come down, just in case anything happened.

(9) He left early in case he should miss the last train.

(10) You'd better write it down in case you forget.

注: (1) in case 可引导目的和条件两种状语从句。

(2) 引导目的状语从句的连词可以互相转换使用, 如:

in case = lest = for fear that = that...not = so

that...not = in order that...not

We'll start early	lest	}	we should be	
				for fear that
	in case	}	we should not be	
	so that			late.
	in order that			late.
that				

I'll repeat the address	lest	}	there should be may	
				for fear that
	in case	}	there should not be	
	so that			any mistake.
	in order that			any mistake.
that				

8) for the purpose that 为了

(1) I gave him some sleeping pills for the purpose that he might sleep better.

(2) Please let me know your problem for the purpose that I may help you work it out.

(3) it is necessary first to convert the chemical energy into heat by combustion for the purpose that useful work from the chemical energy stored in fuels might

be produced.

(为了达到从贮存在燃料中的化学能产生有用功的目的, 首先就需要通过燃烧把化学能转变为热能。)

9) to the effect that 以便

- (1) He started early to the effect that he might get there in time.
- (2) He wrote a note to the effect that we were each of us to receive an additional payment for our extra work.

## 2. 并列结构表目的

### 1) 动词 + and + 动词

在动词 go, come, try, hurry up, stay, stop, run 等后跟 and 再跟不带 to 的不定式, 表目的, 是口语中惯用的方法。

- (1) I shall write and thank him.
- (2) Run and tell him to come here at once.
- (3) I'll try and come tomorrow.
- (4) I'll go and fetch some water.
- (5) Hurry up and get dressed.
- (6) We ought to stop and think.
- (7) He usually stays and has dinner with us after the game.
- (8) I went and had a drink with Jeremy yesterday.
- (9) Come and have a talk with me.
- (10) Let's wait and see.
- (11) Go and see if he is in the office.

- (12) They took turns to come and help us on Sundays,  
 (13) I will try and do the same.  
 (14) You go and get ready while I stamp these letters.

## 2) 并列分句表目的

- (1) We are modernizing our armed forces, they are to protect our country.  
 (2) I am telling this; you may not make a mistake.  
 (3) I'll send him our proposals now, so he may have time to consider them before the meeting.  
 (4) Get up early so you can start in time.

## 3. 介词短语表目的

### 1) for 为, 为了

- (1) We must strive for the transformation of China into a modern, powerful socialist country.  
 (2) Books are for use, not for show.  
 (3) We support your struggle for national independence.  
 (4) This is an instrument for measuring underground temperature.  
 (5) He had an operation for a heart disease.  
 (6) Store up coal for the winter.  
 (7) I am going into this shop for some cigarettes.  
 (8) Keep a pail of water handy, for use in case of fire.  
 (9) George is saving up for a camera.  
 (10) They made her go to the hospital for a check up.  
 (11) Robert is going to get material for a new book.

- (12) To die for the people is a glorious death.
- (13) They are fighting for the freedom and independence of our motherland.
- (14) They are studying hard for the realization of the four modernizations.
- (15) He worked patiently for success.
- (16) They helped us to raise the 200,000-yuan fund for the school buildings.  
(他们帮助我们募集了二十万元基金来盖校舍。)
- (17) They were working hard for the common good and not for selfish interests.  
(他们这样苦干是为公而不是为私。)
- (18) He sacrificed his life for the great war of protecting the motherland.  
(他为伟大的卫国战争献出了生命。)

**2) for the purpose of 为了…目的, 目的是…**

- (1) For what purpose do you want it?
- (2) The people of the whole country are working hard for the purpose of building China into a strong country.
- (3) For the purpose of illustration, look at the diagram on page 13.  
(为了得具体说明, 请参阅第十三页的图解。)
- (4) He has gone abroad for the purpose of studying chemistry.
- (5) Many foreign friends have come to Beijing for the purpose of learning the Chinese language.
- (6) The young man jumped into the river for the

purpose of saving the drowning child.

(7) I went to Beijing for the purpose of seeing my friend.

(8) We want to make machines more efficient for the purpose of getting more useful work out of them.

**3) for the sake of 为了… (= for sth's sake = for one's sake)**

(1) We did all this for the sake of our great motherland.

(2) For the sake of settling the matter they decided to hold a meeting to discuss it in detail.

(3) We should be ready to lay down our lives for the sake of our country.

(4) I can bear with such a life for the sake of my work.

(5) He cited the example for the sake of comparison.

(6) Such a practice must be stopped for the sake of order and decency.

(为着秩序和礼貌之故, 这种做法必须停止。)

(7) Never do wrong for the sake of money.

(8) We must be patient for the sake of peace.

(9) For the sake of our old friendship, do not leave me now.

**4) for the benefit of 为了…的利益, 作…用**

(1) The money is to be used for the benefit of the poor.

(该款项将用于救济穷人。)

(2) The money is given for the benefit of the Scholarship Fund.

(钱是捐出来作奖学金之用的。)

(3) He travelled for the benefit of his health.

5) for the good of 为...的利益; 为...的好处

(1) Only in the socialist countries can scientific and technical achievements be made full use of for the good of the people.

(2) We must do our best for the good of others.

(3) The teacher was saying that for the good of his students.

(4) He is travelling for the good of his health.

(5) We must do everything for the good of the people.

6) to 为

(1) He devoted himself to the cause of the proletarian revolution.

(2) On hearing the cry of the drowning man, the PLA men ran to his rescue.

(3) We sat down to dinner.

(4) We drank to his health.

(我们为他的健康而干杯。)

(5) He dedicated his life to the cause of education.

7) against 防备, 预防

(1) She always had a room ready against the arrival of unexpected visitors.

(她总是备好一个房间, 以备有意外的来客。)

(2) We must take precaution against fire.

(我们必须预防火灾。)

(3) Be prepared against war, be prepared against natural disasters, and do everything for the people.

(4) Ants store up food against the winter.



(5) The production team saves money against a rainy day.

(6) We must take precautionary measures against earthquakes.

(7) That country has provided against another oil shortage.

(这个国家已为再次缺油作好准备。)

8) towards 为了, 作为, 有助于

(1) You should save as much money as possible towards your holiday.

(2) I've saved a bit of money and that would help towards buying the furniture.

(3) Our victory did much towards the maintenance of world peace.

(我们的胜利大大有利于维护世界和平。)

(4) We must save money towards the children's education.

(5) I'll do all I can towards getting things ready.

(我们将尽力帮助做好准备。)

(6) The mastery of foreign languages is an important step towards obtaining modern science and technology.

(7) They often offer assistance towards the improvement of our work.

(8) Will you give something towards our new hospital?

(为了我们的新医院, 你要不要捐点款?)

(9) We should vigorously practise economy towards the production of our country.

9) by way of 为了, 以便

(1) They made inquiries by way of learning the facts of the case.

(2) I simply mention this point by way of warning you.

(3) Here we speak only by way of analogy.

(这里还不过是一个比方。)

(4) He did it by way of helping me.

(5) He said a few words by way of introduction.

(6) He said something by way of expressing his thanks.

10) with the view of } 为了, 目的是, 以便  
with a view to }

(1) Many experienced workers have been sent to technical institutes with a view to raising their theoretical levels.

(2) We adopted the new method with a view to raising our efficiency.

(3) This piece of research work is carried on with a view to serving industrial and agricultural production.

(4) All this we did with the view of speeding up our socialist construction.

(5) I did it with a view to saving your trouble.

(6) I am going to town with a view to making some purchases.

(7) He revised his translation with a view to clearness and exactness.

(他修改了译稿, 意在使它清楚确切。)

(8) He is studying hard with a view to a scholarship.

- (9) He caught the morning train with a view to arriving in the city before dark.
- (10) He has bought land with a view to building a house.
- (11) He is working hard with the view of teaching better.
- (12) With a view to serving the people well in the future he studies very hard.

**11) with an eye to 目的在于**

- (1) He reads aloud a lot with an eye to improving his pronunciation.
- (2) He works hard with an eye to the future.
- (3) I bought the house with an eye to converting it into a school.
- (4) All his investments were made with an eye to the future.
- (5) John is going to college with an eye to becoming a lawyer.
- (6) We work hard with an eye to realizing the four modernizations earlier.

**12) with the aim (object) of**

- (1) Working the metal cold is done with the aim of obtaining a more accurate finish.  
(对金属进行冷加工是为了得到更精确的光洁度。)
- (2) Water-tubes are fitted in a boiler with the object of absorbing some of heat.
- (3) We want to make machines more efficient with the object of getting more useful work out of them.

- (4) We work hard with the object (aim) of realizing the four modernizations earlier.
- (5) A safety valve is provided with the object (aim) of allowing excess pressure to escape.  
(装备安全阀是为了让过高的压力外逸。)
- (6) He invested his money with the aim of providing himself with an income when he retired.

#### 4. 名词表目的

purpose, aim, object

- (1) The  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{purpose} \\ \text{aim} \\ \text{object} \end{array} \right\}$  of the safety valve is to allow excess pressure to escape.

(装备安全阀是为了让过高的压力外逸。)

- (2) The  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{purpose} \\ \text{aim} \\ \text{object} \end{array} \right\}$  of our working hard is to realize the four modernizations earlier.

- (3) The  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{purpose} \\ \text{aim} \\ \text{object} \end{array} \right\}$  of fitting water-tubes in a boiler is to absorb some of heat.

- (4) The  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{purpose} \\ \text{aim} \\ \text{object} \end{array} \right\}$  of lubricating bearing is to reduce the friction.

- (5) The  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{purpose} \\ \text{aim} \\ \text{object} \end{array} \right\}$  of using feed-water is to prevent the formation of deposits.

(用净化给水是为了防止形成沉淀物。)

(6) The  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{purpose} \\ \text{aim} \\ \text{object} \end{array} \right\}$  of making machines more efficient is to get more useful work out of them.

(7) The object of my visit is to consult you.

(8) What is your object in studying English?

(9) The ultimate aim of the Party is the realization of communism.

## 5. 动词表目的

aim 以...为目的, 目的是, 打算

(1) The factory must aim at increasing production.

(2) This book aims at giving a general outline of the subject.

(3) This education aimed at combining brain work with manual labour.

(4) Science aims at giving a complete explanation of nature's order.

(5) The visit was aimed at expanding relations between the two countries.

(6) Harry aims to become a computer expert.

(7) He aimed at obtaining accurate results.

(8) This dictionary aims at explaining the most common mistakes in word use.

## 6. 不定式(短语)表目的

1) to + v.

(1) To learn a language well, you must make painstaking

efforts.

- (2) To explore the moon's surface, rockets were launched again and again.
- (3) We are striving to scale the heights of science and technology.
- (4) Scientists needed to stay down longer to study life below the surface.
- (5) They have built undersea laboratories to explore the ocean depths and to make plans for the use of the ocean.
- (6) We have turned out many precision instruments to meet the needs of production.
- (7) Different measures have been taken to prevent corrosion.
- (8) The doctors did everything they could to save the worker.
- (9) I came here to say good-bye to you.
- (10) She ran across the street to catch the bus.

**2) in order to + v.**

- (1) In order to serve the people better in the future, we must study hard now.
- (2) We are working hard in order to build socialism in China.
- (3) In order to resist earthquake shocks, we should build special houses.
- (4) In order to meet the needs of production and scientific research, we must produce more electronic computers.

- (5) In order to make better use of these materials we have to study their properties.
- (6) In order to make every student understand it, the teacher explained that passage again and again.
- (7) In order to accomplish the task well, we must understand to the last detail how the matter stands.  
(为了把任务完成好, 我们必须对情况了如指掌。)
- (8) In order to explain the phenomenon, the teacher showed us an experiment.
- (9) The Chinese people are working hard in order to build China into a still stronger socialist country.
- (10) He laboured night and day in order to improve the condition of the poor people.

**3) so as to + v.**

- (1) We apply heat to a body so as to increase the motion of its molecules.
- (2) All of us work hard so as to realize the four modernizations in the near future.
- (3) I got up early so as to be in time for the first bus.
- (4) He listened attentively so as not to miss a single word.
- (5) She walked softly so as not to make any noise.
- (6) He made the experiment with care so as to get good result.
- (7) Our Party has always given much attention to agriculture so as to speed up its development.
- (8) They worked hard so as to end the task with success.

- (9) Before carrying out an experiment you must check carefully all the instruments so as to make as few errors as possible.
- (10) They tried to use computer so as to solve the problem more quickly.



## “条件” 的表示法

### 1. 状语从句表条件

#### 1) if 如果, 假设, 只要

##### A 真实条件从句

- (1) If there is no one to program the computer, it just won't work.
- (2) If you read in bad light, you'll ruin your eyes.
- (3) If the traffic lights are at red, a motorist must pull up.
- (4) We'll just manage to catch the train if we leave immediately.
- (5) I will accept your explanation only if you will support it with evidence.
- (6) What will happen if they can't reach an agreement.
- (7) Nothing is hard in this world if we dare to scale the heights.
- (8) If a substance contains only one element, it is not a compound.
- (9) Solid carbon dioxide can exist at room pressure if the temperature is low enough.
- (10) If the temperature of water is below  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ , it becomes a solid.

## B. 虚拟条件句

- (1) If he had taken my advice, he might not have made such a mistake.
  - (2) Were there no plants, there would be no animals.
  - (3) If we had the instrument on hand, we would certainly let you have it for some time.
  - (4) If there were no friction, we could not be able to walk.
  - (5) If I had had enough time, I should have finished the work.
  - (6) Far more progress would have been made if the importance of the work had been recognized before.
  - (7) If the meeting had started on time, it would be over now.
  - (8) If he were to do this test, he might do it in some other way.
  - (9) If it were to rain tomorrow, the match would be postponed.
  - (10) If the material we ordered should not come, we might have to use a different one similar to it.
- 2) unless 如果不, 如果没, 除非, 若不
- (1) You can't succeed unless you work hard.
  - (2) Don't try to do it unless you're sure you understand it.
  - (3) A change is a physical change unless it results in forming at least one new substance.
  - (4) You can not work out the problem unless you do it with the help of an electronic computer,

- (5) We'll lose the game unless we practise a lot.
  - (6) Unless you obey the rules, you'll get in trouble.
  - (7) Unless you are careful, you will make a mistake.
  - (8) Unless you take the necessary precautions, you can not prevent damages and, therefore, there will be much trouble.
  - (9) Many chemical changes will not take place unless materials are heated to a high temperature.
  - (10) Unless you had been there, you wouldn't believe it.
- 3) as long as, so long as 只要
- (1) The average speed of all molecules remains the same as long as the temperature is constant.
  - (2) Iron will not rust as long as it is kept in a dry place.
  - (3) We can surely overcome the difficulties so long as we are closely united.
  - (4) As long as you work hard, you can hope for good result.
  - (5) As long as I live, I must serve the people heart and soul.
  - (6) All living things respire as long as they live.
  - (7) As long as the current is flowing, the electromagnet behaves as an ordinary magnet.
  - (8) As long as temperature and pressure remain constant, the volume of substances will not change.
  - (9) You may use that dictionary as long as you keep it clean.
  - (10) So long as we don't lose heart, we'll find a way to

overcome the difficulty.

(11) I am sure you will succeed as long as you try hard.

4) as far as 只要...就, 就...而言 = so far as

(1) So far as we know, the temperature at the sun's centre is as high as 10,000,000°C.

(2) As far as we know, atomic energy is the greatest source of energy existing.

(3) As far as the quality of tone goes, the radio is excellent.

(就音质而论, 这台收音机好极了。)

(4) As far as its carbon content is concerned, mild steel is not different from wrought iron.

(就其含碳量而论, 软钢与熟铁没有差别。)

(5) As far as liquids are concerned, this law is certain to hold.

(就液体而论, 这条定律是适用的。)

(6) So far as I am concerned, I know nothing about it

(就我而论, 对此我一无所知。)

(7) There are no mistakes so far as I can see.

(8) So far as conductor material is concerned, copper is the most widely used.

(就导体材料而论, 铜是用得最广泛的。)

(9) As far as construction is concerned, the computer is similar to the human brain.

(10) So far as speed is concerned, this jet plane is up to the standard.

(11) John did a good job as far as he went, but he did not finish it.

(就约翰所做的而言, 他做得很好, 但他未能做完。)

5) once 只要

(1) Once they have set their minds on it, they can learn well in six months or a year.

(2) Once the principal contradiction is grasped, all problems will be readily solved.

(3) Once you get into the swing of things, you'll be all right.

(只要一入窍门, 你就行了。)

(4) Once one gets used to a thing, it would be hard to change the habit.

(5) Once the basic connections are mastered, all other circuits are readily understood.

(只要掌握了这些基本接法, 就容易理解所有其他电路了。)

(6) Once water begins to boil, its temperature no longer rises.

(7) It's very easy once you've got used to it.

6) supposing (suppose) that 假设, 假若

(1) Supposing you fail, don't lose heart, but try again.

(2) Supposing (suppose) we can't get the necessary equipment, what shall we do?

(3) Supposing there were no such force as gravitation, what would things be like?

(4) Supposing Teacher Li is still ill, who will do the experiment tomorrow?

(5) Supposing we can't get him informed in advance, what shall we do?

(6) Supposing that more water had been used, the temperature change would have been smaller.

(7) Suppose that it is so, what follows?

(8) Supposing that you fail a second time, don't get disappointed, but try again.

**7) in case 如果, 假使, 万一, 倘若**

(1) In case it rains, we shall not do physical labour.

(2) In case I forget, please remind me about it.

(3) In case you need any help, please call me.

(4) In case you decide to go with me, call me before 9 o'clock.

(5) In case that there were no water, there would be no life on earth.

(6) In case you can't attend the meeting, please call me by phone.

(7) By means of a protective device, the circuit will be broken at once in case it is overloaded.

(8) In case you meet him, please give him my regards.

**8) provided that (providing that) 如果, 只要**

(1) Provided we unite even more closely with the whole people, China's affairs can be run well.

(2) Bacteria may split every twenty minutes providing that they are living in suitable surrounding.

(3) His name will remain on the roll of honour provided that he doesn't make the same mistake again.

(如果他不再犯类似的错误, 他的名字就可以还留在光荣榜上。)

(4) I will set the machine to pieces once again provided that I have enough time.

(如果有充分的时间, 我会把这台机器再拆一次。)

(5) Provided that no objection is raised, we shall hold the meeting here.

(6) Providing the circumstances permit, they will visit China.

(7) There will be less trouble provided the machines are oiled in time.

(8) Providing that the new technique should be used, the output will be greatly increased.

(9) I will pardon him providing that he acknowledges his fault.

9) on condition that 只要, 如果, 在...条件下(较为正式用语, 多用于主句之后。)

(1) You can have this book for a few days on condition that you return it some time next week.

(2) We will let you operate this new machine on condition that you follow the operating rules.

(3) On condition that the liquid is cooled still further, it will turn to a solid.

(4) We'll let you use the room on condition that you keep it clean and tidy.

(5) Iron will not rust on condition that it is kept dry.

(6) The equipment can work properly on condition that the lab is air-conditioned.

(在实验室有空调的情况下, 这台设备能正常工作。)

(7) They will be allowed to make the experiment on

condition that they make adequate preparations.

(8) You may use the microscope on condition that you take good care of it.

(9) I'll do it on condition that you help me.

(10) I will send you the articles on condition that you pay in advance.

(在你愿先付款的条件下, 我可以把物品奉寄。)

(11) I will consent on condition that you bear the expenses.

(若你肯负担经费, 则我可以马上同意。)

10) but (that) = if it were not for the fact that

除非, 若不是, 假使...不...

(1) But that the old workers helped us, we should have failed.

(2) The little girl would have fallen into the river but that the man caught her.

(3) They would have helped us willingly, but that they happened to be short of hands too.

(4) But that I personally saw it, I could hardly have believed it.

(5) But that he is idle, he would be a good student.

(6) Nothing will content him but (=but that) I give up my opinion.

(7) But that the sun shines on the earth, there would be no tree.

(8) But that I saw the machine, I could not have imagined how efficiently it works.



11) **granted (granting) that 假定**

(1) Granted that it is so, what follows?

(假若如此, 则将如何?)

(2) Granted that this is true, what conclusion can you draw?

12) **assuming that = supposing that**

(1) Assuming that the weight and specific gravity of a body are known, you can calculate its volume.

(2) Assuming it rains tomorrow, what shall we do?

13) **on the supposition that 假定**

(1) I will do it for her only on the supposition that she can't do it herself.

(2) He planned his talk on the supposition that his hearers would be students.

(他的谈话, 是在假设听众全是学生的前提下准备的。)

(3) The town borrowed money to build the schoolhouse on the supposition that population and property would increase.

(这个城镇是在假定人口和财产都增长的前提下借钱建了这座校舍。)

(4) I promised to do it for her on the supposition that she could not have done it herself.

14) **with (on) the understanding that 以...为条件, 只有**

(1) I consented on the distinct understanding that you would join.

(以你也加进来为先决条件, 我才答应的。)

(2) I am willing to accept your offer on the understanding that I have a chance of advancement.

(以我得有一个提升的机会为条件, 那我很愿意接受你的提议。)

(3) Only with the understanding that I may cancel it any moment I may so desire, will I sign this agreement.

(唯有对方肯默许这个契约任何时候我要废除便废除, 我才肯签字。)

15) if only 只要, 有希望, 但愿

(1) These laws could be understood if only they were carefully studied.

(只要仔细研究, 这些规律是能够了解的。)

(2) I am sure he is really up to the work, if only he would give his mind to it.

(3) There is nothing we may not do, nothing we may not achieve, if only we have the strength to go through with it.

(4) If only the whole Party is united as one, we shall be able to overcome all difficulties step by step.

(5) I am sure you will succeed if only you try hard.

(6) I didn't answer all the questions.

If only I had answered all of them.

6) only if 只有当...才

(1) I told him he would succeed only if he tried hard.

(2) Electrons will move along a wire only if there is a difference of electric pressure along the conductor.

(3) From a scientific point of view, work is done only if the applied force produces motion.

(4) This sort of fuel can be burned only if it is

vaporized and mixed with oxygen.

(5) I will come home only if you come with me.

17) if it were not for

(1) No animals would have the food they need if it were not for green plants.

(2) If it were not for the atmosphere, the stars could be seen shining at any time in the day.

(3) If it were not for the vapour in the air, there would be no dew.

(4) If it were not for friction, how could trains, automobiles, airplane, and hundreds of other bodies be started and stopped.

(5) If it had not been for the binary system, the electronic computer might have been much more complicated.

(6) If it had not been for your help, we could not have done the experiment in time.

(7) If it hadn't been for the liberation, we wouldn't live a happy life today.

(8) If it had not been for his sound advice, we might have got into trouble.

18) what if (= what will be the result if...? = what will happen if...?) 如果...那会怎样呢?

(1) What if we could not get the preparations done in time?

(2) what if the sun is not shining?

(3) What if they do not come?

(4) What if you go instead of me?

(5) What if it rains while we are a long way from home?

(6) What if he should fall ill!

(7) What if a storm should come up?

19) while 只要

(1) While the world lasts, the earth will go round the sun.

(只要世界存在, 地球就将绕太阳运转。)

(2) While there is life, there is hope.

(只要活着, 就有希望。)

(3) I shall continue working while my health is good.

(只要身体健康, 我将继续工作。)

20) when 如果, 只要

(1) Don't look up the key when you could work out the problems by yourself.

(2) There is nothing so difficult but it becomes easy when we do it willingly.

(3) We use pictures when pictures can illustrate meaning better than words can.

(4) When puzzled, stop to think.

(如有疑难, 停下来想一想。)

(5) There is nothing we cannot do when we set our minds on it.

(6) You shall have it when you say "Please".

(只要你说声要, 你就可以拿走。)

21) where, wherever 如果, 只要

(1) Where we can not invent, we may at least improve.

(如果不能有所发明, 至少我们可以有所改进。)

- (2) Birth is nothing where virtue is not.  
(如果品质不好, 出身好也等于零。)
- (3) Where possible, all moving parts should be tested.
- (4) Light is the task where many share the toil.  
(大家来干, 工作就轻。)
- (5) Where there is matter, there is motion.  
(只要有物质, 就有运动。)
- (6) Wherever a chemical change takes place, there is new substance formed.
- (7) Wherever there is plenty of sun and rain, the fields are green.
- (8) Wherever conductors are needed, insulators will also be required.
- (9) Where there is an electronic computer, the computer enables us to save a lot of labour and time on calculation.
- (10) Both plants and animals could not exist where there were no sunlight, water and air.

## 22) so that 只要

- (1) You may go where you like, so that you are back by lunch time.
- (2) So that it is done, it matters not how.  
(只要做了就行, 不管怎么样做。)
- (3) So that our language conforms to usage, we do not mind whether grammarians approve of it or not.
- (4) Never be afraid of minorities, so that minorities are based on sound principles.  
(只要站得住, 立得直, 就不用怕身居少数。)

(5) Why, let the children come, so that they come not to make trouble.

**23) in so far as 就…而论, 只要 (= insofar as)**

(1) This is a difficult course in so far as it involves a general knowledge of all branches of engineering.

(就这门课程涉及工程学各部门的一般知识而论, 它是一门很难的课程。)

(2) You will succeed in so far as you persevere.

(3) It is true in so far as I know.

(4) He is far superior to the rest in so far as he speaks in English.

(5) I shall do what I can in so far as I'm able.

(6) The question or problems in the examination should be progressive in difficulty in so far as possible.

(7) You will learn your lessons only in so far as you are willing to keep studying them.

(8) I'll help you in so far as I can.

**24) until 除非, 如果不**

(1) Until you go by air, you can't get to Shanghai in time.

(2) Don't let go of the rope until I tell you.

(3) No further progress can be made until this idea is given up.

## 2. 并列句表条件

**1) 祈使句 + and 如果…就, 只要…就**

(1) Wave your hand in front of your face, and you can

feel the air moving.

- (2) Do it at once, and you will never regret it.
- (3) Take a wider view, and you will see it differently.  
(如果眼光放宽一些, 你就不会这样看法。)
- (4) Give him an inch and he will take a mile.
- (5) Take a handful of air, and you will hold billions of atoms.
- (6) Let's give him some help and he will be able to overcome the difficulties in his studies.
- (7) Hesitate, and the chance is gone.
- (8) Give him a tool, and he will work well.
- (9) Persevere, and you will succeed.
- (10) Make haste, and you will get there in time.

注: 有时 and 前边用名词, 使句子简洁, 且条件意味更突出, 如:

- (1) A few minutes more, and the city would be captured.  
(再有几分钟这个城市就可以攻下来了。)
- (2) One more effort, and you will succeed.
- (3) Another attempt, and the problem would be straightened out.

## 2) 不带连词的并列句

- (1) Go and see for yourself, you will find I'm right.  
(= If you go and see.....)
- (2) Easy come, easy go (= If money comes easily, it will go easily.)
- (3) Grasp all, lose all. (If you try to grasp everything, you will get nothing.)
- (4) No pains, no gains (= if you do not take any pains,

you will make no gains.

(不劳不获。)

(5) No investigation, no right to speak.

(6) No concerted action, no victory.

(如果行动不一致, 就不能取得胜利。)

(7) Nothing attempted, nothing gained.

(不入虎穴, 焉得虎子。)

(8) Sow nothing, reap nothing. (= if you do not sow anything, you will reap nothing.

不种不获)

(9) No law, no liberty.

(无法律则无自由。)

### 3. 定语从句表条件

在定语从句的先行词是一些具有概括意义的名词或代词(如: any, all, anyone, nothing 等)时, 定语从句常被用来表条件, 具有“只要, 如果”之意。

(1) Anyone that knows anything knows this.

(任何人只要懂得一点事情的, 都懂得这点。)

(2) Anyone who should do that (= if he should do that) would be laughed at.

(3) A country that stopped working would quickly be bankrupt. (= if a country stopped working it would...)

(4) Anything that can burn is a source of heat energy.

(任何东西只要能燃烧就是热源。)

(5) All you need do is to keep the machine from



stopping.

(你只要不让机器停就行了。)

#### 4. 介词短语表条件

##### 1) In case of 如果(遇到…情况)

(1) In case of my absence some one else will take my place.

(2) Break the circuit first in case of fire.

(3) By means of a protective device, the circuit will be broken at once in case of overload.

(采用保护装置, 电路如果过载, 便立刻断开。)

(4) In case of difficulty, just call on me.

(5) In case of rain, he will not come.

(6) Please don't wait in case of my not seeing you at the station.

(7) Use this money in case of need.

(8) In case of war, he will have to serve in the army.

注: “in the case of” 作“就…而论”解, 现在也有的作“如果…”解, 同in case of 通用, 如:

(1) This project will be put into practice in the case of your consent.

(如果你同意, 这计划便可付诸实行。)

(2) In the case of a liquid, its molecules are free to move from place to place.

(就液体而论, 其分子可自由地从一处移向另一处。)

##### 2) in the event of 如果, 万一

(1) What will you do in the event of your firm going

bankrupt?

- (2) In the event of his not arriving, the meeting will be put off to next week.
- (3) In the event of fire, ring the alarm-bell.
- (4) I shall have another chance in the event of failure.
- (5) In the event of his not coming by ten o'clock, we will go away.
- (6) In the event of his failure to show up on Monday we'll have to wire him.

(如果他星期一不能来，我们就只好打电报给他。)

- (7) In the event of my absence some one else will take my place.
- (8) In the event of failure we must wind up our business. (万一失败，我们必须将这事业停止。)

**3) but for 要不是…，如果没有**

- (1) But for the heat of the sun, nothing could live.
- (2) But for your help we should not have finished in time.
- (3) But for friction our world would be very strange indeed.
- (4) But for the Party's leadership, we could not have achieved so much in our socialist construction.
- (5) But for the growth of our steel industry, there would not be so many tractors put to use on the agriculture front.
- (6) But for transistors, the equipment would be much larger.
- (7) But for air and water, nothing could live.

(8) This computation would not have been carried out but for a high speed electronic computer.

(9) But for the luminosity of this substance, it would be difficult to detect its properties.

(要不是由于这种物质发光，很难测试它的特征。)

(10) But for the Party, we should never have been where we are. (没有党，我们决不会有今天的日子。)

#### 4) without 如果没有

(1) Without steel, there would be no modern industry.

(2) Without oxygen, burning could not take place.

(3) Without these labour-saving devices, we should be utterly helpless.

(如果没有这些节省劳力的机械，我们将毫无办法。)

(4) Without gravity there would be no air, no water, nothing.

(5) Without electronic computers, much of today's advanced technology would not have been achieved.

(6) Without the programmer, the computer would be useless.

(7) Without air, the earth would undergo extreme changes in temperature.

(8) We could not have done the work so well without your help.

(9) Without electrons, there would be no electricity.

(10) Without the friction between their feet and the ground, people would not be able to walk.

#### 5) in the absence of 如果没有

(1) In the absence of gravity, there would be no air

around the earth.

(2) In the absence of mathematics, science would not exist.

(3) Neither plants nor animals can exist in the absence of water.

(4) In the absence of a force, a body will either remain at rest, or continue to move with constant speed in a straight line.

(在没有外力作用的情况下, 物体将保持静止或作匀速直线运动。)

(5) In the absence of friction, the driving wheel would not run the belt.

(6) In the absence of the atmosphere, we would not be able to live on the earth.

(7) In the absence of oxygen, burning could not take place.

(8) In the absence of the sun's heat and light, there would be no life on the earth.

(9) In the absence of all forces, the bodies in motion would continue to move forever.

#### 6) in terms of 就...而论

(1) In terms of costs, an iron and steel plant can be built for less than half the sum needed before.

(就成本来说, 一个钢铁厂现在可以用不到从前所需要的资金的一半就修建起来。)

(2) In terms of physics, his view is correct.

(就物理学来说, 他的观点是正确的。)

7) as for 至于..., 关于..., 就...而论

- (1) As for the advantage of this method, I have no doubt. (关于这个方法的优点, 我没有怀疑。)
- (2) As for science, we should do our best to catch up with the world's highest level.
- (3) As for the force required to cause the current we call it an electrical pressure.  
(至于使电流流动需要的力, 我们称之为电压。)
- (4) As for electric energy, it can be used for different purposes.
- (5) As for English, it is not difficult to learn at all.
- (6) As for the terms, they are quite agreeable to me.  
(就那些条件来说, 我是十分赞同的。)
- (7) His talk was generally well received, but as for the statistics he cited, I don't think all of them were up-to-date.  
(他的讲话一般还是很受欢迎的, 但他所引用的统计数字, 我看未必是最新的。)

8) as to 就...而言, 关于, 至于

- (1) As to their purpose, dams are classified as storage or diversion dams.  
(就其用途而言, 坝可以划分为贮水坝或分水坝。)
- (2) As to the power transmission lines, they mostly have special protection instead of fuses.  
(就输电线而言, 它们大多数有专用的保护装置, 而不用保险丝。)
- (3) A decision will be taken as to how the waste can be disposed of.

(关于如何处理废品问题, 将做出决定。)

(4) As to this kind of rare element, it will be further studied.

(5) As to the uses of the instrument, we will deal with them in detail later.

(至于这个仪表的用途, 我们以后再详细讲。)

(6) As to this watch, it can be guaranteed for one year.

(至于这块表, 它能保用一年。)

(7) As to the nucleus, it is made up of protons and neutrons.

(8) As to your final grade, that depends upon your final examination.

(至于你的总成绩, 那取决于你的期考分数。)

(9) As to your ability to overfulfil the target, I never had the slightest doubt.

(关于你有能力超额完成指标这一点, 我从来没有过丝毫怀疑。)

(10) As to how the present perfect tense may be used, I'll deal with it in detail later.

(关于现在完成时的用法, 我以后再详细讲。)

注: as to 和 as for 同义, 但 as for 只能用句首, 而 as to 既可用于句首, 也可用于句中。

### 9) in (with) regard to 关于, 就...而论

(1) With regard to your request for a refund, we have referred the matter to our main office.

(关于阁下请求退款之事, 我们已转总公司办理。)

(2) I will write to you later with regard to our life in

the countryside.

(3) With regard to that point I don't quite fall in with your view.

(4) The principle of the conservation of energy also holds with regard to the electric cell.

(能量守恒原理对于电池来说也是适用的。)

(5) With regard to size several stars have been found to be many million times the size of the sun.

(就体积而论, 已经发现有些恒星比太阳大几百万倍。)

(6) With regard to your last point I don't think I have anything to add.

(7) We should take a cautious attitude in regard to questions of right or wrong in science.

(对于科学上的是非问题, 我们应当采取慎重态度。)

10) with respect to 关于 (= in respect to)

(1) We shall make further investigation with respect to the matter.

(2) With respect to the last point you raised, I am afraid I can add little to what I have said already.

(3) I wish to speak to you in respect to this matter.

(关于这个问题, 我想跟你说说。)

(4) In respect to that subject, there is nothing to be said.

(5) I wished to speak to you with respect to this meeting.

(6) With respect to this question we can not make up our minds.

(7) With respect to that question, we shall make further study of it.

11) As regards 关于, 至于 (= regarding)

(1) As regards the study of English, we must pay attention to hearing, speaking, reading and writing.

(2) As regards coal, the Chinese used it 2000 years ago.

(3) As regards the reserve, the situation of natural gas is similar to that of oil.

(至于天然气的贮藏, 其分布与石油的情况相似。)

(4) As regards the matter you brought up, I think it should be settled as speedily as possible.

(5) As regards the other question we shall discuss it later.

(6) As regards germanium and silicon, they are widely used as semi-conductor materials.

(至于锗和硅, 它们被广泛地用作半导体材料。)

(7) As regards the style of the essay, it leaves nothing to be desired.

(这篇散文就文体而论, 可以说是无懈可击的。)

(8) As regards mathematics, I believe he can pass.

(9) They said nothing as regards wages.

(10) Regarding our plans for the future, all I can say is that we shall take whatever opportunity arises for expanding our activities.

(11) As regards the second question, I still have a few words to add.



(12) As regards the question how we should proceed in our work in the future, there is still some difference of opinion.

**12) with (in) reference to 关于**

(1) I would like to draw some conclusions with reference to what was said yesterday.

(我想就昨天谈及的问题引出几点结论来。)

(2) I have nothing to say with reference to this question.

(3) Will you please make inquiries with reference to this matter?

(4) With reference to the business I will write you a letter.

(5) With reference to these letters, I think the best thing is to burn them.

(6) With reference to your application for transfer, the leadership will have a discussion of it at the next meeting.

(关于你的请调报告, 领导将在下次会议上讨论。)

(7) With reference to the matter, we cannot pass it in silence.

**13) concerning 关于, 就...而论**

(1) Concerning the point raised by the last speaker, I can add nothing to what I have already said.

(2) You heard nothing concerning this matter, did you?

(3) Concerning your letter, I am pleased to inform you that your plans are quite acceptable to us.

## 5. 不定式(短语)表条件

- (1) It would be a mistake not to help him.  
(如果不帮助他,那是错误的。)
- (2) It would be a good idea to solve these problems with an electronic computer.
- (3) It would be a mistake not to adopt a correct attitude towards others' criticism.
- (4) It would cause great trouble not to lubricate the bearing immediately.
- (5) It would be better for the engine to run at a lower speed.
- (6) In this respect there must be absolutely no relaxing; to relax would be a mistake.
- (7) To have him back as Party Secretary of our school would be just grand.
- (8) What would we not give to see all the people of the world free, independent and happy?  
(如果能使世界上所有的人民都享受自由、独立和幸福,我们有什么东西舍不得牺牲呢?)
- (9) To look at him (= If you were to look at him), you would think him a young man.
- (10) It would be better for you to replace the insulator earlier.

## 6. 分词(短语)表条件

### A. 分词(短语)表条件

- (1) Combining two or more elements in a chemical way, you get at least one new substance.
- (2) Using a transformer, we can increase or decrease the voltage of an alternating current.
- (3) Working hard, you will succeed.
- (4) Turning to the left, you will find the path leading to the post office.
- (5) Travelling at 50 miles per hour, the train will reach the sun in 200 years.
- (6) Given better attention, the instrument can be used for a longer time.
- (7) Considered from this point of view, the question under discussion is of great importance.
- (8) Given the weight and the specific gravity of a body, we can calculate the volume.

### B. 分词独立结构表条件

- (1) Weather permitting, the football match will be played on next Sunday.
- (2) Other conditions being equal, the pressure remains constant.
- (3) Everything taken into consideration, this method is the best one.
- (4) The electric circuit broken, the current stops flowing immediately.

- (5) Industry developing rapidly, agriculture will be machinized very soon.
- (6) The leaves being taken off, the plants stop growing.
- (7) Everything considered, it is possible for their factory to raise the output quickly.
- (8) Time permitting, we shall do the experiment tomorrow.

## “方式，方法”表示法

### 1. way

#### 1) way 方式，方法，手段

- (1) This is the best way to learn a foreign language.
- (2) That is not the right way to answer the question.
- (3) Is this the right way to do it?
- (4) You're doing it the wrong way.
- (5) This is a good way to increase production.
- (6) The influence of TV on the life of people is incalculable: it can influence their thoughts, their speech, and their way of life.
- (7) Do it this way.
- (8) Don't do it that way.
- (9) There is an easy way to do it.
- (10) There are many ways of using the word "way".

#### 2) in...way 用...方法；以...方式；在...方面

- (1) The large amount of oxygen needed for industry are produced in a different way.
- (2) In a similar way, space research is giving rise to a revolution in the field of electronics.
- (3) He tried in every way to keep the machine going.
- (4) Do you work in the way I have shown you.

- (5) He saves old envelopes. In this way, he has collected a great many stamps.
- (6) In this way they finally tided over the difficulties.
- (7) Large quantities of advanced machinery were in this way turned out successfully.
- (8) To solve the problem in this way is thought most convenient.
- (9) Although the planets are alike in some ways, they are different in many other ways.
- (10) Scientists use mathematics in many different ways.
- (11) Artificial, or synthetic fibers are in some ways much better than any natural ones.
- (12) Do it in your own way if you don't like mine.
- (13) Computers are already used in normal business operations in the same way.
- (14) In the same way, chemistry was useful in geology in providing a theory for mineralogy.  
(同样, 由于能提供矿物学所需要的理论, 化学对地质学也曾经是很有用的。)
- (15) In the same way, the determination of longitude became possible with the invention of Hodley's quadrant.  
(同样地, 由于霍德莱发明了象限仪, 才有可能确定经度。)

**3) all the way 一直地, 长期地, 远远地**

- (1) Sun light reaches all the way down to the seabed.  
(阳光可一直深入到海底。)
- (2) With plastics the colours go all the way through.

(塑料的颜色是一直透入材料内部的。)

(3) Scientists can produce temperatures all the way down to a millionth degree above absolute zero.

(4) Sometimes the pond freezes all the way to the bottom.

(5) That idea went all the way back to Aristotle.

(那个想法远溯到亚里斯多德。)

4) the way (+ 从句) 正如 (conj.)

(1) Things fall to the earth because the earth pulls them to it, the way a magnet pulls needles.

(2) Things developed just the way we had thought they would.

(3) Electrons whirl around the nucleus much the way planets spin around the sun.

(4) He sets us a good example the way he serves the people.

(5) You will make good progress the way you are working at it.

(6) The air clings to the earth just the way everything else does.

(7) Balloons float in the air the way a boat floats on water.

(8) The way he talks, he must be good at it.

5) by way of 通过, 以...方式, 取道, 经由, 作为

(1) To help the small industrial enterprises, the state gives them support by way of subsidy.

(对于小型工业国家通过补贴的办法给予必要的帮助。)

(2) In our days a great deal has been done by way of

all-round automation of industrial processes.

(在我们这个时代，很多工作是通过工业生产全面自动化完成的。)

- (3) He went to Europe by way of America.
- (4) I employed him by way of experiment.
- (5) They went to Beijing by way of Sian.
- (6) By way of example, I refer to it.
- (7) He went from New York to San Francisco by way of Chicago.

## 2. means

### 1) by means of 以…方式，借助…，用…

- (1) The voltage between two points can be measured by means of voltmeters.
- (2) The television picture is sent through space by means of electromagnetic waves.
- (3) Radio communication is accomplished by means of propagation of radio waves.
- (4) We may easily separate water into two very different substances by means of electric current.
- (5) This law was discovered by means of experiments.
- (6) We can separate sand from water by means of filtration.
- (7) By means of catalyst chemical processes may be hastened.
- (8) Any desired voltage may be obtained by means of a transformer.



(9) Steam hammers work by means of steam.

(10) River water is stored by means of reservoirs.

(11) By means of wireless you can speak to a man on the other side of the world.

**2) by all means 用各种手段, 无论如何, 务必**

(1) This plan must be realized by all means.

(2) We must get there by all means before he goes away.

(3) We should by all means make improvements to raise our output of instruments.

(4) We must help him by all possible means.

(5) Information on health protection should be publicized by all means.

(6) The workers tried by all means to increase the annual output of steel.

(7) By all means the new lathe must be sent to our workshop at once, we can't wait any longer.

### 3. as

**1) as conj. 引导方式状语从句**

(1) A balloon floats in the air as a boat floats on water.

(2) He will do the experiment as the teacher has told him.

(3) Electronic computers can do as we tell them to do.

(4) However exact our science, we can not know the future as we know the past.

- (5) We must act as the law requires.
- (6) We often see things not as they are, but as we are.
- (7) The result of this experiment is good enough as it is.
- (8) They once more overfulfilled their task as they often did.
- (9) Friction is not always a bad thing as you might think.
- (10) Radio waves from space are now used to explore the universe, much as light waves are so used.

**2) as prep. 作为…，以…，如…**

- (1) Matter may exist as a solid, a liquid or a gas.
- (2) Petroleum is present as a mixture.
- (3) The condensate is returned to the boiler as feed water.  
(冷凝水作为给水返回锅炉。)
- (4) The steam is cooled and condenses as a film of water.  
(蒸气冷凝而成一层水膜。)
- (5) The carbon in cast-iron is present partly as free graphite.  
(铸铁中的碳一部分以游离石墨状态而存在。)
- (6) If there is friction, some energy disappears as heat.
- (7) Water may exist not only as a liquid, but also as a solid, or a gas.
- (8) The energy of the sun comes to the earth mainly as light and heat.

(9) The sound that reaches our ears travels as a wave through air.

(10) We are united as one man.

(11) Eventually, that mould was mass produced, and given to the world as the "wonder-drug" penicillin.

**3) as prep. as + prep. phr. 象...一样, 如同...一样, 如...**

(1) As in the case of silicon, phosphorus remains dissolved in solid iron.

(象硅一样, 磷在固体铁中处于溶解状态。)

(2) As in the first method, the gas must be preheated to 150°C.

(3) Ordinary light, as from a flashlight, is made up of many different wavelengths.

(4) Molecules may consist of like atoms, as in oxygen, or of unlike atoms, as in carbon dioxide.

(5) In education, as in business and industry, science and medicine, computers play an important part in almost every type of operation.

**4) as ... so “正象...一样...也” as 引导方式状语从句 so 引导主句。**

(1) As water is to fish, so is air to man.

(= Air is to man as water is to fish.)

(空气之于人, 犹水之于鱼。)

(2) As water is the most important of liquids, so air is the most important of gases.

(3) As the sun is the central body of the solar system, so the nucleus is the core of the atom.

- (4) As the thoughts are, so will the acts be.  
(思想怎样, 行为也怎样。)
- (5) As the planets revolve round the sun, so electrons revolve round the nucleus of an atom.
- (6) Just as there are different forms of matter, so there are different forms of energy.
- (7) Just as man has found great uses for the materials which he digs up from the ground, so he has found important uses for the gases which he can obtain from the air.

**5) just as “正如, 正象” 引导方式状语从句**

- (1) Air occupies space just as does any other fluid.
- (2) Air has weight just as all other matter does whether gaseous, liquid or solid.
- (3) Our bodies are made up of millions of very small cells, just as a building is made of many stones or bricks.
- (4) Just as coal is burned in the stove, food is burned within the human body.
- (5) We shall change our cities and villages just as man have done in the past.
- (6) The earth pulls things to it just as a magnet pulls needles.
- (7) Cold is simply the absence of heat, just as dark is the absence of light.
- (8) Reaction pushes the plane through the air just as reaction sends rockets into the heavens.
- (9) Just as flowing water is used to drive water wheels,

it can be used to make electricity.

- (10) Just as there are gravitational fields surrounding any matter, there are electric fields surrounding any electric charges.

(正如任何物体周围都有引力场一样, 任何电荷周围也都有电场。)

6) as if (though) “好像, 似乎” 引导方式状语从句

- (1) Heat can flow from a hot body to a cooler body as if it were a fluid.
- (2) He operates the machine as if he were an experienced worker.
- (3) You should not treat it as if it were acid.
- (4) The molecules of a gas behave as though they were perfectly elastic bodies.
- (5) They are talking to each other as if they were old friends.
- (6) Under some conditions light and atoms may act as if they were waves.
- (7) He spoke as if he were a specialist on the subject.
- (8) The earth behaves as though it were an immense magnet.
- (9) Fluorescent lamps in the laboratory shine brightly as though it were in the daytime.

注(1) as if后边除跟从句之外, 还可跟不定式、分词、介词短语、和形容词(短语)等。如:

- (10) He put his hand onto the button as if to switch off the machine.

(11) He began to move again but still slowly as if unsure what the danger was.

(12) He ran towards us as if pleased to see us again.

(13) He looked round as if in search of something.

(14) He frowned at me as if angry at the thought that I was leaving.

(15) He paused as if expecting Lanny to speak.

注(2) as if 引导的方式状语从句谓语动词一般用虚拟语气，如果动词是 be 则一般用 were。但在科技文章中谓语动词也可用直陈语气。如：

(16) In special cases it has been observed that energy may act as if it, too, has inertia.

(在特定的情况下，已经观察到能量似乎也有惯性。)

注(3) as if 还可引导表语从句。在表语从句里谓语动词一般用陈述语气。如：

a. It looks as if the uses of TV are endless.

b. It seems as if there has to be some medium in which light waves can travel.

### 7) as to = according to 按照，依照

(1) They sorted the eggs as to size and color.

(2) Metals are also often identified as to the method used to produce the forms in which they are used.

(金属使用时有许多形式，而金属也经常根据这些金属形式的生产方法来确定。)

(3) The rates of parcel postage vary both as to distance and as to weight.

(包裹邮资按路程长短和重量大小而不同。)

(4) You will be examined as to the present state of your education.

8) according as “按照，随…而定” 引导方式状语从句

(1) The thermometer rises or falls according as the air is hot or cold.

(2) The shadow cast by an object is long or short according as the sun is high up in the sky or near the horizon.

(3) The forms of matter can be changed according as its temperature is increased or decreased.

(4) You will receive according as you give. (按劳取酬)

(5) We can learn more or less according as we study and work.

(6) The barometer rises or falls according as the atmospheric pressure is high or low.

(7) In socialist countries the living standards of the people will be raised according as production increases.

(8) You will be praised or blamed according as your work is good or bad.

4. what (= as) conj. “好像，犹如，  
好比” 引导方式状语从句

(1) The food is to blood what reading is to the mind  
(食物之于血犹如读书之于头脑。)

- (2) Leaves are to the plants what lungs are to the animals.
- (3) Colour is to light what pitch is to sound.  
(颜色与光的作用正如音调与声音的关系。)
- (4) A molecule is to a chemical compound what an atom is to an element.
- (5) Education is to a human soul what gardening is to a piece of ground.  
(教育之于心灵，亦犹园艺之于土地。)
- (6) What water is to fish, that is air to man.
- (7) What food is to man, that iron and steel are to industry.
- (8) What blood vessel is to a man's body, that railway is to transportation.
- (9) Facts are to the mind what food is to the body.
- (10) Ambition is to life what steam is to the locomotive.  
(志向之对于人生，也就象蒸汽之对于火车头。)

## 5. 介词短语表方式方法

### 1) according to *prep.* 按照，根据，随…而定

- (1) The electronic computers can operate only according to instructions.
- (2) The books are placed on the shelves according to authors.
- (3) One must act according to the needs and wishes of the masses.



- (4) They were commended or criticized according to how they had done their work.
- (5) The elements differ according to their atomic structure.
- (6) Radio waves are classified according to either frequency or wavelength.
- (7) The work has been carried out according to the instruction of the Party.
- (8) According to arrangements, the goods were to be delivered by the end of last month.

2) in accordance with 按照; 依据; 遵照

- (1) All things in the world develop in accordance with their own laws.
- (2) One can regulate the speed of this machine in accordance with the job.
- (3) Rockets operate in accordance with the Third Law of Motion.
- (4) Everything has been done in accordance with the rules.
- (5) The goods will be sent in accordance with your instructions.
- (6) He did not act in accordance with the orders that were given him.
- (7) In accordance with your instructions we have made a thorough investigation of the matter.
- (8) The aeroplane oil system is cleaned in accordance with the instruction.
- (9) History, in the final analysis, develops in accordance

with the will and wishes of the people.

(10) The plan has been revised in accordance with the opinions of the masses.

3) in conformity with (to) 按照, 本着

(1) All plans are made in conformity with the view of the majority.

(2) In conformity with our rules and regulations, I am calling a meeting of our organization.

(3) Everything was done in conformity with this principle.

(4) It is a good thing to strive to normalize relations between countries in conformity with the will and interests of the people.

(5) The agreement was signed in conformity with the interests and desire of the peoples of the two countries.

(6) We firmly oppose aggression and expansion in conformity with our consistent stand.

4) in compliance with 根据, 按照

(1) In  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{accordance} \\ \text{compliance} \end{array} \right\}$  with the government's regulations, a fire system has been installed.

(根据政府的规定建立了消防系统。)

(2) In  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{accordance} \\ \text{compliance} \end{array} \right\}$  with the specification, the concrete has been reinforced with a simple layer of steel mesh.

(根据说明用一单层钢筋网加固混凝土。)

- (3) Some articles have been omitted in compliance with the wishes of the author.
- (4) In compliance with the readers' suggestions, we have made a thorough revision of the book and cut it by half.
- (5) This is done in compliance with the regulations of the company.
- (6) In compliance with your suggestion, I visited Mr. Blanc when I was in Europe.

5) in the light of 按照；根据；从…角度来看

- (1) People always examine and handle problems and express their views in the light of their own experience and unavoidably they sometimes show a little onesideness.

(人们总是根据自己的经验来观察问题处理问题，发表意见，有时就难免带上一些片面性。)

- (2) He made his decision in the light of what he had heard.

(他根据自己所听到的情况作出了决定。)

- (3) We selected criteria in the light of these considerations.

(我们就是按照这些考虑来选定标准的。)

- (4) All industrial enterprises are out for a revolution in organization and operation in the light of the new-won experience.

(所有的工业企业都在力求按这新取得的经验进行组织和经营方面的革命。)

- (5) All decisions are made in the light of our compre-

comprehension of our responsibilities, not in the interest of any particular persons or groups of persons.

(一切决议都是按照我们对自己所负的责任的理解而作出的, 不是为了某些个人或某些集体的利益而作出的。)

#### 6) in line with 依照

(1) In line with the request of the school authorities, we have drawn up a plan to teach a foreign language to every student.

(按照学校领导的要求, 我们制订了一项教每个学生一门外语的计划。)

(2) In line with good business policy we have sought the best foreign scholars and scientists we could secure for the salaries we could afford to pay.

(按照健全的经营原则, 我们聘请了就我们负担得起的薪金所能请到的最有水平的学者和科学家。)

(3) In line with the custom of the school, the students will have a holiday between Christmas and New Year's Day.

(4) They must act in line with the Party's policy.

#### 7) in obedience to 遵照; 奉...之命; 依照

(1) I did it in obedience to his orders.

(2) That is strictly prohibited in obedience to an order issued by the police authorities.

(遵照警察当局发出的命令, 这是要严厉禁止的。)

(3) He acted in obedience to the law.

(4) A Party member should act in obedience to the decisions of the Party organization.

(5) Soldiers acted in obedience to orders.

8) by 通过; 用; 按照; 按

(1) Water is about  $\frac{8}{9}$  oxygen and  $\frac{1}{9}$  hydrogen by weight.

(按重量, 水大约是九分之八的氧, 九分之一的氢。)

(2) By any standard our industrial development in the past quarter century has been spectacular.

(按任何标准, 过去的四分之一世纪我们的工业发展都是惊人的。)

(3) Are these goods made by machinery?

(4) It will be quicker to send it by boat than by rail.

(5) I'm going to Japan by way of America.

(6) Many discoveries are made by accident.

(7) I know him by name not by sight.

(8) You can control the height of your balloon by controlling the volume of gas inside it.

(9) The policeman caught the thief by the coat.

(10) Did you do this all by yourself?

(11) We have no idea how the birds find their way, particularly as many of them fly by night, when landmarks could hardly be seen.

(12) He took the wrong train by mistake.

(13) We are going to get a storm, by the look of it.

(看样子, 将有一场风暴。)

(14) By good fortune, I succeeded the first time.

(15) By the conditions of our agreement, we are bound to do as we are doing.

(按照我们的协定的条件, 我们理应这样做。)

(16) Cloth are sold by the yard or by the meter.

(17) Some workmen are paid by hour.

(18) Apples are sold by the pound.

9) in 按照; 用; 以; ...地

(1) I was told about the matter in secret.

(2) They discussed the plan in rough at the preliminary meeting.

(他们在预备会上初步讨论了那项计划。)

(3) The house is built in foreign style.

(4) The teacher explained the structure of diesel engine to the students in detail.

(5) This is a new subject and needs to be explored in depth.

(6) She was dressed in white like a nurse.

(7) The man next to Bill was talking to him in Spanish.

(8) In building the new stadium, the people of all parts of the town acted in concert.

(9) These rules are given roughly in order of importance, the last one is also the least important.

(这些规划大体上是按其重要程度排列的, 排在最后的最不重要。)

(10) All his speeches are taken down in shorthand.

(11) He has been studying English in earnest ever since he entered university.

(12) In essence, both proposals are much the same.

(13) He trained them in the spirit of internationalism.

(14) The face of the country is in general very uneven,

being hilly or mountainous.

(15) A message was written in pen on his writing table.

(16) The topic was printed in boldfaced type.

(17) In the name of the Chinese people, we sincerely congratulate you upon your brilliant success and great victory.

(18) Develop oil industry in a big way. (大办石油工业。)

(19) Motor vehicles are turned out in mass production.

(20) The book is written in German.

10) in ... manner 以...方式; 以...方法

(1) In like manner, electricity can be turned into heat.  
(同样, 电能转变为热能。)

(2) The two reactions are carried out in the same manner.

(这两个反应均以相同方式进行。)

(3) Such a machine may be used in another manner, too.

(这样的机器也可以用另一种方法来使用。)

(4) Very soon we all learned to perform the exercises in the manner described.

(5) A magnetic field may be represented in the same manner as an electric field.

(6) We discussed the problem in a preliminary manner.  
(我们初步地讨论了这个问题。)

(7) He approached the subject in a truly scientific manner.

(他以真正的科学态度研究这个问题。)

11) on 依靠; 根据; 借; 由

(1) Do you think he made the mistake on purpose?

(2) For many years he ran his business on a staff of only five.

(多年来他只靠五个职员经营他的商店。)

(3) During the Long March the Red Army men often had to live on tree barks and grass.

(4) I want to listen to the programme on (over) the radio.

(5) Generators and motors work on the same principle, but produce opposite effects.

(6) The books are arranged on an alphabetical basis.

(书本按字母的先后排列。)

(7) The thermostat is based on the fact that different metals have different coefficients of expansion.

(恒温调节器是根据不同金属有不同膨胀系数这一事实。)

(8) It is quite possible that man will make use of nuclear energy in production on a large scale.

(9) We talked with her on (over) the phone this morning.

(10) We saw a good program on (over) TV last night.

(11) There will be an opera on the air this evening.

(今天晚上要广播一出歌剧。)

12) at 以...

(1) He finished reading the novel at one sitting.

(他一口气把这部小说读完了。)



(2) It is necessary to develop our industry and agriculture at a great rate.

(3) Though a bit expensive, the watch was cheap at the price asked.

(4) The cloth was sold at fifty shillings a yard.

(5) The machine is running at its full speed.

(6) There is a particular question to be discussed at length.

(有一个特殊问题需要详细讨论。)

(7) Postcards are sold at face value, without extra charge for the card itself.

(明信片按面值出售, 其卡片本身不另取费。)

(8) I wrote it at the teacher's dictation.

(这是我按老师的口授写的。)

(9) You may go or stay at your pleasure.

(10) He sees some things at a different angle from ourselves.

### 3) from 根据; 按

(1) He repeated that speech, word by word from memory.

(他凭记忆一个字一个字地复述那个演讲。)

(2) When I advise you to do this I am speaking from experience.

(我按自己的经验劝你这样干。)

(3) Did you paint from some model, or from pure imagination?

(你是按某个式样画的, 还是纯粹凭想象画的?)

(4) If one looks at this problem from the point of

view of modern physics, there is nothing difficult about it.

(如果从现代物理的观点来看这个问题, 它就没有什么难处。)

(5) From what I heard, the driver was to blame.

(按照我所听到的, 过失是在司机。)

**14) with 用...; 带着**

(1) They measure the temperature with a new-type instrument.

(2) The houses are lighted with electric lights.

(3) We see with our eyes, and hear with our ears.

(4) The workers make good instruments with the new machines.

(5) He sharpened his pencil with a small knife.

(6) He did the experiment with care.

(7) Not all elements react with oxygen with equal ease.

(8) The scientists all work with great enthusiasm.

(9) The pressure varies with the temperature.

(10) He studied his lesson with all his heart.

(11) The sick man climbed the steps with great difficulty.

(12) On hearing the news he went back home with a heavy heart

**15) after 仿照, 依照, 模仿, 与...相一致**

(1) These ships are built after the same model.

(2) The painting is after the great master.

(3) It is a job after his own heart.

(这个工作他感到称心如意。)

(4) Please make five English sentences after the given patterns.

(5) The street is named after him.

(6) He always acts after his own fashion.

(他总是自行其是。)

(7) I like his small room after the style of old country house.

(我喜欢他那间乡间老房式样的小屋。)

16) through 用, 通过, 借, 以

(1) They reached an agreement through negotiations.

(2) Build up our country through diligence and frugality.

(勤俭建国。)

(3) Knowledge can be imparted through personal instruction or through correspondence course.

(知识可以通过面授或函授来传播。)

(4) I heard the news through the wireless.

(5) Only through much practice shall we be able to master a foreign language.

17) via 通过

(1) I learnt of the news via the newspaper.

(2) The letter reached him via his brother.

(3) Do you travel via car or railroad?

(4) The message was sent via air mail.

(信是通过航空邮寄的。)

18) over 以, 用(电讯工具)

(1) I listen to the weather forecast over (or on) the

radio every morning.

- (2) Thousands of messages are being sent over the wire.

(千万封信在通过电报传送着。)

- (3) We are talking over the telephone.

- (4) I heard the news over the radio.

**19) per 经, 由...**

- (1) The above-mentioned goods will be delivered per rail.

- (2) The order has been sent to you per post.

(定货单已邮寄贵处。)

**20) under 在...(名义, 掩饰)之下, 以..., 用...**

- (1) The book is published under his pen name.

- (2) He refused to see me under the excuse of illness.

- (3) We must work under the leadership of the Party.

**21) by dint of 通过, 依靠**

- (1) He reached the top by dint of great effort.

- (2) By dint of courage and hard work the buried miners were rescued.

- (3) We worked out the answer by dint of common sense.

- (4) Ideological problems must be tackled by dint of education and persuasion.

- (5) He tried to gain his purpose by dint of industry.

(他试图以勤奋达到他的目的。)

- (6) He succeeded by dint of earnest work.

**22) to 按照, 和着, 随着**

- (1) The map is drawn to a scale of one inch to the mile.

(这幅地图是按一英寸代表一英里的比例绘制的。)

- (2) They were dancing to the music of a barrel organ.  
(他们伴着手摇风琴的音乐跳舞。)
- (3) The train failed to run to schedule because of the storm.
- (4) To my estimate, not one third of the area is affected.
- (5) Everything is going to plan.
- (6) She danced to the piano.  
(她和着钢琴跳舞。)

**23) on the basis of 根据, 在...基础上, 按照**

- (1) He reached this conclusion on the basis of experimental data.
- (2) We should establish and develop our relations with other countries on the basis of the Five Principles of Peaceful coexistence.
- (3) Dynamics is built up on the basis of three fundamental laws of motion.
- (4) On the basis of technical innovation we have improved the quality of products.
- (5) On the basis of investigations, he got the answer.
- (6) On the basis of the development in iron and steel production, branches of engineering industry have grown up.
- (7) These diesel engines are designed on the basis of long-lasting and planned works of research and development.  
(这些柴油机是在长期有计划的研究和发展的基础上设计的。)

6. base...on (upon) 把...建立在...基础上;  
以...为...的依据

- (1) The measurement of time is based on the revolution and rotation of the earth.
- (2) The central weather bureau bases its forecasts on a knowledge of the weather conditions all over the country.
- (3) We must base our description of motion and anything else in science on measurement.  
(我们必须把有关科学上的运动和其他任何事物的描述建立在度量的基础上。)
- (4) Thermodynamics, like other physical science, is based on observation of nature.  
(象其他自然科学一样, 热力学是建立在观察大自然的基础上的。)
- (5) Theory is based on practice and in turn serves practice.
- (6) He based his theory upon lots of scientific experiments.
- (7) Atomic bombs are based on the fission of atoms.
- (8) This story is based on a historical fact.

7. 分词(短语)作方式状语

- (1) Both radio and TV set have become an essential part of our daily life, keeping us informed of the

news of the day and entertaining us with singing, dancing and acting.

- (2) He went into the workshop bringing tools with him.
- (3) The teacher walked into the classroom, followed by the students.
- (4) He continued to walk up and down, lost in thought.
- (5) There are thousands of satellites high above the earth, each travelling in its orbit.
- (6) He went to the front door, his companies following him.
- (7) The rocket took off with a satellite sitting on its top.

(火箭起飞，其顶部装着卫星。)

- (8) The student went away with a book in his hand.

## “比较”表示法

### 1. “等比”表示法

#### 1) as...as (和...一样; 像...一样)

- (1) Electromagnetic waves travel as fast as light.
- (2) Synthetic rubber is as good as natural rubber for some purpose.
- (3) Cast-iron is  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{almost as useful} \\ \text{almost as useful a material} \end{array} \right\}$  as steel.
- (4) The current is still as weak as it was at two thirty.
- (5) This is just as important an experiment as that.
- (6) Light that is too bright is just as harmful to our eyes as light that is too dim.
- (7) The body must dissipate heat as fast as it produces it.
- (8) This is as difficult a problem as you are likely to meet.
- (9) This test bed is as long and as wide as that one.
- (10) In winter it is nearly as cold in Tianjin as in Beijing.



2) *subj. + v. + no + more (or less, or adj. (adv.) 比较级) + adj. (adv.) + than + 被比较对象(不比...多; 不少于...)*

(1) We too have a head and two hands and are no stupider than others.

(2) China's women, no less than man, are participating in all kinds of work in the socialist construction of their country.

(3) He no less than you is diligent. (= He is no less diligent than you.)

(4) This machine tool is no more useful than that one.

(5) This material is no more elastic than that one.

(6) Our village is no less beautiful than this picture.

(7) This room is no less clean than that one.

(8) The basic ideas of atomic energy are no more difficult than many ideas you already understand.

(9) He is no less tall than his brother.

(10) Action is no less necessary to us than thought.

3) 

the same ... as	} (像...一样; 与...相同)
the same as	

(1) The weight of the neutron is about the same as a proton, but it has no electrical charge.

(2) The construction of a motor is practically the same as that of a generator.

(3) This machine is exactly the same in design as the other one.

(4) Our present atmosphere is about the same in composition as it was five hundred million years ago.

(5) This is the same television camera as you saw yesterday.

(6) In the nuclear power station, we use the same generator as is used in the common steam power station.

(7) Although he tried another method, he arrived at the same conclusion as we had.

(8) This is the same instrument as we stand in need of.

(9) Transistors can do the same work as vacuum tubes.

(10) Heat radiation obeys the same laws as light.

注: as在句中是关系代词, 引导定语从句而不是状语从句。

#### 4) (be) identical with (与...相同, 和...一样)

(1) This machine is identical with the other one in design.

(2) My opinion is identical with yours.

(3) Gamma rays are identical with X-rays except in being more penetrating.

(4) The two instruments are identical in every respect.

(5) This copy is identical with the ones you bought last week.

## 2. “差比”表示法

### 1) not so (as)...as (不如...那样)

(1) Sound does not travel so fast as light.

(2) The melting point of copper is not so high as that

of iron.

- (3) Bodies are not so heavy in water as they are in air.
  - (4) English is not so difficult to learn as French.
  - (5) In fact no other substance in the world is as light as hydrogen.
  - (6) This machine does not run so well as that one.
  - (7) The air in the city is not so pure as that in the country.
  - (8) This radio part does not overheat as easily as the old one.
  - (9) Transistors are not so large in size as vacuum tubes.
  - (10) The molecules of liquids do not move so actively as those of gases.
- 2) *subj. + v. + less + adj. (adv.) + than + 比较对象 (不如...那样)*
- (1) This question is less difficult than that one.
  - (2) A transistor produces less heat than a vacuum tube does.
  - (3) It rains less often in autumn than in summer.
  - (4) The resistance of a thick wire is less than that of a thin one.
  - (5) They are less interesting novels than the ones you've read.
  - (6) Copper is less expensive than silver.
  - (7) The heat capacity of alcohol is less than that of mercury.
  - (8) Transistors take much less space than vacuum tubes.

(9) Cast-iron is { weaker  
 less expensive  
 much less expensive  
 a much less expensive material  
 a much less expensive material to  
 produce }  
 than steel.

3) not the same (as) } (不是...那样)  
 not such...as }

(1) The instrument is not such as I saw on the exhibition.

(2) Cast-iron is { not quite such an expensive material  
 not quite such an expensive material }  
 to produce  
 as steel.

(3) This is not such a gas as we thought it to be.

(4) The weight of an object is not the same as its weight on the surface of the earth.

(5) Having been read by many people, the book returned is no longer the same as it was.

(6) Constantly applying advanced technology, the factory is no longer the same as it was a few years ago.

(7) He is not the same man as he was when he came here.

(8) This book is not such as I expect.

(9) He is not such a man as would leave his work half done.

(10) That is not the same kind of machine as we are in need of.

注: as 是关系代词, 引导定语从句, 不是状语从句。

4) behind 不如..., 迟于..... (= beyond)

(1) John is rather behind the rest of the class in mathematics.

(约翰的数学比班上的其他同学差相当远。)

(2) He arrived at the office ten minutes behind me.

(他比我迟十分钟到办公室。)

(3) He is behind none of them in his studies.

(4) The current in an inductive circuit lags ninety degrees behind the voltage applied.

(感应电流比输入电压低九十度。)

(5) It is an hour beyond his usual time.

### 3. “比...更” “与...比较” 表示法

1) than

(1) The volume of the sun is much larger than that of the earth.

(2) The new machine works much better than the old one.

(3) We have had much greater success this year than last year.

(4) The construction is going on faster than we expected.

(5) In this way, a large proportion of the kinetic energy of the steam can be utilized than in the simple

turbine.

- (6) This is a kind of chemical more harmful than that one.
- (7) The books on the desk are easier than the ones on the shelf.
- (8) When using a gas, the pressure in the test pipe must be a little lower than that when using a liquid.
- (9) The building is higher than it is wide.
- (10) The machine is working better than it did.
- (11) The effects of temperature variations in integrated circuits are more uniform than if separate components are used.

2) to

- (1) He is junior to me in years, but superior in knowledge.  
(他年龄比我小, 但知识比我广。)
- (2) Colored people are by no means inferior to white people.  
(黑人绝不比白人差。)
- (3) The artificial silk is not superior to the real silk.  
(人造丝就是不如天然丝好。)
- (4) He is senior to me in respect of service.  
(他的工龄比我长。)
- (5) Any suggestion is preferable to none.  
(不管什么建议总比没有好。)
- (6) This is a task prior to all others.  
(这一任务比其他一切任务都优先。)
- (7) This new procedure seems to be superior to any of

the other methods now in use.

(新法优于现在使用的任何其它方法。)

(8) This building is not so inferior to that one but nothing near so large.

(这座建筑物并不比那座差，只是远不及那座大。)

(9) In point of strength, he is second to none.

(谈到体力，他不比哪一个差。)

(10) The Magna Carta is anterior to the U. S. Constitution by more than 500 years.

(英国大宪章比美国宪法早500多年。)

### 3) beyond

(1) He had the power of cutting out what he meant in a few words, beyond anyone I had ever met.

(他那种以三言两语句划出他的意思的能力，比我所碰到过的人都强。)

(2) The scene was gorgeous beyond any I had ever seen.

(这景色比我所看到过的任何景物都壮丽。)

### 4) compare with, in comparison with

(1) The weights of all of the atoms have been discovered by comparing them with the weight of carbon.

(2) Compare the flow of electricity along a conductor with that of a liquid in a pipe.

(3) Pure aluminum is not very strong as compared with iron.

(4) Compared with the largest stars, the sun is very small indeed.

(5) Compared with other forms of energy, electric current probably has the widest range of use.

- (6) Solids as compared with liquids and gases expand little when heated.
- (7) Atomic cells are very small and very light as compared to ordinary dry cells.
- (8) In comparison with other inventions of the 18th century, the invention of the steam engine was the greatest of all.
- (9) In comparison with the mass of the proton, the mass of the electron is considered negligible.
- (10) There is an over-supply in comparison with the demand.

**5) contrast with, in contrast to (or with)**

- (1) Contrast Einstein's theory of gravitation with that of Newton.
- (2) Contrast these imported goods with the domestic product.
- (3) This building is quite tall, in contrast to that one, which is low.
- (4) In contrast with electrons, protons appear very large.
- (5) In contrast with uranium, most of the other radioactive elements disintegrate in a relatively short time.

(与铀相比, 大多数其它放射性元素都在相对短促的时间内蜕变。)

- (6) In contrast to conductors, there are very few free electrons in an insulator.

(与导体不同, 绝缘体只有很少自由电子。)



(7) In contrast to the mechanisms of conduction and convection, radiation may take place in a perfect vacuum.

(与传导和对流的原理不同,辐射可在完全真空中进行。)

(8) When the synthetic is contrasted with the natural one, the difference is very apparent.

(9) In contrast to that problem, this one is easy.

(10) In contrast to our old house, the new one is a mansion.

#### 6) in proportion to

(1) Most objects are big in proportion to the size of an atom, but small in proportion to the size of the sun.

(大部分物体与原子的体积比是大的,而与太阳的体积比是小的。)

(2) The house is tall in proportion to its width.

(3) In proportion to its size, Earth is the heaviest of all the planets.

#### 7) against 与...对比; 而; 与...对照

(1) Against the infinite universe, the very sun itself is a mere speck of dust.

(比之那无限的宇宙,即是太阳也是一点尘埃。)

(2) Prices for vegetables have shown a slight fall as against last month.

(蔬菜价格比上月略低。)

(3) Weighed against the first argument, this one is obviously lacking in force.

(比起第一个来,这一个论证显欠有力。)

(4) This engine has six cylinders as against the four cylinders of the earlier one.

(这台发动机有六个汽缸，而早期的发动机只有四个汽缸。)

(5) Against the U. S. dollar its value increased by more than 15 percent.

(6) Four students have passed this year's examination against three of last year.

(7) Three against 0.

(三比零)

(8) The business done this year amounts to £ 2,000 as against £ 1,500 last year.

(今年的营业额达2,000英镑，而去年只有1,500英镑。)

#### 8) over 比...

(1) The total value of industrial and agricultural output this year increased by seven percent over last.

(2) Transistors have many advantages over the old fashioned vacuum tubes.

(3) There seems to be little improvement, either in matter or in form, over the previous draft.

(似乎不论在内容或形式方面，都没有比先前一份草案有多大改进。)

(4) Despite all damage, this year's wheat harvest showed a more than 10% increase over last year.

#### 9) on 比...

(1) In winter the nights are gaining on the days.

(2) This is a big improvement on your first attempt.

(3) Despite all damage, this year's wheat harvest show-

ed a more than 15% advance on last year's.

#### 10) beside 与...相比

- (1) Beside yours our achievement counts for little.
- (2) The products of this factory can be ranked beside the best of their kind in our country.  
(这家工厂的产品比得上国内最好的同类产品。)
- (3) He isn't very good at arithmetic, but beside Harry, he is a genius at it.
- (4) You are quite tall beside your sister.

### 4. “择比”表示法

#### 1) had (would) rather...than = had (would) sooner...than 宁愿...而不...

A. would rather + 动词原形 + than + 动词原形

- (1) I would rather join you in research work than go on holiday to the seaside.
- (2) They would rather die as free men than live as slaves.
- (3) They would rather put the meeting off than hold it without adequate preparation.
- (4) I would rather go there than stay here.
- (5) He would rather die than surrender.
- (6) He would rather fight to death than yield.
- (7) John would rather drink Coca-Cola than orange juice.
- (8) Jim would rather go to class tomorrow than today.
- (9) Mary would rather have gone to class yesterday than today.

(10) The policeman would rather work on Saturday than on Sunday.

(11) John would rather have slept than worked last night.

注: would rather...than 多用于虚拟语气。如果表示与现在事实或将来事实相反, 则后接动词原形, 如果表示与过去事实相反, 则后接“have+过去分词”形式。这一结构表示在两个行为之间进行取舍, 着重主观上的选择。

B. would rather+动词原形(或 have+过去分词)这种句型将 than 及其后边的成分省去了。

(1) I would rather go at once.

(2) I don't like to be late. I'd rather be early.

(3) They don't like the train. They'd rather go by plane.

(4) I like apples better than oranges. I'd rather have an apple.

(5) We would rather stay home tonight.

(6) Mr. Johns would rather have stayed home last night.

(7) The photographer would rather have more light.

注: would rather+动词原形时, 其否定形式是:

(1) would rather+not+动词原形

(2) would rather+not+have+过去分词, 如:

(8) John would rather not go to class tomorrow.

(9) John would rather not have gone to class yesterday.

(10) Jim would rather not be here.

(11) George would rather not study tonight.

### C. would rather + that clause

在这一句型中 that 从句中谓语动词的形式是:

(1) would rather + that + *subj.* + 动词原形(表示虚拟意义)

(2) would rather + that + *subj.* + 动词过去时(与现在事实相反)

(3) would rather + that + *subj.* + had + 过去分词(与过去事实相反)

(1) I would rather that you call me tomorrow.

(2) We would rather that he take this train.

(3) Henry would rather that his girlfriend worked in the same department as he does.

(4) John would rather that it were winter now.

(5) Tom would rather that we didn't leave now, but we must go to work.

(6) Maria would rather that we studied more than we do.

(7) The photographer would rather that we stood closer together than we are standing.

(8) Robert would rather that we hadn't left yesterday.

(9) She would rather that you had not arrived last night.

(10) John would rather that you not call me tomorrow.

注: (1) would rather 与 had rather 用于指现在情况时可互用。但指将来或推测的情况时, 一般只用 would rather.

(2) would rather...than 与 would sooner...than 可互用。在这种句型中 rather 和 sooner 均为副词,

than 是连词。

(3) would rather 句型的疑问式是：

- a. Would you rather have a book or a magazine?
- b. Would you rather have a white skirt or a blue one?
- c. Would you rather have this picture or that one?

(4) would rather + 动词 + than + 动词 = would + 动词 + before + 动名词，

如：He would  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{die before surrendering.} \\ \text{rather die than surrender.} \end{array} \right.$

2) rather than = sooner than 宁愿…也不…，不是…而是…用来连接两个同等作用的句法单位，作等立连词。

(1) I will suffer myself rather than he would suffer.

(我宁愿自己受苦，也不能让他受难。)

(2) He depends on exercise rather than on medicine.

(他依靠锻炼而不是靠药物。)

(3) Rather than accelerate the reaction this compound brought about the side reaction.

(这种化合物没有使反应加速，而是引起了副反应。)

(4) Air is a mixture of several gases rather than a compound.

(5) Metals such as iron and copper are always used as alloys rather than as pure metals.

(6) He decided to write rather than telephone.

(7) I prefer to work rather than remain idle.

(8) He is an artist rather than a philosopher.

- (9) The speed of China's industrialization should be fast rather than slow.
- (10) You are doing this for yourself rather than for your friend.
- (11) They considered it practicable to remain where they were rather than to push on across the river.
- (12) He insisted on staying rather than go.
- (13) He stayed rather than go.
- (14) He was engaged in studying rather than reading the newspaper.
- (15) He called rather than said to me "Thank you".
- (16) He preferred to stay at home rather than go with us.
- (17) He prefers to write his letters rather than dictate others.
- (18) They preferred to die rather than surrender to the enemy.
- (19) Sooner than do such work, I would starve.
- (20) The patient was worse rather than better.

注：(1) rather than 有两个主要意义，当表示主观上的选择时，译成“宁愿…而不…”；当表示客观差异时，译成“不是…而是…”。

(2) 当 rather than 连接两个动词时，如果表示主观上的选择 rather than 一般后接动词原形例12、13；如果表示客观事实 rather than 后可跟动词的各种形式，一般与 rather than 前边的动词形式相同，例14、15。

### 3) prefer

A. prefer + n. + to + n. 宁要…而不要；宁可…而不…

- (1) I prefer white skirts to coloured ones.
- (2) They prefer alternative current to direct current.
- (3) We prefer this method to that.
- (4) They preferred death to surrender in their struggle with the enemy.
- (5) He said he preferred the country to the city.
- (6) At this time of day, I prefer tea to coffee.
- (7) Do you prefer this new teacher to the old one?
- (8) I prefer the original book to its sequel.

(我觉得原书比续篇好。)

B. prefer + *gerund* + to + *gerund*

- (1) Even on holidays, he preferred doing something to doing nothing.
- (2) For his favourite exercise, Jim prefers running to swimming.
- (3) They prefer walking to cycling.
- (4) Few children prefer working to playing.
- (5) He prefers doing to talking.

C. prefer + to + *inf.* + rather than + *inf.* (请参阅 4、2) rather than 部分)

4) would (had)...as soon (or lief)...as; had as good...as 与其...还不如...; 最好还是; 宁可...而不...

- (1) You had as good go there on foot as wait for the bus, since the factory is not far away.

(工厂离这儿不远, 与其在这儿等着, 还不如走着去好。)

- (2) You had as good study English as study German.
- (3) I would just as soon stay at home as go for a walk.



(与其出去散步, 我宁愿待在家里。)

(4) You had as lief work in the fields as go to school,  
if you refuse to study.

(5) I would as soon stay where I am as go to my  
uncle's.

(6) He would as soon kill himself as betray his coun-  
try.

(他宁可自杀而不愿卖国。)

(7) I would as lief die as live in dishonour.

(我宁死不愿苟生。)

(8) I would as lief join the Eighth Route Army as any-  
thing.

(我最乐意参加八路军。)

5) had (would) as soon 宁愿

(1) I would as soon you didn't tell me about that.  
(我宁愿你不曾告诉我这事。)

(2) I had just as soon stay out of the quarrel.  
(我宁愿置身于争吵之外。)

(3) I would just as soon not go.

(4) I would just as soon stay home and watch televi-  
sion.

(5) I'd just as soon she didn't see me.

(6) I'd just as soon Tom didn't telephone.

(7) I'd just as soon we didn't go tonight.

(8) I'd just as soon it didn't snow today.

6) before 宁愿...而不... (= rather than)

(1) I am willing to work myself death before I give up.  
(我宁愿累死也不放弃这项工作。)

(2) A hero should choose death before dishonour.

(英雄宁死不辱。)

(3) I will die before I submit.

(我宁愿死，绝不屈服。)

(4) I would die before yielding.

7) not so much...as (= rather than) 与其说..., 不如说...; 不在...而在...(not so much = less, as = than, conj.)

(1) The difference between the two words does not lie so much in meaning as in usage.

(这两个词的区别与其说表现在语义上, 不如说在用法上。)

(2) Your explanation does not so much enlighten us as confuse us.

(你的解释没有起到启发作用, 反而把我们弄糊涂了。)

(3) He is not so much a novelist as a poet.

(他与其说是个小说家, 不如说是个诗人。)

(4) Success in life does not depend so much on tact as on honesty and perseverance.

(人生的成功与其说取决于机警, 不如说取决于诚实和毅力。)

(5) He is not so much a musician as a composer.

(与其说他是音乐家, 不如说他是作曲家。)

(6) Our respect for him lies not so much in what he has as in what he really is.

(我们尊敬他并不在于他的财产, 而在于他的人格。)

(7) It is not so much what we eat, but rather what we do, that makes us true men.

(不是我们所吃的东西, 而是我们的所做所为使我们成

为真正的人。)

(8) I read this book not so much because of the interesting contents, but because of the superior style.

(我读这本书与其说是由于它的内容有趣, 还不如说是由于其优秀的文体。)

(9) He fails in any pursuit, not so much from want of knowledge, but because he is dishonest.

(在事业上, 他总是失败, 这不是因为他知识不足, 而是因为他不诚实所造成。)

(10) I don't so much dislike him as hate him.

(与其说我不喜欢他, 不如说我恨他。)

8) more...than = rather...than 与其说...不如说..., 是...而不是...

(1) It is more grey than brown. = It is grey rather than brown.

(这是灰色而不是棕色。)

(2) The division between the pure scientists and the applied scientists is more apparent than real.

(理论科学家和应用科学家的区分是表面的而不是实际的。)

(3) The book seems to be more a dictionary than a grammar.

(这本书看起来像是本字典, 而不像语法书。)

(4) He was more frightened than hurt.

(与其说他受了伤, 不如说他受了惊。)

(= He was less hurt than frightened.)

(5) The present crisis in capitalist countries is much more a political than an economic crisis.

(目前资本主义国家的危机与其说是经济危机不如说更像是政治危机。)

(6) He was an experimenter more than a theoretician.

(与其说他是一位理论家, 还不如说他是一位实验家。)

### 9) not...but 不是...而是

(1) Air is not an element, but a mixture.

(2) What we usually call metals are not metals but alloys.

(3) Some satellite relay stations relay radio waves to the earth but they receive the waves not from the earth, but from outer space.

(4) It is not the tools a scientist uses but how he uses these tools that makes him a scientist.

(5) The aim of our work is not to educate the peasants, but to learn from them.

(6) We are here not to sit idle, but to help the peasants to get in crops.

## 5. “相似” 的表示法

### 1) similar (to)

(1) The structure of an electric generator is very similar to that of an electric motor.

(2) Cameras are similar to the human eye.

(3) The flow of electrons through a wire is, in certain respects, similar to the flow of water through a pipe.

(4) The principles of radar are very similar to those of

television.

- (5) Gold is similar in color to brass.
- (6) The two dresses are similar but not identical.
- (7) A pool similar to that one would be nice.
- (8) In this respect grammar is similar to geometry.

## 2) like, alike

(1) This machine is  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{similar to} \\ \text{like} \end{array} \right\}$  the other one in design.

(2) The two machines are  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{similar} \\ \text{alike} \end{array} \right\}$  in many respects.

(3) Mary's dress and Jean's new dress look almost alike.

They are quite similar.

- (4) I like your radio. I'm going to buy one like it.  
I'm going to buy a radio similar to yours.
- (5) If all atoms were exactly alike, there would be only one kind of matter in the world.
- (6) The two buildings are very like each other.
- (7) The new table is very like the old one in color and shape.
- (8) The water surface is very much like a mirror.
- (9) These two words are pronounced exactly alike.
- (10) Although the planets are alike in some ways, they are different in many other ways.

## 3) similarly (*adv.*) to

- (1) As regards infra-red emission, plastic behaves similarly to glass.

(至于对红外线的放射, 塑料表现得与玻璃相似。)

- (2) First you must understand that microwaves behave similarly to visible light.

(首先你必须懂得, 波的表现与可见光相似。)

#### 4) resemble v.

- (1) They resemble each other in nature (in shape).  
(2) In this respect grammar resembles geometry.  
(3) People said they resembled each other so much that it was difficult to tell them apart.  
(4) She strongly resembles her mother.  
(5) In some respects a nation resembles a human being.

## 6. “与...一致” 的表示法

### 1) agree; in agreement with

- (1) The verb must agree with the subject in person and number.  
(2) If they are not in agreement with us, they have complete freedom to do as they choose.  
(3) Did your brother approve of your decision?  
Yes, he said he was in agreement with me.  
(4) The actual production figures are in agreement with the estimated figures.  
(5) This theory is found to be in agreement with the experimental results.  
(6) His explanation agrees with the facts of the situation.  
(7) Your story agrees with what I had already heard.

- (8) Your opinion agrees with mine.
- (9) This bill does not agree with your original estimate.
- (10) Your report does not agree with the facts.

**2) accord; in accord with; in accordance with; accordant with**

- (1) Their views are in accord with ours.
- (2) What he is doing is not in accord with what he has always said.
- (3) This is in accordance with the spirit of self-reliance and hard struggle.
- (4) His opinion is complete accordance with mine.
- (5) Our behaviour must accord with the interests of the people.
- (6) His actions accord with his words.
- (7) What he has just said does not accord with the views of the majority.
- (8) This is not in accordance with the spirit of the law.
- (9) Your words should accord with your thoughts.
- (10) This is perfectly accordant with his idea.
- (11) This sentence is not in accordance with the rules of grammar.
- (12) Our policy accords with the interests of the people.

(我们的政策符合人民的利益。)

**3) coincide; coincidence**

- (1) The experimental results  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{accord} \\ \text{agree} \\ \text{coincide} \end{array} \right\}$  with the theoretical calculations.

- (2) Our opinions did not coincide on this case.
- (3) The points of view of the two governments had coincided on most problems.
- (4) They could not go to the theatre together because his free time never coincided with hers.
- (5) Is there any coincidence between his opinions and your own?

#### 4) consistent, consistently, consistency

- (1) All the tests have shown consistent results.  
(所有的试验得出同样的结果。)
- (2) These figures are not consistent with the result obtained in previous experiments.  
(这些数字与从前实验得的结果不一致。)
- (3) This is not consistent with what they told me before.  
(这同他们以前告诉我的不一致。)
- (4) His actions are not consistent with his words.  
(他言行不一致。)
- (5) There is no consistency between the movie and the book.  
(这部电影与原著不一致。)
- (6) What you say is not consistent with what you do.  
(你说的与做的不一致。)
- (7) The statement is not consistent with the ones you made earlier.  
(这个声明同你以前的那些不一致。)
- (8) You are not consistent with yourself,  
(你自相矛盾。)



(9) The company's present plans are { in agreement }  
{ in accord }  
{ in conformity }  
{ consistent }

with its normal policy.

(公司的现行计划与其一贯的方针是一致的(相符合)。)

(10) The actual production figures are { in agreement }  
{ in accord }  
{ in conformity }  
{ consistent }

with the estimated figures.

(实际的生产量和估计的数字是一致的。)

(11) We should be consistent in our action and words.

(我们说话、办事应前后一致。)

#### 5) in conformity with 符合

(1) The signing of the agreement is in conformity with the common desire and interests of the two peoples.

(2) Was his action in conformity with laws?

#### 6) correspond with (or to) 与...一致; 相符合

(1) This English expression corresponds to that French one.

(这个英文表达法与法文的相符合。)

(2) His actions do not correspond with his words.

(3) The house exactly corresponds with my needs.

(4) Cloud forms correspond to atmospheric stability.

(云的形状与大气的稳定性相一致。)

(5) The results of the experiment correspond to the one we did yesterday.

## 7) conform to 适合, 符合, 使合于, 使符合

(1) Every word, every act and every policy must conform to the people's interests.

(2) Correct designing must conform to the policy of the Party and the concrete conditions of China.

(正确的设计必须符合党的方针政策和中国的具体情况。)

(3) We should see to it that all work done conforms to high standards.

(我们应该努力使我们所做的一切工作都达到高标准。)

(4) In writing one has to conform to usage as well as to the rules of grammar.

(写作时既要遵守语法规则, 又要符合习惯用法。)

(5) He tried to conform his conduct to the customs of society.

(他试图使他的行动符合社会上的风俗。)

(6) We have to conform our ideas to those of the society in which we live.

(7) The design conforms to the regulations.

## 7. “与...不同; 区别”表示法

### 1) differ, different

(1) Airplanes of today differ greatly from the airplanes of many years ago.

(2) Heat radiation differs from light only in being of longer wavelengths.

(3) The boiling point of water differs from that of other

liquids.

- (4) Thermometers used to measure room temperature differ from those used to measure body temperature.
- (5) Chemical elements differ from each other in properties.
- (6) Pay attention to uniting and working with comrades who differ with you.
- (7) I'm sorry to differ with you about that question.
- (8) Temperature is different from heat.
- (9) This machine is different from the other one in its shape.
- (10) The present idea of the structure of atoms is quite different from what it was before.
- (11) Modern rockets are vastly different from old military rockets.
- (12) The generator { differs } from the motor in that  
                          { is different } it generates electricity while the other uses electricity.
- (13) Molecules of water are entirely different both from molecules of hydrogen and from molecules of oxygen.
- (14) Stainless steel is different from ordinary steel.
- (15) A physical change is different from a chemical change.

## 2) distinguish

- (1) We can distinguish one kind of substance from another by its properties.

(我们可以根据物质的特性把一种物质与另一种物质区

别开来。)

(2) These two elements are so combined that we can not distinguish one from the other.

(这两种元素结合得使我们不能把他们相互区别开来。)

(3) We must distinguish sliding friction from rolling friction.

(我们必须把滑动摩擦同滚动摩擦区别开来。)

(4) It is of great importance to distinguish mass from weight.

(5) It is necessary for us to distinguish carefully between the temperature of a body and its heat content.

(我们必须区别一个物体的温度和它的热含量。)

(6) In physics we distinguish between velocity and speed.

(在物理学中速度和速率是有区别的。)

(7) You should be able to distinguish between right and wrong.

(8) How do you distinguish between a star and a planet?

### 3) tell...from (apart)

(1) It is easy to tell one state of matter from another.

(把物质的一种物态和另一种区分开来是很容易的。)

(2) Special gravity is a very useful way of telling different things apart.

(比重是区分不同物体的一种很有用的方法。)

(3) There are some people who are not able to tell some colours apart.

(有些人不能辨别某些颜色。)

(4) You could not tell oxygen and carbon dioxide apart by looking at them.

(用观察的方法, 你不能分辨氧气和二氧化碳。)

(5) It's easy to tell chemical changes and physical changes apart.

(6) We can tell one piece of matter from another by its properties.

#### 4) discriminate 区分, 把...和...加以区别

(1) We have to discriminate cloud from fog.

(我们必须区别云和雾。)

(2) It is necessary for us to discriminate carefully the temperature of a body from its heat content.

(我们必须把一个物体的温度和它的热含量加以区分。)

(3) We must learn to discriminate good from evil.

(4) Even children can discriminate between plants and animals.

(5) It is important for us to discriminate good books from poor ones.

(6) How can he discriminate the real painting from the false one.

(7) A critic must be able to discriminate good literature from bad.

(8) A judge will discriminate between different degrees of crime.

#### 5) discern 辨别

(1) We must learn to discern between right and wrong.

(2) It is necessary for us to discern good books from poor ones.

6) other than 与...不同, 而不是

(1) The truth is quite other than what you think.

(2) I wish the machine other than it is.

(我希望这台机器不是现在这样。)

(3) Do you have any books other than novels? I want

to read something on sciences.

(4) This book is other than what I thought it was.

(5) I don't wish her (to be) other than she is.

(我不希望她变(得不像现在这样)。)

(6) History ought to have been other than it was; and

we ought to be other than we are.

(过去的历史不应该是那个样子, 我们也不应该是现在

这个样子。)

8. “越...越...”表示法

1) 形容词和副词的比较级连用 (Double comparatives)

(1) Nowadays, ballooning is becoming more and more popular.

(2) Our country has become stronger and stronger.

(3) Machines help people do more and more work with less and less power.

(4) Better and better results are got through scientific experiments.

(5) With transistors, radios can be made smaller and smaller in size.

(6) The situation both at home and abroad will grow better and better.

- (7) Integrated circuits have found wider and wider application in industry.
- (8) More and more solar energy will be used by man.
- (9) As the water is heated, its molecules move faster and faster.
- (10) The plane flew higher and higher.
- (11) Under the leadership of the Party, the Chinese workers are producing more and more iron and steel to satisfy the needs of the country.
- (12) More and more power plants will be built in all parts of the country.
- (13) Water evaporated more and more quickly as the temperature grew.
- (14) As I get older, my memory seems to get worse and worse.
- (15) He ran faster and faster, but still his pursuer gained on him.

## 2) "the...the..."句型

- (1) The harder you work, the greater progress you will make.
- (2) The sooner you start, the sooner you'll finish it.
- (3) The nearer an object is to us, the larger it looks.
- (4) The larger the number (is), the more time it will take to solve the problem.
- (5) The higher the plane flies, the thinner the air gets.
- (6) We must unite with the masses; the more of the masses we unite with, the better.
- (7) The smaller the particles (are), the more freely do

they move.

(8) The more learned a man is, the more modest he is.

(9) The better our life is, the more we love our socialist country.

(10) The more carefully we work, the better the result will be.

(11) The hotter a body is, the more energy it radiates.

(12) The higher the temperature of a body, the quicker the motion of its molecules.

(14) The darker the colour of the material, the greater the amount of heat it would absorb.

(15) Because the earth is constantly turning, the farther west you go, the later noon comes.

(16) The nearer a falling body gets to the earth, the greater its speed.

注：(1) “the...the” 句型中第一个 the 为关系副词，引导状语从句，第二个 the 为指示副词，引导主句。

(2) 这种句型一般是从句在前，主句在后。但有时主句也位于句首，如：

a. The air can absorb the more water vapour, the higher its temperature.

b. Vibrations become weaker the farther they go.

c. Evaporation goes on more rapidly the warmer and drier the surrounding air is.

3) all the more, the more 愈加...；更加...

(1) Well I know there is danger ahead, but I am all the more set on driving forward.



(明知前途有艰险，越是艰险越向前。)

(2) If you condemn his principle, he will stick to it the more.

(你如说他的原则不适用，他就越要坚持。)

(3) I told him to stop shouting, but he only shouted all the more.

(4) I know the job is not an easy one, but that is all the more reason you should work hard at it.

(5) We like our lessons all the more, so they are difficult.

(正因为功课难，我们更加喜爱它们。)

(6) Opening the windows made it all the hotter.

(7) He told a lie about it, and that makes his fault all the worse.

(8) If we get help, the work will get finished all the sooner.

(9) If we plant early, it will be all the better for our garden.

#### 4) increasingly 日益，越来越...

(1) Television is playing an increasingly important role in our political and cultural life.

(2) At present the international situation is developing in a direction increasingly favorable to the people of the world.

(3) The developing countries are increasingly aware that computers play a big part in their economic advancement.

(4) One struggle followed another, each increasingly pro-

found.

(5) The situation there has become increasingly grave in the last few days.

(6) The work is getting increasingly difficult.

5) each, every, day by day

(1) Our country is growing in strength and prestige with each passing year.

(我们的国家正一天天地愈益强大, 愈益有威信。)

(2) With every moment the storm increased in fury.

(风暴一分一秒地越来越猛。)

(3) The role which the electronic computer plays in science and technology becomes more important with each passing day.

(4) The new-born forces are growing up day by day in the course of the revolution.

(5) Day by day the situation is improving.

(6) Each day is better than the one before.

6) as

(1) As distance increases, light intensity decreases.  
(距离越远, 光的强度越小。)

(2) One advances in modesty as one advances in knowledge.

(一个人学问越深, 越是谦虚。)

(3) As a man goes down in self, he goes up in moral stature.

(“私”字越少, 人格越高。)

(4) One sees farther as one climbs higher.

(登得越高, 看得越远。)

(5) As the atomic number increases, the atomic weight increases.

(原子序数越大, 原子量越大。)

(6) The volume of all bodies increase as the temperature rises.

(一切物体的体积随温度的升高而增大。)

(7) The energy of motion increases very rapidly as the speed increases.

(速度越快, 动能越大。)

(8) The atmosphere gets thinner and thinner as the height increases.

(越高空气越稀薄。)

#### 7) can not...too

(1) You can not give me too much work.

(给我的工作越多越好。)

(2) No one can have too many friends.

(一个人朋友越多越好。)

(3) You can not be too careful.

(越小心越好。)

(4) We can not have too many Lei Fengs.

(象雷锋那样的人, 我们越多越好。)

(5) No man can have too much knowledge and practice.

(知识和实践越多越好。)

(6) One can not be too faithful to one's duties.

(对自己的职责, 越忠实越好。)

(7) Ambition of the right sort we can not have too much.

(正当的志气, 越大越好。)

(8) We can not be too strict with the students.

(我们对学生越严越好。)

(9) It is impossible to criticize too severely his conduct.

(对他的这种行为批评得越严厉越好。)

8) in proportion as (to)

(1) You gain skill in proportion as you practice.

(练习得越多，就越熟练。)

(2) Man is arrogant in proportion to his ignorance.

(越是无知的人，越发妄自尊大。)

(3) Men are happier in proportion as they are busier.

(人越忙越快乐。)

(4) New light is added to the mind in proportion as it uses that which it has.

(脑子越用越聪明。)

(5) In proportion as men delight in fame, position and riches, will they tend to sink into depravity.

(越是好名，好位，好钱财，越是容易堕落。)

## “比例”表示法

### 1. 与...之比为...

1) the ratio of...to = the ratio between...and...

(1) The efficiency of a machine is the ratio of the work (which is) done to the energy (which is) applied.  
(机器的效率是所做的功与所用的能之比。)

(2) The atomic weight of an element is the ratio of the mass of its atom to the mass of the atom of same standard elements.

(元素的原子量是该元素原子的质量与某标准元素原子的质量之比。)

(3) There is one professor to every ten students. They are in a ratio of 1 to 10.

(4) The ratio of the clearance volume to the swept volume in a cylinder differs in different types of engine.  
(在不同类型的发动机中,汽缸的余隙容积和扫除容积的比率是不同的。)

(5) Electric resistance is the ratio of voltage to the current.

(电阻就是电压与电流之比。)

(6) The ratio of object size to image size is equal to the ratio of object distance to image distance.

(物体大小与图象大小之比等于物体距离与图象距离之比。)

(7) The ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter is always the same, regardless of the size of the circle.

(不管圆的大小如何, 其圆周与直径的比例总是一样的。)

(8) There are 15 parts of air to every part of fuel. They are in a ratio of 15 to 1.

(9) The efficiency of a cyclic process is the ratio of the work done to the heat received.

(循环过程的效率是所做的功与受的热之比。)

(10) The ratio of electrical pressure to current in a given object in a given temperature is always constant.

(11) The efficiency of a motor is the ratio between the power output and the power input.

(电动机的效率是输出功率与输入功率之比。)

(12) Brass is composed of 7 parts of copper to 3 parts of zinc.

The ratio of copper to zinc is 7:3.

注: the ratio of...to 和 the ratio between...and... 可通用。

in proportion to  
2) the proportion of...to } 与...的比例

(1) The proportion of air to fuel in the combustion chamber is 15 to 1.

(燃烧室中空气与燃料的比例是15比1。)

- (2) The air and fuel are mixed in a proportion of 15 to 1.
- (3) The standard-mass concrete is made up of cement, sand and small stones in the proportion of 1:2:4.  
(标准混凝土由水泥, 黄砂和石子按1:2:4比例构成。)
- (4) The proportion of students to professors is 10 to 1.
- (5) Manganese and magnesium are present in equal proportion in duralumin.  
(锰和镁在硬铝中所占的比例相等。)
- (6) The house is tall in proportion to its width.  
(就与其宽度的比例而言这房子是很高的。)
- (7) This door is narrow in proportion to its height.
- (8) The proportion of girls to boys in this class is four to three.
- (9) In proportion to its size, Earth is the heaviest of all the planets.

## 2. 与...成比例

### 1) to be proportional to

- (1) The linear speed of rotation of a pulley is proportional to its diameter.  
(滑轮旋转的线速度与其直径成比例。)
- (2) Friction losses in the pipe are proportional to the square of the velocity of flow.  
(管中的摩擦损耗与流速平方成比例。)
- (3) The increase in the price is proportional to the improvement in the car.

(车子涨价同它的改进是成比例的。)

(4) The weight of a body is proportional to its mass.

(5) Water consumption is proportional to the gross national product.

(水的耗费量与整个国家的产品成比例。)

(6) The acceleration of a body is proportional to the force acting on it.

(一个物体的加速度与作用于该物体的力成比例。)

(7) The force that moves a body is proportional to the mass of the body.

(移动一个物体所需的力与该物体的质量成比例。)

(8) The volume of a gas is proportional to its absolute temperature provided its pressure remains constant.

(如果压力保持不变, 气体的体积和它的绝对温度成正比。)

(9) The pay will be proportional to the amount of time put in.

(代价要和所花的时间成比例。)

(10) A man's weight should be proportional to his height.

(一个人的体重应该和他的身高相称。)

## 2) vary as; vary with

(1) Friction losses in the pipe vary as the square of the velocity of flow.

(管子中的摩擦损耗与流速平方成比例。)

(2) The linear speed of rotation of a pulley varies as its diameter.

(滑轮旋转的线速度与其直径成比例。)

(3) The strength of the steel varies with the amount of



carbon it contains.

- (4) The coefficient of expansion of water varies with its temperature.

(水的膨胀系数随它的温度而异。)

- (5) Note that both the temperature and the density of air vary with altitude.

(注意空气的温度和密度都随高度而异。)

### 3) in proportion to 与...成比例

- (1) Wave motion decreases rapidly in proportion to depth below the surface.

(浪的运动与水深成比例的迅速地减弱。)

- (2) The force of gravity acts on all bodies in proportion to their masses.

(地心引力与质量成比例地作用于所有的物体。)

- (3) Imports will be allowed in proportion to exports.

(容许的进口量按照出口的多少而定。)

- (4) The payment is in proportion to work done, not in proportion to time.

(报酬是与完成的工作成比例，而不是与耗去的时间成比例。)

### 4) be proportionate to 与...成比例

Rewards should be proportionate to merits.

(奖赏应和功绩相称。)

## 3. 与...成正比

### 1) to be directly proportional to

- (1) The pressure at any point below the surface of a

liquid is directly proportional to the depth.

(液体表面下任何一点的压力与该点的深度成正比。)

(2) Acceleration is directly proportional to force.

(加速度与力成正比。)

(3) Metal removal at any speed is directly proportional to horse power.

(在任何速度下，金属的切除与马力成正比。)

(4) The volume of a mass of gas at constant pressure is directly proportional to its absolute temperature.

(压力不变时，一团气体的容积与其绝对温度成正比。)

(5) The power of an engine is directly proportional to the area of cross-section of the cylinder.

(发动机的功率与气缸横断面的面积成正比。)

(6) The weight of a body is directly proportional to its mass.

2) to be directly related to 与...成正比；与...有直接关系

(1) Weight is directly related to the mass of a body, that is, to the amount of matter in it.

(重量与物体的质量成正比，即与物体内物质的量成正比。)

(2) Power is directly related to both "work" and "energy".

(功率与“功”和“能量”均成正比。)

(3) The power of an engine is directly related to the area of cross-section of the cylinder.

(发动机的功率与汽缸的截面面积成正比。)

3) vary directly as

(1) The area of a circle varies directly as the square of

its radius.

(圆的面积与半径的平方成正比。)

(2) When the width of a rectangle is constant, its area varies directly as its length.

(当长方形的宽度不变时, 它的面积与长度成正比。)

(3) The attraction of bodies varies directly as their masses.

(物体间的引力与它们的质量成正比。)

(4) The power of an engine varies directly as the area of cross-section of the cylinder.

(5) The volume varies directly as the temperature.

4) vary directly with

(1) The electric current varied directly with the voltage.  
(电流与电压成正比。)

(2) With temperature being constant, the resistance of a conductor varies directly with its length.

(温度不变, 导体的电阻与长度成正比。)

(3) The current that flows in a circuit varies directly with the electromotive force.

(电路中的电流与电动势成正比。)

(4) At constant pressure, the volume of a gas varies directly with its absolute temperature.

(压力恒定时, 气体的体积与其绝对温度成正比。)

(5) The electric current varied directly with the voltage.

5) in proportion as

(1) A barometer rises or falls in proportion as the temperature rises or falls.

(气压计的升降与温度的升降成正比。)

(2) The price of commodities is in proportion as the labour costs in it.

(商品的价格是和所花的劳动成正比的。)

(3) In proportion as the sales increase, the profits rise.

(销售量与利润成正比。)

6) increase with 与...成正比; 随着...增加

(1) Pressure in liquids increases with the depth.

(2) The kinetic energy increases with the velocity.

(3) The molecular movement increases with the temperature.

(4) The friction increases directly with the pipe length.

(5) With volume being constant, pressure increases with temperature.

7) in direct proportion to

(1) The pressure exerted by a gas is in direct proportion to its density, provided that the temperature remains constant.

(温度不变, 气体所产生的压力与它的密度成正比。)

(2) Other conditions being equal, the rate of production will increase in direct proportion to an increase in the rate of feed.

(其他条件相等, 生产率的增长与进刀量成正比。)

8) as 随着...

(1) As the temperature increases, the volume of a gas becomes greater.

(2) The volume of all bodies increases as the temperature rises.

(3) The energy of motion increases very rapidly as the

speed increases.

(4) The volume varies as the temperature increases.

9) the...the 句型, 越...越

(1) The more carbon the steel contains, the harder it becomes.

(2) The faster an object moves, the greater is the air resistance.

(3) The warmer water (is), the faster it evaporates.

(4) The higher the temperature (is), the greater the pressure (is).

(5) The higher the temperature, the faster the speed of molecules.

(6) The farther away the target is, the longer it takes for the echo to return.

(7) The greater the degree of industrialization in a country, the higher the standard of living.

(8) The higher you go up into the air, the colder you will feel.

(9) The higher the voltage, the faster will the electrons move.

(10) The greater the depth of the water, the greater the pressure.

#### 4. 与...成反比

1) be inversely proportional to

(1) The acceleration of a body is inversely proportional to the mass of the body.

(物体的加速度与该物体的质量成反比。)

- (2) The attractive force between two objects is directly proportional to the product of their masses and is inversely proportional to the square of the distance between them.
- (3) The resistance is inversely proportional to the cross section of the conductor.
- (4) The friction increases directly with the pipe length and is inversely proportional to the diameter.
- (5) In an electric circuit the current is directly proportional to the voltage and inversely proportional to the resistance.
- (6) At constant temperature, the pressure of a gas is inversely proportional to its volume.
- (7) The insulation resistance of a cable is inversely proportional to its length.

(电缆的绝缘电阻与其长度成反比。)

- (8) The speed of a pulley is always inversely proportional to its size.

## 2) vary inversely as

- (1) An electric current varies inversely as the resistance.
- (2) The volume of a gas varies inversely as the pressure.
- (3) The insulation resistance of a cable varies inversely as its length.

## 3) vary inversely with

- (1) The volume varies inversely with the pressure.
- (2) The insulation resistance of a cable varies inversely

with its length.

- (3) The intensity of light varies inversely with the square of the distance.

(光强与距离的平方成反比。)

- (4) When distance is constant, the rate varies inversely with the time.

(距离不变, 速度与时间成反比。)

- (5) The length of a wave varies inversely with its frequency.

(波长与频率成反比。)

- (6) At constant temperature, the volume of a gas varies inversely with the pressure.

- (7) Atmospheric pressure decreases with increase in altitude and so does the density of the atmosphere.

#### 4) "the...the..." 句型

- (1) Air becomes less dense the high you go.

- (2) The better conductor a substance is, the less is its resistance.

- (3) The greater the height, the less air there is; and the lower the pressure.

- (4) The smaller the pipe, the greater is the resistance to the flow of water, and the less is the current that flows through it.

- (5) The longer the distance between two objects (is), the smaller the attractive force (will be) between them.

- (6) The greater the resistance, the less the current.

## “让步”表示法

### 1. 状语从句表让步

#### 1) though, although 虽然, 尽管

- (1) Though we can not see sound waves, we can prove their existence and even measure their wavelength with special instruments.
- (2) Although the new process has many advantages, there are some weak points in itself.
- (3) We'll try to finish the work in time though we are short of man power.
- (4) Air has weight, though it is very light.
- (5) Energy can be neither created nor destroyed although its form can be changed.
- (6) Though each material is different, all materials are alike in certain ways.
- (7) Although water is a very stable substance, it is easily decomposed by an electric current.
- (8) Though we can not see it, there is air all around us.
- (9) All electronic computers consist of five units although they are of different kinds.
- (10) Early in the evening though it was, the clouds made it almost dark in the forest.



(11) Though air is invisible, it is a substance which fills up space.

(12) Though energy exist in various ways, scientists have found that there are really just two kinds of energy.

注：(1) though 引导的让步状语从句，让步语气轻，多用于口语中，although 多用于正式文体中，可位于句首，句中，句末。

(2) though 常与 even 连用，表示强调，although 则不能。

(3) though 可用作副词，表示“然而”，放在句末；although 则不能，如：

It was a quiet party, I had a good time, though.

(4) though, although 引导的让步状语从句中，可省略与主句相同的主语和其相应的 be，如：

Comrade Li, though (although) (he is) disabled, does his bit for socialism.

(李同志尽管残废了，还为社会主义尽一分力量。)

(5) though 引导的让步状语从句可以用倒装语序，即将表语或状语提到句首，而 although 则不能，如：

a. Difficult though (=as) the task was, they managed to accomplish it in time.

b. Clever though (=as) you may be, you can not do that.

c. Small though the particle is, we can see it under a very powerful microscope.

## 2) as 尽管，虽然

as 引导的让步状语从句，让步语气较强，并且从句一般位

乎句首，主句之前，须用倒装语序。

(1) Complicated as the problem is, it can be solved in only two seconds with an electronic computer.

(2) Different as the forms of matter are, they are nothing but matter in motion.

(3) Small as atoms are, they contain vast amounts of energy.

(4) Try as he might, he could not get out of the difficulty.

(5) Fast as you read, you can't finish the book in two days.

(6) Simple as the question may seem, it is not at all common in nature.

(7) Hard as the metal is, it can be changed into liquid at high temperature.

(8) Great as our achievements are, we should never be content with them anyway.

(9) Difficult as the situation was, nobody had the thought of giving in.

(10) Fast and accurately as the electronic computers work, they can not do all that man does.

注：as 引导的从句中，主语是代词时，主、谓不倒装；主语是名词时，主、谓可倒装，如：

a. Busy as he is, he studies very hard.

b. Complicated as was the experiment, it was finished in time.

但一般情况下由 as 引导的让步状语从句句型是：

名词 }  
 副词 }  
 形容词 } + as + 主语 + 动词  
 过去分词 }

动词 + as + 主语 + may (or will, would) (例(4))

当名词位于句首时，名词前一般不用冠词，如：

c. Child as he is, he knows something of electricity.

3) even if (though) 即使，虽然

(1) Even if we fail, we will not stop trying.

(2) Even if we achieve great success in our work, we should not be conceited.

(3) Science requires the effort of a life time and even if you had two lives to give, it would still not be enough.

(4) The weight has a kind of mechanical energy even though it is not moving.

(5) The sun gives the earth a tremendous amount of heat and light even though it is far away.

(6) Even though you had enough money, you could not buy the lost time.

(7) Even if he were here, he could not solve the problem at once, either.

(8) Even if it were more difficult, I wouldn't change my mind.

(9) Even if it should rain tomorrow, we will continue our work.

(10) Most objects, even though opaque to visible light, will let the X-rays through.

(11) Even if he had been there yesterday, he would not have told them the news.

(12) Even though I were in his place, I would not go.

(13) Even though (Although) the traffic held us up, we got to the airport on time.

注：由 even if (though) 引导的让步状语从句，谓语动词常用虚拟语气，例 (6) (7) (8) (9) (11) (12)。

4) whether...or 无论，不论，不管

(1) The chemical composition of water is  $H_2O$  whether it is solid, liquid or water vapour.

(2) All matter, whether it is gaseous, liquid or solid, is made up of atoms.

(3) There is energy working around us all the time, whether we are aware of it or not.

(4) Whether or not the figures are accurate, we have to recheck them.

(5) Whether you believe it or not, it's true.

(6) This substance does not dissolve in water whether heated or not.

(7) Whether we beat them or they beat us, the match will be enjoyable.

(8) The principle is true of all processes in nature, whether they be physical or chemical.

(这个原理对自然界的所有过程都成立，不管这些过程是物理的还是化学的。)

(9) The earth is a powerful magnet and all magnets behave the same whether they be large or small.

(10) Whether the figures be accurate or not, they have

to be rechecked.

注：(1) 由 **whether** 引导的让步状语从句，谓语动词可用虚拟语气，例 (9) (10)。

**whether...or not** 可与 **even if...not** 转换，如：

You'll have to pay  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{whether you like it or not.} \\ \text{even if you don't like to pay.} \end{array} \right.$

5) **no matter how, however** 无论怎样

(1) **No matter how well we do our work, we must always remember there is plenty of room for further improvement.**

(2) **Everything in the world, no matter how different it may seem from every other thing, is made partly of electrons.**

(3) **No matter how difficult the task may be, we must complete it in time.**

(4) **No matter how complicated a compound may be, it is made up of elements.**

(5) **They will forge ahead bravely no matter how violent the storms in future.**

(6) **However (No matter how) hard a solid maybe, we can change its shape.**

(7) **However hard it may be, do your best.**

(8) **A man should be modest however (no matter how) much knowledge he may possess.**

(9) **However humble it is, there is no place like home.**

(10) **No matter how hot it is, we are going on with our work.**

(11) **No matter how late it is, I must do another**

experiment.

(12) No matter how hard I try, I can never catch up with him.

6) no matter what, whatever

(1) I do not believe him no matter what he says.

(2) Every substance, no matter what it is, is made up of atoms.

(3) No matter what happens, we must push on with our work.

(4) In our country everybody is an ordinary worker no matter what his position (is).

(5) No matter what post I am in, I must do my best and try in every way to serve the people.

(6) Two things that have the same kind of charge repel each other, no matter what kind of charge it is.

(7) Whatever the shape of a body may be, it is always possible to find out its volume.

(8) Whatever you do, do it well.

(9) Don't change your mind, whatever happens.

(10) Whatever the difficulties and hardships (may be), we will certainly fulfil the task.

(11) You must have your own view on such an important subject, whatever other people may say about it.

(12) Friction always opposes the motion, whatever its direction.

注: 动词 + what... + will (may) = will (may) do (do)

{ whatever  
no matter what } ... + 动词.

如: (1) Do what you will  
 Whatever you do  
 No matter what you do } , I will do it  
 (不管你想干什么, 我仍然做这件事。)

(2) Come what may  
 Whatever may come  
 No matter what may come } , I must go there

(3) Happen what may  
 Whatever may happen  
 No matter what may happen } , we are prepared for it.

(4) Be the work what it may  
 Whatever work it may be  
 No matter what work it may be } , do it with care.

7) no matter which, whichever 无论哪一个

(1) No matter which subject you may study, you will experience the same difficulty.

(2) You may use one or two of these remedies, no matter which.

(3) You must finish this experiment today, whichever way you do it.

(4) Whichever you choose, make sure it is a good one.

(5) Take the one you like best, whichever it is.

(6) Whichever material you may use, the result will be the same.

(7) Does British foreign policy remain the same whichever Party is in power?

(8) Whichever method you may use, you will get the same result.

(9) Whichever way you may take at the cross-roads, it will lead you to your destination.

**8) no matter who, whoever 不管是谁, 不管什么人**

(1) Anyone may point out the shortcomings in our work, no matter who (he is).

(2) The effect of pushing the button is the same no matter who does it.

(3) No matter who asks him questions, he is always glad to answer them.

(4) We must learn to do economic work from all who know how, no matter who they are.

(5) Whoever you be, you have no right to do such a thing.

(6) It is not true, whoever may say so.

(7) The one who made that mistake shall be criticized, whoever he is.

注: 动词 + who(m)... will (may) =

{ whoever  
no matter who } + 动词,

如: Doubt whom you will

Whomever you may doubt

No matter whom you may doubt

} , never doubt  
yourself.

**9) no matter when, whenever 不管何时, 不论什么时候**

(1) You must return this book to us, no matter when (you return).

(2) No matter when and how the invaders come, they will be wiped out clean.



(3) In case of difficulty, just call on me, no matter when.

(4) No matter when you call on me, you are welcome.

(5) Whenever our motherland needs me, I will respond to her call.

(6) Whenever a problem crops up, deal with it right away.

(7) You should let me know whenever you come.

注, 动词 + when... will (may) =

whenever

no matter when

} ... + 动词, 如:

Call when you will.

Whenever you (may) call

No matter when you (may) call

} you will find him in the workshop.

10) no matter where, wherever 无论什么地方

(1) No matter where we live, we need clothing to protect our bodies from sun and wind.

(2) The mass of a body remains the same, no matter where it is.

(3) It has been found that all animals, no matter where they live or what their size, have oil in their bodies.

(4) No matter where our Party needs us, we will respond to her call.

(5) The normal temperature for a human being, no matter in what part of the world he lives, is about 36°C.

(6) No matter where you work, you can find time to

study.

(7) No matter where an earthquake occurs, patterns of seismic waves are set in motion.  
(不管哪里发生地震, 都有各种类型的地震波发出。)

(8) Wherever we go, we may observe the movement of objects.

(9) Wherever you go, you can see new factories in our country.

(10) Wherever you work, you must always serve the people whole heartedly.

注: 动词 + where... + will (may) = wherever (or no matter where)... + 动词, 如:

Go where you will } you will find many good things.  
Wherever you may go }  
No matter where you may go }

11) no matter whether (if) 不论是...还是...

(1) The temperature of your body is always just the same, no matter whether the weather is hot or cold.

(2) No matter whether you study natural or social science, the object of your study is for the service of the people.

(3) No matter whether the balance of forces is in our favour or our enemy's, operations must be carried out by concentrating our forces.

(不管力量的对比是有利于我们还是有不利于敌人, 作战都必须集中兵力。)

(4) He was determined to do what is right, no matter whether he was laughed at or not.

12) if 即使, 虽然 (=even if)

(1) If life there was full of hardships, it was also full of joy and excitement.

(2) There was pleasure for me in that job, if also much pain.

(3) If too old to work much, he is still eager enough to keep up with things.

(虽然年老不能多干工作, 他还是积极争取赶上形势。)

(4) I will do it if it kills me.

(即使要我的命, 我也要这样做。)

(5) We shall never learn enough, not if we live to be a hundred.

(即使活到百岁, 也学无止境。)

(6) His writing is clear if somewhat untidy.

(7) I always enjoy sailing if the weather is rough.

(8) If they did not have much, they were at any rate optimistic and happy.

(9) If he is inexperienced, he is at any rate eager to learn.

(10) If he is poor, he is at least honest.

13) if any 即使

if any 是省略的让步状语从句。一般在 if any 前有 little, few, seldom, rarely 等词, 如:

(1) There is little, if any, difference between them.

(它们之间, 即使有差别, 也是很小的。)

(2) There are few, if any, mistakes.

(3) Many military devices have few, if any, peace time uses.

(4) It is assumed that there is little, if any, leakage through the condensers.

(大家认为电容器即使漏电也是很少的。)

14) if at all 即使

It is to be noted that at normal temperature this substance dissolves only slightly, if at all.

(必须注意, 在常温下这种物质即使能溶解, 也只能溶解一小点。)

15) granted (granting) that 即使, 就算

(1) Granted that the data are reliable, what conclusion can you draw?

(2) Granting that this is true, you are still in the wrong.

(3) Granted that she did say so, that is no excuse for her conduct.

(4) Granted that you've made some progress, you should not be conceited.

(5) Granting that he has enough money to buy the house, it does not mean he is going to do so.

(6) Granted that they were not doing it the right way, you were not right in taking everything upon yourself.

(即使他们的做法不对, 你也不应一概都揽在自己肩上。)

(7) Granted that he is not brilliant, he is at least competent and works hard.

16) while 虽然

(1) While I understand what you say, I can not agree

with you.

- (2) While not exactly ideal, it is the best arrangement under the circumstances.
- (3) Weapons, while important, are not decisive.
- (4) In a word, while the prospects are bright, the road has twists and turns.
- (5) While you may be right, I can not altogether agree.
- (6) While I admit that the problems are difficult, I don't agree that they can not be solved.
- (7) While the temperature of two bodies may be equal, the amounts of heat contained within them may be very different.
- (8) These neutrons, while they have the same mass or weight as the protons, have no electric charge.
- (9) While he admits that the mistakes he has made are serious, he refuses to correct them.
- (10) While I admit the thing is difficult, I don't think it is impossible.

17) that 尽管, 虽然 (that 引导的让步状语从句用倒装语序)

(1) Child that he is, he knows enough to tell good from bad.

(2) Fool that I am, I know better than to do that.

(我虽愚蠢, 也不至于干这样的事。)

(3) Strong man that he is, he has been severely put to the test during the past few weeks.

(尽管他是个坚强人物, 而在过去几星期内, 还是遭受了严峻的考验。)

(4) Poor that paper is in conductivity, it is by no

means a perfect insulator.

(纸尽管导电性很差,但决不是完全绝缘的。)

(5) Small that atoms are, there are electrons still smaller.

(原子虽然很小,但电子更小。)

**18) when 虽然,即使**

(1) He usually walks home when he might ride.

(虽然有车可乘,但他总是步行回家。)

(2) He lent me the book when liked it best.

(虽然他最喜欢这本书,可还是借给我了。)

(3) When all is lost, the future still remain.

(即使旁的什么都丢掉了,也还有个未来。)

(4) I shall stand by you when a whole town is against you.

(即使满城人反对你,我还是将支持你。)

(5) We got only a little when we needed a lot.

(6) Why do you constantly complain of your lot when you might change it?

(你尽可改变自己的命运,为什么老是叫苦不迭呢?)

(7) He used six words to explain the idiom when only two were needed.

**19) so...but = so...that...not 即使(尽管)...也(从属连词,表否定意义。)**

(1) Nothing is so good but there is room for improvement.

(事情尽管再好,也总有改进的余地。)

(2) No man is so old but that he may learn.

(尽管年龄再大,人总可以学习。)

(3) No man is so foolish but he may give another good advice sometimes.

(即使很笨的人, 有时也会给人出个好主意。)

(4) The streets were not so crowded but our car could go through.

(街上并不是拥挤得不能通车。)

(5) Nothing is so hard but it becomes easy by practice.

(事情即使再难, 通过实践总可以变得容易。)

(6) It was not such a cold night but we could go out.

(那天夜里并不是寒冷得不能出去。)

(7) He is not so sick but he can come to school.

(尽管他有病, 还是可以来上学的。)

(8) There is nothing so bad but it might have been worse.

(事情尽管再坏, 总还不是最坏。)

注: 这种句型必须是“否定形式 + so + but”, 实际上是双重否定表肯定。

20) not but that = though 虽然

(1) I didn't accept his invitation not but that I know he gave his invitation good-heartedly.

(我没有接受他的邀请, 虽然我知道他的邀请是善意的。)

(2) He is very strong—not but that he will catch cold sometimes.

(他身体很强壮, 虽然有时也患感冒。)

(3) I can't come not but that I'd like to.

(我不能来, 虽然我想来。)

(4) The teacher was extremely kind, not but that she

could be very stern on matters of principle.

(老师非常和蔼, 虽然在原则问题上也会非常严厉。)

(5) We declined their help, not but that we knew they offered it sincerely.

(我们谢绝了他们的帮助, 虽然我们知道他们真心愿意帮助。)

(6) You have made very good progress, not but that continued efforts are necessary.

(你有了很大进步, 虽然还需要继续努力。)

## 21) be it ever so 尽管, 不论

这种句型是由动词命令式构成的让步状语从句。但是从句不用任何连词, 而用倒装语序来表示。

(1) A mistake is a mistake, be it ever so little.

(错误尽管再小, 还是错误。)

(2) The tasks must be accomplished, be they ever so difficult.

(任务尽管艰巨, 必须予以完成。)

(3) Be the rain ever so heavy, we must go and see them.

(尽管雨大, 我们得去看望他们。)

(4) You could not get a place, come ever so early.

(尽管来得再早, 你也不会找到位置。)

(5) Be a man ever so learned.

Though a man may be ever so learned } he must not be proud.

(6) All magnets behave the same, be they large or small.



(7) Though it may be ever so hot } We'll go on with  
Be it ever so hot } the work.

(8) Be there seas of fire and forest of knives, I'll charge ahead.

(哪怕是刀山火海，我也要扑向前去。)

(9) All substances occupy space. And be it gaseous, liquid or solid, they are made of atoms.

(10) Be it ever so late, I must do another experiment.

注：有时为了加强语气，常用 let 放在这种让步状语从句前面，如：

(1) Let a child be ever so clever (= Be a child ever...), if he does not learn, he knows nothing.

(2) Let our work be ever so difficult, we will accomplish it.

(3) Let a man be ever so successful, he should not be proud.

let 句型也可用其他动词，如：

(4) Let people say what they would, I would be what I ought to be.

(尽管让他们说吧，我还是该怎样就怎样。)

(5) Let them come if they like, and the sooner they try it the better.

(让他们尽管来吧，而且来得越早越好。)

## 2. 并列结构表让步意义

### 1) and

A. and 连接两个并列的分句，

- (1) He tried hard and he failed in the exam.
- (2) He was unhappy about it, and he did what he was told.
- (3) I can not keep these trees alive and I have watered them well, too.
- (4) He got up very early, and (yet) he failed to catch the train.
- (5) She has wronged me, and (yet) I wish to do her justice.
- (6) It was scorching hot and they were still working in the fields.

(虽然天气热得火烤似的,但是他们仍然在地里干活。)

B. and 连接两个并列的而意义相反的或内容相关连的成分

- (1) In both work and study we ought to make the most of our time.  
(不论工作、学习,我们都应充分利用时间。)
- (2) All countries, big and small, should be equal.  
(所有国家,不论大小,一律平等。)
- (3) Any material, liquid and solid, is made up of molecules.
- (4) All the teachers, young and old, attended the lecture on laser by Professor Smith.
- (5) Winners and losers alike, we have had a good game and enjoyed it.  
(不论赢的一方,还是输的一方,都表现得很好,感觉很愉快。)
- (6) Cadres, new and old, should respect each other,

learn from each other and overcome their shortcomings by learning from each other's strong points.

## 2) but, however 虽然, 尽管

带有 though (although) 引导的让步状语从句的复合句, 可以改写成由 but, however 连接的并列句, 其意思不变。

(1) Though it was a difficult task, we accomplished it.

It was a difficult task, but we accomplished it.

It was a difficult task; however, we accomplished it.

It was a difficult task, we accomplished it, however.

(2) Although I'd like to buy a new car, I don't think I can afford one.

I'd like to buy a new car, but I don't...one.

I'd like to buy a new car; however, I don't...one

I'd like to buy a new car, I don't...one, however.

(3) Although they've tried to cut down on pollution, there's still a lot of smog in the city.

They've tried to cut down on pollution, but there's still...city.

They've...pollution, however, there's still...city.

They've...pollution, there's still...city, however.

(4) Although they've put a new traffic light on the corner, there are still a lot of accidents.

They've put...corner, but there are...accidents.

They've put...corner; however, there are...accidents.

They've put...corner, there are...accidents, however.

(5) Though they've been trying to develop a car that is powered by electricity, they haven't succeeded yet.

They've been trying...electricity, but they...yet.

They've been trying...electricity, they...yet, however.

(6) Doubt whom you will, but never yourself.

(7) The farmhouses are but so-so, but the barns are proud piles.

(虽然农民的房子不过如此, 但谷仓却都是满满的。)

(8) It is true that he is not clear, but he is very diligent.

(9) He is very old, to be sure, but he works very hard.

(他的确是很老了, 但他工作却非常努力。)

(10) The task is difficult enough, but we are sure that we can fulfil it.

(11) Matches are good and cheap, but most people nowadays use a lighter.

(12) I sat in the front row, but I did not get much of what he said.

(我虽坐在前排, 他的话我却听到不多。)

(13) A screw may be tiny, but one can not do without it.

(螺丝钉虽小, 但少了它也不行。)

(14) True, this task is very difficult, but we will fulfil it in time.

(15) True, you have attained great achievements, but you mustn't be conceited.

(16) Indeed he is young, but he is very careful with his work.

(17) This is certainly much cheaper than that, but it is not half so strong.

### 3) or 不管

(1) For or against, let the speaker be brief and to the

point.

(不管赞成或反对, 发言者应力求简短中肯。)

(2) Earthquake or no earthquake, we must carry on as usual.

(不管地震不地震, 我们必须照常进行下去。)

(3) Right or wrong, he had the courage of his opinions.

(不管对还是错, 他有坚持信念的勇气。)

(4) We have always held that all countries, big or small, should be equal.

(5) At the worst or at the best, we should not be divided.

(不管处在逆境或处在顺境, 我们都不应分裂。)

(6) War or no war, we must maintain strict vigilance.

(不管战争不战争, 我们必须严加警惕。)

(7) Our future is in our own hands, to make or mar.

(我们的未来, 不管搞好搞坏, 都掌握在我们自己手里。)

(8) When you have finished writing any piece of prose, long or short, it is most important to read it over.

(9) Success or failure is all the same to him.

4) either...or 不论, ...还; 不是...就是...

(1) There seems to be little improvement, either in matter or in form, over the previous draft.

(似乎不论在内容或形式方面, 比前一份草案都没有多大改进。)

(2) Either you or I must go.

(3) Chemical changes either absorb energy or give off energy.

(化学反应不是吸收能量就是放出能量。)

- (4) Everything around us is either solid, liquid or gas.
- (5) When the temperature of a gas is raised, then either the pressure must go up or the volume must go up.
- (6) Universal motors can be operated on either a-c or d-c power.

(通用电动机可由交流电或直流电来开动。)

- (7) The cooling of the engine may be either by liquid or by air.
- (8) He is either in the classroom or in the laboratory.

5) neither...nor 既不...又不...

- (1) Neither the colds of winter nor the heats of summer seemed to have any influence on his bodily health.

(无论严寒酷暑, 似乎对他的身体健康都没有丝毫影响。)

- (2) The lesson was neither long nor difficult.
- (3) Neither glass nor wood conducts electricity.
- (4) Neither the teacher nor the students knew what was wrong.
- (5) A gas has neither shape nor volume of its own.
- (6) There are neither plants nor animals on the moon.
- (7) In spring the weather is neither very hot nor very cold.
- (8) Energy can neither be created nor destroyed.

6) as well as 不论...还是...; 不但...而且...

- (1) Traffic overthere is always heavy, holidays as well as weekdays.

(那里的交通一直是拥挤的, 不论是假日还是周日。)

(2) All information, off the record as well as on, will be valued material for study.

(一切情报, 不论是官方的还是非官方的, 都将是宝贵的研究资料。)

(3) All social progress, all national strength, all national vigor, intellectual as well as physical, depend essentially upon a nation's political line.

(一切社会进步, 一切国家力量, 一切国民的元气, 不论是精神方面的还是物质方面的, 基本上都取决于一个国家的政治路线。)

(4) Small towns as well as big cities are being rapidly industrialized.

(5) Electrical energy as well as heat energy can be converted into mechanical energy.

(6) With the development of science and technology plastics will find wider and wider application in industry as well as in people's every day lives.

7) nevertheless, nonetheless 虽然如此; 虽那样, 还是...

(1) The book has many imperfections; nevertheless, it is the best ever written on the subject.

(2) Your arguments are strong; nevertheless they do not convince me.

(3) She was very tired; nevertheless she kept on working.

(4) English is difficult; nevertheless I like to study it all the more.

(5) The instrument is quite old-fashioned. Nonetheless, it is a useful tool.

(6) It was a very complicated test.

He, nevertheless, passed it with distinction.

(7) He speaks English very fast, nevertheless I understand him.

(8) He urged me to go, nevertheless I refused.

**8) still 仍然, 可是依然**

(1) I see your point of view; still I don't agree with you.

(2) The weather is very hot; still it is not unbearable.

(3) This was not ideal; still it was the best we could expect under the circumstances.

(4) I tried many methods; still I failed to get the expected result.

(5) Every thing went against him, still he persisted.

(6) I don't think it's going to rain. Still, we'd better take our coats.

(7) He is old, still he works hard for the people.

(8) We have made some achievements, still we should be modest and prudent.

**9) yet 然而, 但是, 可是**

(1) Air has weight, yet it is very light.

(2) He worked hard, yet he failed.

(3) One can not see air, yet it does exist.

(4) He made great efforts, yet he failed to gain his end.

(他虽然很努力, 但却不能达到他的目的。)

(5) He is still young, yet he is high up in his profession.



(他虽然年轻,但在他的行业中地位很高。)

(6) I have corrected him very often, yet he still makes the same mistakes.

(7) He has made much progress, yet he is not satisfied.

### 3. 介词短语表让步

#### 1) in spite of 尽管, 虽然, (多用于口语)

(1) He kept on working in spite of his illness.

(2) In spite of the difficulties, we must carry the work to completion.

(3) In spite of all his efforts, he failed.

(4) In spite of its good performance, the engine is too complicated to be generally adopted.

(5) In spite of the care which was taken, there were a number of errors in the calculations.

(6) The work at the weather observation stations goes on regularly without any interruption, in spite of any weather conditions.

(7) He did not do so in spite of my advice.

(8) In spite of all their differences, Joan and Ann remained friends.

(9) In spite of the fact that they are against it, we are going on doing it.

(10) In spite of all this, we must go ahead with our plan.

(尽管如此, 我们也必须推行计划。)

#### 2) despite 尽管, 虽然(多用于正式场合和书面语。)

(1) He came to the meeting despite his serious illness.

- (2) Despite his age, he still enjoys skiing.
- (3) Despite all damage, this year's wheat harvest showed a more than 10% increase over last year.
- (4) Despite all its achievements, the so-called electronic brain must be programmed by a human brain.
- (5) Despite all these hardships, we kept on wonderfully.  
(虽然有种种困难, 我们坚持得很好。)
- (6) Despite their objections, I will do it just the same.
- (7) He always remains modest despite his achievement in study.
- (8) Despite what he said, I still think that you are right.
- (9) Despite the fact that funds have been approved for the bridge, no contracts have been made for work on it.

3) notwithstanding { 尽管  
                          虽然

(其位置可位于其宾语之前, 也可位于其宾语之后)

- (1) He insisted on going to the football match, notwithstanding his doctor's advice to the contrary.
- (2) This notwithstanding, we are marching from victory to victory.
- (3) Notwithstanding all difficulties, we managed to push the matter through.
- (4) He failed notwithstanding his good intentions.  
(他虽有好心而仍失败了。)
- (5) They are full of revolutionary optimism notwithstanding the hard conditions.

- (6) we started notwithstanding the rain.
- (7) He bought it notwithstanding the high price.
- (8) This notwithstanding, they travelled on.

注: in spite of, despite 和 notwithstanding

这三个介词表示让步时, in spite of 语气最强, notwithstanding 最弱。

#### 4) after 虽然...(终归), 尽管

- (1) After all my care, it was broken.
- (2) After all the advice I gave, he adopted a contrary course.
- (3) The universe, after all our science and sciences, is still a big mystery.

(我们虽然有知识和各种科学, 而宇宙还是个巨大的谜。)

- (4) After all my advice, he still went his own way.
- (5) I managed to get to the meeting, after all (= although I did not think I should be able to)
- (6) He has failed after all his labours.
- (7) After all my trouble, he has learned nothing.  
(尽管我花了不少精力, 他还是没有学到什么东西。)
- (8) After all my hard work, I haven't passed the exam.
- (9) He is very optimistic after all the hardships he has suffered.

#### 5) in (the) face of 尽管(面对)

- (1) he succeeded in face of great danger.
- (2) In the face of all evidence, they made as if they had had no hand in it.
- (3) We must have the courage to speak out in the face

of all opposition.

- (4) We managed to carry the struggle through in the face of a vastly stronger enemy.

(尽管敌人比我们强大得多, 我们还是坚持了斗争, 获得了胜利。)

- (5) Working for the revolution the Taching oil workers never retreat even half a step in the face of death.

- (6) He denied the fact in the face of these evidence.

- (7) She went to the concert in the face of her mother's disapproval.

- (8) In face of transportation difficulties they nevertheless managed to get there on time.

- (9) He remained calm even in the face of such obvious danger.

#### 6) regardless of 不管, 不顾

- (1) The electrons, regardless of the kind of atoms, are all exactly alike.

- (2) We will do it regardless of what might happen.

- (3) Regardless of their source of energy, electric generators themselves are all much alike.

(不管其能源如何, 发电机本身都是非常相似的。)

- (4) all matter, regardless of state, has two things in common: it takes up space and it has weight.

- (5) High speed steels, regardless of type, have a great similarity in their physical properties.

- (6) They insisted on trying, utterly regardless of the possible grave consequences.

- (7) Radar sets aid a ship to sail safely into any

harbour, regardless of night and weather.

(8) We shall go there regardless of the weather tomorrow.

7) without regard to 不顧 (= without respect to)

(1) He acts without regard to the wishes of his family.

(2) It won't do just to have good intentions without regard to the effect.

(3) He always does what he thinks right without regard to the consequences.

(4) He acts entirely without regard to the feelings of others.

(5) He did it quite without regard to the results.

(6) It is not good to do things without regard to consequences.

(7) Do your duty without respect to circumstances.

(8) Discipline should be observed without respect of persons.

(9) Justice should be administered fairly and impartially, without respect of persons.

(10) It is selfish to care only for one's own interests without regard to the welfare and wishes of others.

8) without reference to 不伦, 不管

(1) All may join, without reference to age or sex.

(2) Parcel post is charged by weight and mileage without reference to contents.

(3) It would be unfair to grade the students on the results of the term examination only without reference to their daily marks.

(不管平时成绩, 只凭学期考分来为学生评定成绩, 那是不公平的。)

(4) Will any organization take on new personnel solely on consideration of ability without reference to political showing, or the other way round?

(有哪个单位录用新人会只凭能力而不管政治表现, 或只凭政治表现而不管能力的吗?)

(5) This test is to be taken by all pupils without reference to age or grade.

9) **irrespective of** 不论, 不顾

(1) Everyone was bound by law irrespective of social status.

(每一个人, 不论社会地位高低, 都应受法律约束。)

(2) He sent information every week, irrespective of whether it's useful or not.

(3) The acceleration of gravity is constant for all freely falling bodies irrespective of their mass.

(不管质量大小, 一切作自由落体运动的物体重力加速度是不变的。)

(4) This conclusion is valid irrespective of the type of fluid considered, whether gaseous or liquid.

(不管所考虑的是哪种流体, 是气体还是液体, 这个结论都是成立的。)

(5) all countries, irrespective of their social systems, should establish normal state relations on the Five Principles of Peaceful Coexistence.

(6) Irrespective of what you say, I maintain that the person who struck first should apologize.

(7) The motor is designed to run at constant speed, irrespective of the load.

(这台电动机的设计能做到不管负载大小,都以恒速运转。)

**10) independent of, independently of 不管, 不依靠**

(1) Independent of how others felt, she felt sure she was right.

(2) Matter objectively exists independent of human consciousness.

(3) Aircraft can travel everywhere independent of surface conditions.

(4) The seasons change, independent of anyone's wishes.

(5) Equal depths produce equal pressures independently of the shape of the vessel.

**11) in the teeth of 不管, 不顾**

(1) She is standing there in the teeth of the wind.

(2) He didn't reveal the names of his comrades in the teeth of the enemy's threat.

(3) We took our own way in the teeth of all opposition.

(4) We have driven ten miles in the teeth of this dreadful snowstorm.

(5) He went his own way in the teeth of strong criticism.

(6) He went to the football match in the teeth of the doctor's advice.

(7) He maintained his stand in the teeth of public opinion.

12) for all 尽管, 虽然

- (1) For all that, he finished the work in time.
- (2) For all (that) he had worked hard, he failed.
- (3) He did not do so well in the race, for all his training.
- (4) For all his knowledge and experience, he is not conceited.
- (5) For all you say, I can't count on you for help.
- (6) For all that it was a cold night, the sweat was pouring down my face.
- (7) For all you say, we can't allow you to do that.
- (8) He is blind, but for all that, he is the happiest man I know.
- (9) He went away for all my advice.
- (10) The question troubled him for all his ability.
- (11) For all that, I still feel that he is the most capable man in our organization.

注: for all 后跟名词; for all that 后跟从句或单独使用均可, 后跟从句时, 有时that省去。

13) in defiance of 不管, 不顾, 无视

- (1) He dived to the rescue in defiance of the icy water.
- (2) In defiance of the law you drove your car much too fast.
- (3) He was punished for acting in defiance of law.
- (4) He went his way in defiance of their opinions.
- (5) He went swimming in the sea in defiance of the warning sign telling him not to.
- (6) He goes out without a hat all winter in defiance



of the cold weather.

(7) Bob stayed up late in defiance of the coach's orders.

14) with all 尽管, 虽然 (= for all = in spite of)

(1) With all those words to choose from, we are yet badly off.

(尽管有这么多个词可供选用, 我们还是嫌不够。)

With all

(2) For all } his faults, he is a great man.

In spite of all

With all

(3) For all } this, he was far from content.

In spite of all

(即使如此, 他仍然很不满足。)

(4) With all my respect for your opinions, I must differ with you on this point.

(5) We had reason to be proud of it for all its faults.

(6) With all her shortcomings, she is not a bad comrade.

(7) There may be mistakes occasionally, but { with all }  
for all }

that, it is the best book on the subject.

(8) With all his efforts, he couldn't attain his end.

(虽然他尽了最大努力, 他还是达不到目的。)

(9) With all his achievements, he remains modest and prudent.

15) against 不管, 不顾 (= in spite of)

(1) They succeeded against many hardships.

(2) We wiped out the enemy against heavy odds.

(我们是在极其不利的条件下歼灭敌人的。)

(3) We must make head against difficulties.

(4) They advanced against the enemy.

**16) in any case 无论如何, 不管怎样**

(1) In any case you should hear out what he has to say.

(不管怎样, 你应当让他把话说完。)

(2) But I will try to come in any case.

(但是无论如何, 我要来。)

(3) In any case, you must get here by five o'clock tomorrow afternoon.

(4) It may rain tomorrow, but we are going home in any case.

(5) I will do the experiment in any case.

(6) In any case I shall return in a day or two.

(7) In any case, catch the train tomorrow.

**17) in any event 无论如何 (= at all events)**

(1) In any event the experiment is worth trying.

(无论如何, 这试验值得进行。)

(2) In any event, I can't give you my consent.

(无论如何, 我不能同意你。)

(3) We hope to go to Hangzhou for sightseeing in any event.

(无论如何, 我们希望到杭州去游览。)

(4) This problem must be solved in any event.

(5) At all events he should be back by tomorrow night.

(6) It is no easy task, but you'd better try it at all events.

(7) At all events, I will visit you during the summer vacation.

(8) In any event, I'll telephone you before I make a final decision.

(9) At all events I will try.

**18) in any way 无论如何**

(1) The composition of water is not changed in any way.

(水的组成无论如何总是不变的。)

(2) Atoms can not be destroyed or changed in any way by chemical reaction.

(化学反应无论如何也不能破坏或改变原子。)

(3) In any way you must get there on time.

**19) by any means 无论如何, 无论用何种方法**

(1) By any means the new lathe must be sent to our workshop at once, we can't wait any longer.

(2) Wealth and happiness do not by all means always go together.

(3) The plan must by all means realized.

(这项计划无论如何要使之实现。)

**20) at any rate 无论如何, 不管怎样**

(1) At any rate we should tell him frankly what we think of his proposal.

(2) At any rate you had better consult the doctor.

(3) At any rate our goal can be attained.

(4) It isn't much of a car, but at any rate it is not expensive.

(这部汽车并没有什么了不起, 但无论如何价钱不贵。)

(5) He will get some valuable experience, at any rate.

(6) At any rate, the medical supplies will reach you within a week.

(无论如何, 在一星期内药品供应就会到你手里。)

(7) I suppose the Managing Director ought to make the final decision. At any rate, we'd better not do it without telling him.

(8) At any rate I will do nothing without further directions.

(无论怎么说, 如再无指示, 我什么都不做。)

21) at any cost = at all costs 无论如何, 不惜任何代价

(1) I will accomplish my purpose at any cost.

(2) Poor as he was, he was above selling his honour at any cost.

(尽管他穷, 他也不致于不顾一切来出卖自己的人格。)

(3) The father was determined that his son should be educated at any cost.

(4) The bridge must be repaired within three days at any cost.

(5) I will do it at any cost.

(6) I will buy it at any price.

(无论多贵我都要买它。)

(7) We must arrive there at all costs before midnight.

(8) We must accomplish our purpose at all costs.

#### 4. 不定式(短语)

(1) To go to the world's end, you could not find

another like it.

(即使走遍天涯，你也找不到另一个象这样的东西。)

(2) I will never do that, to save my life.

(即使为我的生命，我也决不这样做。)

(3) To live a thousand years, one may not learn enough.

(虽活上千年，然学无止境。)

## 5. 分词(短语)

(1) Admitting your principle to be right, how could you put it into practice?

(即使说你的理论是对的，又怎样把它付之实施呢?)

(2) Counting everything in, you could not possibly make up the requisite sum.

(即使把一切都算入，也凑不齐那必要之数。)

(3) Truth, crushed to earth, will rise again.

(真理，尽管被压倒在地，也将重新站起。)

(4) Amplified a ten-thousand fold, these germs would scarcely be visible.

(尽管放大一万倍，这些细菌也不大会被看见。)

(5) Weighing more than 2000 tons, the automatic forging press is operated by one worker.

(尽管自动锻压机有2000多吨重，但只要一个工人就能进行操作。)

(6) Granting the achievement to be great, we have no reason to be conceited.

(7) Not having been discovered, many laws of nature

actually exist in nature.

- (8) Weighing almost one hundred jin, the stone was moved by him alone.

注：分词短语作让步状语时，常在分词的前边加上表示让步意义的连词 though, although, even if, whether 等，如：

- (9) Although working his fingers to the bone, John still couldn't make enough money to pay off his debts.

(约翰虽然拚命干活，但挣的钱还是不够还债的。)

- (10) Though warned of danger, he still went skating on the thin ice.

- (11) Even though defeated for a second time, he did not give in.

- (12) The chemical composition of water is  $H_2O$  whether being solid, liquid or water vapour.

## 6. 其他

1) such as it is 质量不过如此的，(尽管)普通的

- (1) This room, such as it is, is the best they can offer you.

(虽说这个房间不怎么样，但却是他们能给你的最好的一间了。)

- (2) He won't refuse to give you his help, such as it is.  
(他不会拒绝帮助你的，尽管对你帮助不大。)

- (3) Our food, such as it is, is plentiful.

(我们吃的，虽不很好，却很丰富。)

(4) you may use my bicycle, such as it is.

(你可用我的自行车, 虽然它不怎么好。)

(5) Our contributions, such as they are, are from sincere hearts.

(我们的捐助, 虽然不多, 可是出自真心。)

(6) But such as the rooms are, there are plenty of them.

(但是房间虽不好, 间数却很多。)

(7) My services, such as they are, are entirely at your disposal.

(你完全可随意支配, 虽然我帮不了大忙。)

(8) However, he did his work, such as it was, thoroughly and well.

(但是, 虽然他的工作是平凡的, 他却做得很彻底, 很出色。)

## 2) no amount of 尽管(怎样), 无论怎样

(1) No amount of "genius" can do without labour.

(无论怎样的“天才”, 也不能不努力。)

(2) No amount of washing will remove these stains.

(无论怎样洗, 也不会洗掉这些污迹。)

(3) No amount of interference can stop us from pushing on with our project of the four modernizations.

(尽管怎样的干扰都阻止不了我们推行四个现代化的计划。)

(4) Such was his love of work that no amount of application seems to have been too great for him.

(他这样地热爱工作, 就好象, 尽管怎样努力, 对他也不过分。)

(5) No number of grammatical rules can cover all

language phenomena.

注: no amount of 同不可数名词连用; no number of 同可数名词连用。

### 3) 否定词 + too 无论…也不…

(1) Its importance can not be emphasized too much.

(其重要性无论怎样强调也不过分。)

(2) One can not be too careful.

(无论怎样小心也不过分。)

(3) Not too much can be said about the value of early rising.

(早起的好处说不完。)

(4) We cannot be too strict with the students.

(我们对学生越严越好。)

(5) We can not praise him too much.

(我们无论怎样赞扬他, 总不会嫌过分的。)

(6) You cannot praise the play too highly.

(这戏你无论怎样称赞也不过分。)

(7) It is impossible to criticize too severely his conduct.

(对他的这种行为无论怎样批评都不过分。)

(8) It is impossible to say too much about fresh air.

(新鲜空气的好处应大讲特讲。)

(9) It is scarcely possible for too much attention to be devoted to this subject.

(对这个课题无论下多大的功夫去研究也是值得的。)

(10) It is impossible to overestimate the value of the invention.

(这项发明的价值无论怎样估价也不会太高。)

(11) The importance of making an on-the-spot investigation



can not be over (= too) emphasized.

(进行现场调查的重要性无论怎样强调也不会过分的。)

(12) We can scarcely pay too high a price for national security,

(为了国家的安全我们不管付出什么代价也不嫌太高。)

#### 4) no

(1) No force on earth can hold back the wheel of history.

(无论什么力量都阻止不了历史车轮的前进。)

(2) At no time and in no circumstances should a communist place his personal interests first.

(共产党员无论何时何地都不应以个人利益放在第一位。)

(3) In no case are you to leave your post.

(无论如何你不能离开你的岗位。)

(4) Under no circumstances must the switch be left on.

(无论如何，不能让开关开着。)

(5) In no circumstances can more work be done by a machine than is put into it.

(无论在何种情况下，机器所做的功决不会大于输入机器的功。)

(6) They would in no circumstances consent to such a plan.

(无论如何，他们决不会同意这样的计划。)

(7) At no time will China be a superpower.

(8) On no account should it be exposed to the sun.

(无论如何不能使它受到日晒。)

(9) No war is so great as the European War.

(10) No other book has had a greater influence on my life.

**5) any 无论什么的**

(1) By any standard our industrial development during the past quarter century has been spectacular.

(不论按什么标准, 过去四分之一世纪我们在工业方面的发展是惊人的。)

(2) You can go there at any time.

(3) You can get it in any department store.

(4) He wanted a job, any sort of a job.

(5) Anytime you want me, just send for me.

(6) Any one of the plans will do.

(7) Get me some cigarettes, please, any kind will do.

(8) Anything is better than nothing.

(9) I want something to eat, anything will do.

(10) Anyone who visits the world's market places will find that plastics are being made and used almost everywhere.

(11) Safety precautions should be observed at all times.

(安全条例不论在什么时候都应遵守。)

**6) anyway, anyhow 无论如何, 不管怎样**

(1) I'm not sure what time I'll arrive, maybe half past seven or a quarter to eight. Anyway, I'll certainly be there before eight o'clock.

(2) What a terrible experience! Anyhow, you're safe, that's the main thing.

(3) The answer is wrong anyhow you look at it.

(4) It may rain, but anyhow I shall go out.

(5) We managed to get what we wanted, anyhow.

(6) I may fail, but I intend to try hard anyhow.

7) **even so** 即使如此, 尽管如此, 虽然如此 **even then (now)**

尽管这样, 即使在那样情况下

(1) This is a very old machine, but even so, it can be put to good use when repaired.

(这部机器很老了, 虽然如此, 只要修理一下, 它还可以派大用场。)

(2) He's a very nice person, Even so, I don't really trust him.

(3) The fire was out, but even so, the smell of smoke was strong.

(4) He appears to be honest but, even so, I don't think we should trust him with all our money.

(5) It has many omissions; even so it is quite a useful reference book.

(6) Even then he would not admit his mistake.

(7) I have explained everything, but even now (then) she doesn't (didn't) understand.

(8) She checked right through for mistakes, but even then she was not satisfied, so she checked again.

8) **even** 即使(就是)…也…

(1) Even now it is not too late.  
(就是现在也不太迟。)

(2) Even a child can understand it.  
(即使小孩也能懂得。)

(3) Even today we know less about the ocean depths than about the surface of the moon.

(4) You can not see an atom even with the strongest

microscope.

(5) You've got to work every day, even on Sundays.

(6) Even those who have a better grasp of Marxism and are comparatively firm in their proletarian stand have to go on studying.

(7) Even in area where the war had been the toughest, cultural and educational activities continued to make headway.

(即使在战斗曾经最激烈的地区, 文教活动依然继续开展。)

9) all the same 尽管如此...还是...; 仍然

(1) It is going to be windy tomorrow according to the weather broadcast, but I will go there all the same.

(2) when the wavelength of a sound is too short, we can not hear it, but it is there all the same.

(声波的波长很短时, 我们听不到, 尽管如此, 声波总是存在的。)

(3) You don't answer me, but I understand you all the same.

(4) The child gives us a lot of trouble, but I like him all the same.

(5) We met with some difficulties at the beginning, but we fulfilled our task all the same.

(6) You say the bridge is safe; I shall take care all the same.

10) none the less, none the worse (虽然那样)还是; 仍旧; 一点也不...

(1) You can not see the waves of sound, but they are

there none the less.

(你看不见声波, 虽然如此, 声波依然存在。)

(2) He has faults, none the less, he is the best student of the class.

(3) He is studying none the worse for so many difficulties in his study.

(他在学习中并不知难而退。)

(4) The machine is working none the worse for its long service.

(这台机器并不因使用已久而运转不灵。)

(5) He fell into the river, but is none the worse.

(6) I like him none the worse for being outspoken.

(我并不因为他讲话直爽而讨厌他。)

(7) He is none the worse for his failure.

(他并不因失败而一蹶不振。)

(8) We treat them none the less kindly because they have committed mistakes.

(虽然他们犯了错误, 我们还是友好地对待他们。)

(9) It is none the less true because it sounds strange.

(这事虽然听起来奇怪, 但还是真实的。)

(10) He is none the less vigorous for his years.

(他虽年老而依然健壮。)

### 11) all 即使, 尽管, 不管, 无论

(1) All the weapons of war will not arm fear.

(如果心存胆怯, 尽管有多少件武器, 也壮不起胆来。)

(2) Not all their nuclear weapons would avail then.

(那时, 尽管有多少核武器, 也将无济于事了。)

(3) All the knowledge in the world about language will not help your writing unless you write, unless you find and make opportunities for writing.

(如果你不练习写作,不找机会和不创造机会写作,那么,尽管你装满语言方面的知识,也都无补于你的写作。)

(4) All the wishful thinking in the world won't change this.

(不管怎样的幻想都改变不了这一点。)

(5) But all the scheming of the reactionaries to prevent us from achieving victory is doomed to failure.

(但是,不管反动派怎样阴谋阻止我们获得胜利,都是注定要失败的。)

(6) The term has resisted all attempts at exact definition.

(无论如何也无法给这个术语下确切定义。)

(7) A sentry paces up and down there, at all hours and in all weathers.

(不论什么时候和什么气候,总有个哨兵在那儿踱来踱去。)

(8) Examples, however, will be worth all attempts at generalization.

(但是无论怎么样试图进行概括,都比不上举例加以说明。)

(9) All his money can not make him happy.

(他纵有万贯家财也不快乐。)

## 12) right or wrong 不管对不对, 不管怎样

He is sure to stand by you, right or wrong.

(不管怎样,他肯定站在你一边。)

## “数量”的表示法

### 1. “无定数目”表示法

#### A. “多、少”表示法

##### (A) 修饰可数名词:

a. 几乎没有: few

b. 几个: a few

c. 不多: not many, a small number

d. 若干: some, several, a number of, a certain number of, a moderate number of

e. 相当多: a few more, some few, a good few, quite a few (not a few)

f. 许多: many, many many, many a, ever so many, very many, a good (great) many, a lot of, lots of, plenty of, a large (great) number of, quite a number of, large numbers of, a considerable number of, tons of, loads of, heaps of, a multitude of, multitudes of, legion, a crowd of, not a few, a group of, a cloud of

g. 大量: a great volume of

h. 其他: a pile of (piles of) 大堆  
a mountain of 堆积如山  
myriads of 无数  
a host of 许许多多, 一大堆  
a cloud of 许多, 一大群

1) few, a few, not many, a small number

- (1) There are few people here who can drive.  
(这儿几乎没有人能驾驶汽车。)
- (2) There are few people who have covered the whole range of disciplines.  
(对所有专业都进行过研究的人几乎没有。)
- (3) His theory is very difficult; few people understand it.
- (4) He is a man of few words.
- (5) He has a large number of English books, but very few (= not many) French books.
- (6) A few radioactive elements break up at a rapid rate.  
(有些放射性元素以极快的速度裂变。)
- (7) There are only a few vacuum tubes in the laboratory.  
(实验室里只有很少几支真空管。)
- (8) A few bad students will spoil the reputation of any school.  
(任何学校的名誉都会被几个不良学生弄坏了。)
- (9) Our oil output has greatly increased in the past few years.
- (10) There are few pure substances in nature.



(11) He packed the few things he would take with him.

(12) The earth contains 

{	few	}	precious me-						
	not many			}	tals.				
	a few					}	tals.		
	a small number							}	tals.
	of								

2) quite a few, a good few, a few more, some few 相当多, 许多

(1) We have achieved quite a few successes in our work.

(我们在工作中获得不少的成果。)

(2) There are not a few (= quite a few) vacuum tubes in the laboratory.

(实验室里有许多真空管。)

(3) Quite a few students were absent yesterday.

(4) Quite a few of the young workers have been elected leaders in the workshop.

(5) A good few of my students go in for swimming in summer.

(许多学生在夏天参加游泳。)

(6) I saw a good few of my students playing table-tennis the other evening.

(那天晚上, 我看见许多学生在打乒乓球。)

(7) You'll have to wait a good few weeks.

(8) Quite a few students went to the game.

3) some, several

(1) Some synthetic rubbers have special qualities that

make them suitable for special uses.

(2) Will you please try on some of the shoes?

(3) Heat is only one of several kinds of energy.

	}	some	moving parts.
		several	
		a number of	
(4) This machine has		a certain number of	
		a moderate number of.	

(这台机器有若干运动部件。)

4) a number of, a certain number of, a moderate number of  
若干, 一些

(1) I can think a number of ways to fulfil the plan.

(2) A certain number of non-ferrous metals, including aluminium and zinc, are also important.

(3) There are a number of forces constantly changing the surface of the earth.

(4) Electro-plating is used widely in industry for a number of reasons.

(5) There are a number of things that one has to do in order to become strong.

(6) A number of different processes have been developed for extracting minerals.

(已研究出若干种不同的采矿方法。)

(7) Steel is widely used in different branches of engineering because it has a number of good properties.

(8) A number of students were absent yesterday.

- (9) A number of people got hurt in the accident.
- (10) A number of people want the necessaries of life.  
(有若干人还缺乏生活之所需。)
- (11) A moderate number of commune members have bought buses and trucks.
- (12) The rocket contains a number of scientific instruments including a television camera.
- 5) a large number of, large numbers of, a great number of, a considerable number of, quite a number of, any number of 许多
- (1) Do you want some screw-pencils? I have quite a number of them.  
(你要活动铅笔吗? 我有许多。)
- (2) Quite a number of students came to see the exhibition.
- (3) A large number of people came here to admire cherry-blossoms.  
(有许多人到这里来观赏樱花。)
- (4) Great numbers of students went to America to study.
- (5) A good number of students can speak English.
- (6) Large numbers of worker-peasant inventors come to the front in the course of technical revolution.  
(在技术革命中涌现出许多工农发明家。)
- (7) The earth contains a large number of metals which are useful to man.
- (8) The computer contain a great number of electronic

switches.

(9) At the meeting quite a number of papers of high scientific value were submitted.

(10) Conductors allow a large number of electrons to move in them freely.

(11) A considerable number of commune members have bought tractors, seeders, thrashers, pumps and other farm machines.

(12) Also present in solids are large numbers of free electrons.

(13) There were a large number of people there.

(14) Quite a number of students pass this place every day.

(15) We can easily get any number of old Chinese stamps here in China.

(随便要多少中国的旧邮票,在中国我们总能容易得到。)

(16) I can lend you any number of books.

注: a number of “许多”在句中作主语时,谓语动词用复数。the number of “...的数目”在句中作主语时,谓语动词用单数。

如: (1) So the number of stars that we knew exist is now estimated at about 300 million million million.

(因此,我们所知道的现有的星星的数目据估计大约有三万亿颗。)

(2) The number of candidates this year surpassed any of the previous year.

(今年的考生数字超过了历年中的任何一年。)

(3) The number of imported books has greatly increased since last year.

(进口的书籍从去年大量增加了。)

(4) The number of college graduates of a country shows her cultural level.

(一个国家大学毕业生多少, 说明这个国家的文化水平。)

(5) The number of books a man has read usually accounts for the man's knowledge and ability.

(一个人读书的多少常能说明他的知识与能力。)

(6) A number of university graduates have become middle school teachers this year.

(7) A great number of young scientists are taking up important posts.

(大量的青年科技人员走上了重要岗位。)

(8) There were a large number of journalists welcoming our honourable guests.

(有许多记者在欢迎我们的贵宾。)

6) many, many a, a great (good) many, ever so many:

(1) There are many illustrations in the book.

(2) Many of the students have been to the exhibition.

(3) I have many reference books on the subject. You may take any you like.

(4) We are many, they are few.

(5) Many a time has he given me good advice.

(6) Many a question has been raised during the discussion.

(7) Many a man has sacrificed his life for the cause of the revolution.

(8) Many a man fails because of carelessness.

(9) It is truly said that many a pickele (little) makes a mickle.

(“积少成多”这句话说得确有道理。)

(10) A great many substances are neither good insulators nor good conductors.

(11) The factory has produced a great many radio elements since it was set up.

(12) Electricity was discovered a good many years ago.

(13) Machine tools are made in a great many types and sizes.

(14) Engineering and science include a good many diverse subject areas.

(工程技术 and 科学包括许多不同的管辖领域。)

(15) A great many are for the proposal.

(很多人赞成这个提议。)

(16) Plants give man a great many (of) the raw materials he needs for his manufactures.

(植物供给人类制造工业所需要的大量原料。)

(17) A good many people still think war is the only way out of international complications.

(18) Oxygen is in ever and ever so many compounds.

(氧存在于极为众多的化合物中。)

(19) Ever so many chemical changes go on in plants and animals.

(极其多的化学变化发生在植物和动物身上。)

- (20) I cannot estimate the number of persons present, there were ever so many of them there.
- (21) A great many English novels have been translated into Chinese.
- (22) I've been there a good many times.
- (23) I have never seen so very many of various tree peonies.  
(我不曾见过这许许多多的牡丹花。)
- (24) Very many of the candidates failed in the examination.  
(许多报考者都在考试中失败了。)
- (25) There will be a good many more of graduates who volunteer to support the construction of the border areas next summer.  
(明年夏天还要有多得多的毕业生自愿去支援边疆建设。)
- (26) There are many more of English books upstairs.  
(楼上还有更多的英文书。)
- (27) There are so many more of secondhand books downstairs.  
(楼下还有这般多的旧书。)
- (28) Has he so very many more of foreign books in his study?  
(他书房还有这许多的外文书吗?)
- (29) He wants very many more of foreign books.  
(他还再要非常之多的外文书。)
- (30) To solve this problem, the scientists made many investigations.

(81) In a great many cities, hundreds of people ride bicycles to work every day.

7) a multitude of, multitudes of 许多, 极多  
a crowd of 一群 legion 众多

(1) There are a multitude of islands in the Pacific.  
(太平洋中有许多岛。)

(2) He has a multitude of friends here.

(3) A multitude of European plants have been naturalized in America.

(许多欧洲的植物已经移植美洲。)

(4) A great multitude of students gathered in the lecture hall.

(5) A big crowd gathered on the street.

(6) There was a crowd of 20,000 people at the football match.

(7) Cures for cancer are legion, but none is specific.

(治疗癌症的药非常多, 但没有一种是特效药。)

many (many a)

a great (good)

many

ever so many

very many

a lot of (lots

of)

plenty of

a large (great)

number of

a considerable



(8) This machine ~~has~~ a number of moving parts.

	a multitude of	
	(multitudes of)	
	a large	} quantity of
	a huge	
	a great	
	a vast	
	large quantities of	
	tons of	
	loads of	
	heaps of	

(这台机器有许多部件。)

	a large	} number of
	a great	
	a considerable	

(9) The earth contains

a great many	} useful substances
a lot of (lots of)	
plenty of	

8) 其他:

(1) There are a pile of books on the desk.

(桌子上有一大堆书。)

(2) A host of problems have to be dealt with before we

actually plunge into the project. (e)

(在动工之前, 我们还有一大堆问题需要解决。)

(3) At first the workers were faced with a host of difficulties in the construction.

(4) Through a powerful telescope we can see a cloud of stars.

(B) 修饰不可数名词

a. 几乎没有: little

b. 少量, 不多: a little, not much, a small amount of, a negligible amount of, a bit of (一点)

c. 一些: a certain (moderate) amount of,

d. 大量, 许多: much, a lot of, lots of, plenty of, a great (good) deal of, a great (large) amount of, large (great, vast) amounts of, a large (great, huge, vast) quantity of, large quantities of, tons of, loads of, heaps of, a considerable (substantial, an appreciable) amount of, not a little, a store of.

e. 更多: more, a great (good) deal more of, much more of, plenty more or

f. 充足, 丰富: an abundance of

1) little, a little, a bit of, etc.

(1) There is little oil left in the tank.

(油箱里几乎没有油了。)

(2) He has little (not much) time for reading.

(3) He seems to know a little of everything under the sun.

(他似乎对世界上的一切事物都知道一些。)

(4) There is a little petrol left in the tank.

(油箱里还有一些汽油。)

(5) There is not a little petrol left in the tank.

(油箱里还有不少(很多)汽油。)

(6) There is only a little (or little) petrol left in the tank.

(很少)

(7) There is a little food left, so we shall not go hungry.

(8) I can speak a little French, so I understood some of the conversation.

(9) With a little patience, you will succeed.

(10) Let's not waste the little time we have left.

(11) Copper offers little resistance to the flow of current.

(12) He has seen little of life.

(他阅历不深。)

(13) The earth contains 

}	little	}
}	not much	}
}	a little	}
}	a small amount	}
}	of	}
}	a negligible amount of	}

 uranium.

(地球蕴藏有少量(不多)的铀。)

(14) A little impurity in some chemicals will cause failures in experiments.

(15) A bit of salt will make this dish taste better.

(16) Give me a bit of cotton (paper, water).

2) some, much, more

(1) If you want some help, let me know.

(2) Some water has spilt on the ground.

(3) We all spent much time on the experiment report.

(4) Much money has been wasted that way.

(5) Would you like some more beer?

(6) Will you kindly give me some paper?

(7) May I have some ink, please?

(8) He wants more of this excellent beef.

(这上好的牛肉他还想多要一些。)

(9) He has seen much of the world.

(他阅历很广。)

(10) Please give me some more coffee.

(11) Much snow has fallen.

(12) He wants very much more of the tea.

(13) How much oil does the tractor consume a day?

(14) Much has been said about the topic.

(15) There was more smoke than fire.

(16) The earth contains 

{	some	}	copper.
	a certain am-		
	ount of		
	a moderate am-		
	ount of		

(地球蕴藏有一些(一定数量的)铜。)

3) a great (good) deal

(1) A great deal has been accomplished, but more re-

mains to be done.

- (2) That will cost a great (good) deal.
  - (3) One of the theories about the atom is that the nucleus of an atom contains a great deal of energy.
  - (4) Our atmosphere contains a great deal of oxygen.
  - (5) Nuclear fission produces a great deal of heat.
  - (6) A great deal of friction is also needed to stop an automobile quickly.
  - (7) A great deal of rubber and ebonite is used in electrical machinery, because these materials will not conduct electricity.
  - (8) The discovery of atom took a great deal of hard work.
  - (9) Only through a great deal of practice shall we be able to operate this machine tool.
  - (10) He took a good deal of trouble over his work.
  - (11) A gas is made up of a great deal of emptiness and very few molecules.
  - (12) A great deal of information is to be found in the "mosquito" papers.  
(在小报上可以找到许多的消息。)
  - (13) When they have obtained a great deal of information, they will launch a manned spaceship towards Mars.
- 4) a large sum of, large sums of
- (1) He has got large sums of money as a prize.  
(他获得巨额的奖金。)
  - (2) He paid a large sum for the house.

(他出了一笔巨款买了这所房子。)

(3) The taxes came to a large sum.

(税金达巨额。)

(4) The town laid out a large sum of money in laying out the park.

(这城市为了公园的建设用了一笔巨款。)

5) a large amount of, large (great) amounts of

(1) The government has spent a large amount of money on irrigation.

(2) The sun gives off a large amount of light and heat.

(3) With many waves per second, a large amount of information can be carried.

(4) A generator can produce a very large amount of electricity.

(5) In a nuclear reaction a small amount of matter produces a large amount of energy.

(6) The work occupies a considerable amount of time.

(7) They know that fusion would provide vastly greater amounts of energy.

(8) These partial conversions will release tremendous amounts of energy.

(9) The friction between the air and the surface of the plane causes large amounts of heat.

(10) Large amounts of advanced machinery were in this way turned out successfully.

(11) The motor generates a considerable amount of power.  
 an appreciable amount of power.  
 a substantial amount of power.

(这台电动机产生很大的功率。)

a great (good) deal of  
 a lot of (lots of)  
 plenty of  
 a large (great) amount of  
 large (great, vast) amounts of  
 (12) The earth contains iron ore.  
 a large  
 a huge  
 a great  
 a vast  
 quantity of  
 large quantities of  
 tons of  
 loads of  
 heaps of

(13) The government has spent a large amount of money

on education.

		much	} of } time.
		plenty	
(14) There is	{	a lot	
	{	a great deal	
	{	a good deal	

(时间很充裕。)

		much.
(15) We have learned	{	a lot.
	{	a great deal.
	{	a good deal.

(我们学到很多东西。)

		negligible	} amount of power.
		small	
(16) The engine produces a	{	certain	
	{	moderate	
	{	considerable	
	{	large (great)	

	{	certain	} quantity amount }
(17) A	{	moderate	
	{	considerable	
	{	large	

of the world's coal lies in this country.

注: a large amount of “大量的” 与 the amount of “... 的量” 意义不同。如:

(1) Making the electronic devices small also reduces the amount of electricity needed to run them.

(电子装置的体积变小了, 也会减少开动这些电子



装置所需要的电量。)

(2) He put forward a theory about the amount of energy that can result from fission or fusion.

(他提出了有关裂变或聚变能够产生能量的理论。)

6) an abundance of

(1) They keep an abundance of food for winter.

(他们有富足的粮食来过冬。)

(2) The tree yields an abundance of fruit.

7) Too much

An excess of

An excessive am-

ount of

air will reduce the temperature of combustion.

(空气太多会降低燃烧温度。)

8) a great volume of, volumes of 大量, 多量

Volumes of smoke poured from the chimneys of the factory.

9) a store of 许多

(1) Sometimes a huge store of oil or gas is reached, and oil or gas flows out of the well for many years.

(2) There is a huge store of oil and natural gas deep in the earth.

(C) 既可修饰可数名词又可修饰不可数名词:

a. 许多, 大量: a large

a huge

a great

a vast

quantity of, large quantities of

a lot of, lots of, heaps of,  
loads of, plenty of, tons of. (8)

6. 其他: a mountain of 堆积如山  
some, more

1) a large quantity of, large quantities of

(1) Reservoirs are built to hold a large quantity of water.

(2) The driving heat of a nuclear submarine is generated by a small quantity of fissile materials.  
(核潜艇的驱动用热力是由少量的可裂变材料产生的。)

(3) When burning, coal sends out large quantities of heat stored up in itself.

(4) Every year large quantities of steel and steel products are turned out in our country.

(5) Large quantities of advanced, heavy-duty machinery were thus turned out successfully.

2) a lot of, lots of

(1) A lot of great changes have taken place in China since liberation.

(2) Atoms with a lot of protons and neutrons in their nuclei are very heavy, while atoms with just a few are very light.

(3) Electronic computers can help us to do a lot of useful work and save us a lot of time and labour.

(4) There are lots of technical books in the library.

(5) I have decided to do so after a lot of thinking.

(6) He spends a lot of money on books.

(7) A lot of time was wasted this way.

- (8) Morning exercises can do us a lot of good and should not be neglected.
- (9) Lots and lots of people have visited the agricultural exhibition.
- (10) We haven't seen a lot of you lately; where have you been?
- (11) We have to do a lot of spade-work before we can get anywhere.

(我们须先做许多麻烦琐碎的工作,才可以有进展。)

- (12) There are lots of people who are willing to help us if they only know how.
- (13) Water falling from great heights has a lot of kinetic energy.
- (14) If there were no such things as gravity, you couldn't do lots of things that you do now.
- (15) After liberation, a lot of work has been done to improve the working conditions in factories and mines.
- (16) That will save us a lot of trouble (time, labour).
- (17) There is a lot for us to do in order that our industry can develop at a still higher speed.
- (18) Since liberation our power industry has developed a lot.
- (19) The room is a lot prettier than it used to be.
- (20) He learned a lot while working in the countryside.

注: 在日语中much, many的用法相当有限,通常只用于否定句或疑问句。在肯定句中尤其在宾语中,通常

被 a lot of, plenty of, a great deal of, a large number of 等所代替。如:

(1) He earns a lot of money in his new job.

Does he earn much money in his new job?

He doesn't earn much money in his new job.

(2) The television company receives a large number of letters every week.

Does the television company receive many letters every week?

The television company doesn't receive many letters every week.

(3) Scientists have spent a great deal of time studying this problem.

Scientists haven't spent much time on this problem.

(4) We sell a lot of (a great number of) our products overseas.

We don't sell many of our products overseas.

(5) I have seen a great deal of him these days.

I haven't seen much of him for a few weeks.

(6) He doesn't talk much, but he thinks a lot.

(7) We had plenty of paper, but not much ink.

但是 much 与 many 在肯定句中用来作主语或修饰主语的情况却很普遍。如:

(1) Many people believe that television has a harmful effect on children.

(2) Much snow has fallen. (比较: We have had plenty of snow.)

下面句中的much与many用在肯定句的宾语中是因为前面有 how, too, as, so, very, a great 等修饰语的缘故。  
如：

- (1) Robert has made too many mistakes in his written work.
- (2) We have sent very many young men abroad for further studies.
- (3) I used to have a great many friends.

### 3) plenty of

- (1) Here, under water, everything is blue and green.  
During the day, there is plenty of light.
- (2) Don't hurry—there's plenty of time.
- (3) What is needed is plenty of practice.
- (4) We have plenty of work to do this morning.
- (5) China has plenty of natural resources waiting to be exploited.
- (6) Most of the inhabited areas of the world received plenty of solar energy to meet all of man's requirements.
- (7) You must keep up the patient with plenty of good food.  
(你必须多给病人吃些滋补品。)
- (8) There is plenty of room for improving our work.
- (9) You'd better go now so that you may be in plenty of time.
- (10) We have plenty of time to catch the train.

### 4) heaps of, a heap of

- (1) There's heaps of time for you to see all you wish to.

(2) I've been to the West Lake heaps of times.

(3) He has heaps of money.

(4) We have heaps of time.

(5) There are heaps of books on this subject.

(6) She had a heap of trouble.

(7) I have a heap of work to do.

5) loads of (= plenty of, lots of)

(1) They have loads of money.

(2) She has loads of friends.

6) tons of books

tons of money

7) a mountain of paper 纸堆积如山

a mountain of books

书堆积如山

a mountain of difficulties

困难重重

(D) 一定的数目字用以表示不定数目

one or two, a couple of, dozens of, tons of, scores of, hundred and one, hundreds of, thousand and one, thousands of, myriads of, hundreds and thousands of, thousands and thousands of, millions and billions, millions of, hundreds of millions of, billions of.

(1) Do you need pencils? I have one or two here to spare.

(你需要铅笔吗? 我这里可让出一两支。)

(2) I received a couple of letters this morning.

(今天早晨我收到了二三封信。)

(3) He spent a couple of days in the country.

(4) Meetings are held a couple of times yearly.

(5) Take as many as you like, we have dozens of them.

(你可随便拿多少去, 我们有好几十呢(不低于24了)。)

(6) There are scores of students who have not received any letter today.

(有几十个学生今天还没有接到信。(不低于40个))

(7) I have seen scores and scores of such cases.

(几十次)

(8) They have consulted tens of reference books on integrated circuits.

(他们已经查阅了几十本关于集成电路的参考书。)

(tens of 不低于20个)

(9) Power stations, chemical fertilizer plants and a hundred and one other factories have been set up in the province over the past two years.

(过去两年中, 那个省建造了发电站、化肥厂和许多其他工厂。)

(10) The President can't see you now, he has hundred and one things to attend to.

(现在校长不能见你, 因为他有许多事情要做。)

(11) The nearest refinery may be hundreds of miles away.

(最近的炼油厂可能也有好几百英里远。)

(12) We have hundreds of customers a day.

(13) The engineers then begin to join the thousands of pipes together.

(然后, 施工人员就把数以千计的管子一根一根地接

起来。)

(14) There are thousand and one ways for us to help them.

(我们要给他们帮忙, 方法多得很。)

hundred and one 和 thousand and one 没有差别, 意为“许多”。)

(15) Thus, the laser beam can carry thousands of messages at the same time.

(所以, 激光束在同一时间内可以传送成千上万条信息。)

(16) Tens of thousands of elements are used in a television station.

(一座电视台要用几万个元件(数万个元件)。)

(17) Thousands upon thousands of martyrs have heroically laid down their lives for the people.

(18) The chain reaction continues until the light pulse has been amplified millions of times.

(连锁反应继续进行, 直到把光脉冲放大几百万倍为止。)

(19) All around us are billions of tiny living things that are too small to be seen with the unaided eye.

(我们周围有着亿万个小生命, 用肉眼无法看到。)

(20) Some hundreds of students attended the lecture given by Professor Smith yesterday.

(几百)

(21) There are some thousands of tractors in this commune.

(几千)



(22) In our country, hundreds of millions of people are working for socialism day and night.

(在我国，亿万人民为建设社会主义日夜劳动着。)

(23) People began to leave the meeting by ones and twos.

(人们开始一两个一两个地离开会场。)

(24) They came by twos or threes.

(三三两两)

tens of

(好几十，不低于20)

dozens of

(好几十，不低于24)

scores of

(好几十，不低于40)

(25) There are

hundreds of

thousands of

millions of

thousands upon

thousands of

millions upon mil-

lions(无数) of

people interested in the subject.

(26) millions and billions.

(表示一个很大的数目)

(27) millions upon millions.

(表强调)

(28) tens of millions of

(数千万，几千万)

- (29) hundreds and thousands of  
(数十万, 几十万)
- (30) hundreds of thousands of  
(数十万, 几十万)
- (31) In a clear night one can see myriads of stars in the sky.  
(在晴朗的夜晚, 人会看见无数的星在天上。)  
(myriads of 无数; myriad 一万)
- (32) There are millions of galaxies in the universe.
- (33) Hundreds of millions of years ago, the oceans were full of very small animals and plants called plankton.  
(几亿年前, 海洋里到处都是非常小的称为浮游生物的动植物。)
- (34) No one knows exactly how many galaxies there are, but we do know that every galaxy contains billions of stars.  
(没有人确切知道到底有多少个星系, 可是我们确实知道每一个星系包含有亿万颗星星。)

### B. “大于某数”表示法

more than, over, above, or more, more odd, and odd, hardly (scarcely) more than, some more.

- 1) more than 多于..., ...以上, 比...更多
- (1) The 98 elements have, in all, more than 1200 isotopes.  
(这98种元素总共有1200多种同位素。)
- (2) People gave attention to semi-conductor more than

90 years ago.

(3) Only a few substances contain more than five or six different elements.

(4) Light can travel around the earth more than seven times each minute.

(5) More than 100 chemical elements are known to man, of these, about 80 are metals.

(6) Steam occupies more than 1,700 times as much space as the water from which it comes.

(7) In each element but hydrogen, each atom contains more than one proton.

## 2) more 再加……

(1) Add fifty more grams of salt to the water.

(水里再加50克盐。)

(2) May I have a few more apples?

(3) Help yourself to one more of this cake.

(4) Will you buy one dozen more of pencils?

(5) I'll bring you a few more of these flowers next time.

## 3) or more 或……以上

(1) This letter may weigh twenty grams or more.

(这封信重20克或20克多点。)

(2) You'll teach fifteen students or more.

(3) A new substance is formed when two or more elements are combined.

(4) I have walked a mile or more.

(我至少已经走了一英里路。)

(5) During the last seventy years or more, it has been

shown that atom is itself composed of a number of smaller particles.

4) odd, and odd (在整十位数后, odd 表示零以上的任何个位数。在整百位数后, 表示1—99之间的任何数, 以此类推)附加的

(1) I think there are forty-odd schools altogether.

(一共有40多所学校。)

(2) The book has four hundred odd pages.

(这本书有400多页。)

(3) There are sixty and odd people present.

(有60多个人到场。)

(4) Six hundred odd children came to see the exhibition last week.

5) over, above

(1) The temperature was over/above 20 degrees yesterday.

(2) He is a little over fifty.

(3) Above two hundred people attended the meeting.

(4) The temperature was only a few degrees above the freezing point.

(温度只比冰点高几度。)

(5) Over (Above) five hundred people were present at the ceremony.

(五百多人参加了典礼。)

6) hardly (scarcely) more than 几乎不能超过, 稍超过

He has hardly more than six hundred dollars.

(他的所有, 稍超600美元。)

## 7) some more (of) 再多...

- (1) Give us some more of your reasons.  
(请你给我们申述更多一点的理由。)
- (2) Pour some more water into the container.
- (3) Give us some more examples to explain the problem.
- (4) We want some more.

## C. “小于某数”表示法

less than, under, below, or less, nearly, almost, hardly (scarcely) less than

### 1) less than 小于, 少于

- (1) Less than ten of the machines remain.  
(剩下不到十台机器。)
- (2) The students studied 1000 new words in less than a year.
- (3) There were less than twenty minutes before the train started.
- (4) They finished the work in less than ten days.
- (5) It is worth little less than a million.  
(其价值差一点不到一百万。)
- (6) People can fly around the world in less than 50 hours.

### 2) under, below 未满, 少于

- (1) The number is below ten.  
(总数不上10个。)
- (2) He cannot be much below sixty.  
(他将近60岁了。)

(3) We went from our house to Cambridge in under an hour.

(我们在不到一小时的时间内从家里走到剑桥。)

(4) The work can't be finished under a month.

(5) The price of this bicycle is below 150 dollars.

3) or less 或少...

(1) The coat might cost him twenty dollars or less.

(2) If you concentrate upon your work, you'll finish it in three days or less.

(3) Piston engines are used for relatively slow planes flying at 20,000 feet or less.

(活塞式发动机用于飞行高度在20,000英尺以下的航速较慢的飞机。)

4) nearly, almost 几乎, 将近

(1) It is now nearly ten o'clock.

(2) He is nearly five years old.

(3) You should know how to do it. You are almost seven years old.

5) up to 数达, 高达, 相等子, 将近, 不多于

(1) One operator can handle up to six machines.

(一个操作人员能照管到六部机器。)

(2) It is possible to determine the density of the air up to a height of over 150 miles.

(测定直到150英里高度的空气的密度是可能的。)

(3) The stadium holds up to three thousand people.

(这座体育馆能容纳近三千人。)

(4) There were up to eight fire engines at the fire.

(5) Because of the rain, the number of people at the

meeting didn't come up to the number we expected.

6) **hardly (scarcely) less than 几乎不下于,**

He has hardly less than a million.

(他的所有几乎不下于百万。)

**D. “有…之多, 不少于…, 不超过…, 至多, 最多”表示法**

as many (much) as, no less than, no more than, not less than, not more than, no fewer than, at most (at the most, at the very most), at best, at the outside

1) **“as many (much 或其他形容词) as + 具体数字”表示“至…”, “达…”, “有…之多”**

(1) The average distance of the sun from the earth is as much as 150 million kilometers.

(2) The rain is plentiful here, often as much as seventy inches.

(3) Some layers between the third and the last layers contain as many as 32 electrons.

(第三层和最后电子层之间, 有些电子层含有32个电子之多。)

(4) As many as a hundred people attended the meeting.

(5) This truck can carry as much as ten tons.

(6) A single generator may be able to generate as much as 3,000 kilowatts, which corresponds to about 4,000 horse-power.

(单独一个发电机就可能发电3,000 瓩, 大约相当于4,000 马力。)

(7) The Nanking Yangtze River Bridge is as long as 6700 meters.

(8) The temperature at the sun's center is as high as 10,000,000°C.

(太阳中心的温度高达摄氏1000万度。)

(9) The furnace reached a temperature as high as 1500°C.

(炉温高达1500°C。)

(10) His temperature is as high as 39°C.

(11) This bridge is as long as 2 miles.

2) **no less than 有...之多(强调多), 不少于**

(1) There are no less than 50 students in this class.

(这个班的学生有50人之多。)

(2) He has no less than 100 yuan in his pocket.

(3) They have designed no less than ten kinds of lathes.

(4) There are no less than 50 English books on the shelf.

(5) He has been studying electronic for no less than ten years.

(6) He owns no less than ten steamers.

(他所有的轮船不下十艘。)

3) **not less than 至少, 不少于**

(1) Not less than six glasses of fluid daily should be the rule for every adult.

(成人每人每天液体摄入量不少于六杯。)



(2) There are not less than 1000 people at the meeting.

(3) They have designed not less than six kinds of lathes.

(他已设计出至少六种车床。(也许还多))

(4) There was not less than thirty dollars in the drawer.

4) no more than 只有, 仅仅, 不过(强调少)

(1) There were no more than five lathes in the workshop before liberation.

(解放前车间里只有五个车床。)

(2) This first orbit nearest to the nucleus contains no more than 2 electrons.

(最靠近核的轨道仅仅含有两个电子。)

(3) All together, the planets total no more than a seven-hundredth of the mass of the sun.

(这些行星的总质量不过是太阳质量的1/700。)

(4) We have designed no more than three kinds of lathes.

(5) There were no more than three books on the table.

5) not more than 至多, 不超过

(1) Tom has not more than twenty English books.

(他至多只有二十本英语书。)

(2) There were not more than six lathes in the workshop before liberation.

(解放前这个车间的车床不过六台。)

(3) They have designed not more than four kinds of lathes.

(4) There are not more than twenty lessons in the text book.

(5) I have not more than five hundred yuan.

6) no fewer than 不比…为少, 不下于(= as many as)

(1) No fewer than twenty girls fainted in the heat.

(在酷热中晕倒的女孩子, 不下于二十人。)

(2) There were no fewer than 1000 people present.

(出席的不下1000人。)

(3) He had tried it no fewer than one hundred times before he succeeded.

(4) The project requires no fewer than 1000 workers.

7) at most, at the most, at the very most 最多, 至多, 不超过

(1) These small plants were built in a matter of a few months, at most a year.

(这些小厂是在大约几个月最多一年的时间内建起来的。)

(2) We are to finish the experiment in two months at the most.

(3) There are only 30 people at the meeting at the very most.

(4) These goods are for the most part made in factories, a quarter of them at most being made by hand.

(这些货物绝大部分是机器制造的, 至多有四分之一是手工制的。)

(5) It won't take too long to get there, two hours at most.

(6) They will give you, at most, 100 dollars for the

bicycle.

(7) He had been gone 15 minutes at the most.

(8) At the very most he can't be more than eighteen years of age.

(9) I think the pianist was eighteen at the very most.

(10) I can pay only £10 at the most.

8) at best 至多, 充其量不过是, 说到最好 (= at the best)

(1) We can hope to get there at three o'clock at best.

(2) At best it will take a quarter of an hour.  
(顶多用一刻钟。)

(3) The outside reading will last five weeks at best.  
(这课外读物最多能用五周。)

(4) The students can attend no more than 25 classes a week at best.

(学生每周顶多能上二十五节课。)

(5) I can donate one hundred dollars at best.

(我充其量只能捐助100元。)

(6) At best, this car will go only fifty miles an hour.

9) at the outside 最多也不过

(1) The station is two miles at the outside from here.

(2) This fountain-pen is ten yuan at the outside.

(3) At the outside there were only fifty people there.

### E. 大约数表示法

or, or so, about, somewhere about, some, or there-  
about(s), more or less, around, round, round about,

somewhere round, in the rough

1) or

- (1) He spent four or five hours reading the book.
- (2) I'm going to stay with my friends in the town; I shall stay there for a week or two.
- (3) I've caught cold. The doctor says I must stay in for two or three days.
- (4) Until two or three years ago this economic revolution did not easily catch the eye of the visitor to the country.
- (5) I've been there once or twice.

2) or so 左右, 大約

- (1) The industrial output increased 15 percent or so.
- (2) The distance is two miles or so.
- (3) Glass has only become cheap enough for common use within the last hundred years or so.
- (4) Chemists are making new materials out of the same 100 or so elements.
- (5) They have scored great successes in 300 or so research items.
- (6) The thirty or so questions are very important to the students of English.
- (7) Every day we marched a hundred Li or so.
- (8) The distance from our home to the station is five kilometres or so.

3) about, somewhere about 大約, 近于, 左右

- (1) I shall be home somewhere about 10 o'clock.
- (2) My watch has been gaining about ten minutes a day

for some time.

(3) That car costs somewhere about £2,000.

(4) His house is about five miles from London.

(5) He's somewhere about forty.

(6) I went there about three months ago.

(7) I'll see you somewhere about four o'clock.

4) some 左右, 大約

(1) It happened some twenty years ago.

(2) He waited some ten minutes.

(3) There are some four or five answers to this question.

(4) Some thirty men are needed.

(5) Their team has some three or four good players.

(6) That was some seventy years ago.

(7) The factory consists of some five hundred workers.

5) or thereabout(s) 左右

(1) I'll finish the work in two hours or thereabouts.

(2) That colour TV set costs 1,500 dollars or thereabouts.

(3) The new teacher is forty or thereabouts.

(4) A thousand people or thereabouts heard his speech.

6) more or less 大約, 左右, 大概

(1) I must have given him a hundred pounds more or less.

(2) This container can hold more or less twenty pounds of water.

(3) I read more or less forty pages last night.

- (4) He looks twenty, more or less.
- (5) It's an hour's journey more or less.
- (6) It is a mile, more or less, from his home to the school.
- (7) I still have more or less twenty pages to cover.
- (8) We are driving at a speed of 60 kilometres, more or less, an hour.

**7) around, round, round about, somewhere round 大约**

- (1) I'll see you round seven o'clock.
- (2) It cost me somewhere round £ 10.
- (3) Round about a hundred people are expected to attend the conference.
- (4) It took me somewhere round two hours to do the experiment.
- (5) A Mr. Smith called on you around two o'clock.
- (6) Let's make it round about eight o'clock.
- (7) The delegation will arrive somewhere about 9 o'clock.

**8) in the rough 大约**

- (1) The dictionary is worth ten yuan in the rough.
- (2) This picture will cost 1,000 dollars in the rough.
- (3) In the rough the new TV set cost four hundred yuan last.

**9) to approximate(to), approximately, approximation 大约**

- (1) The yearly output of this factory approximates to 500,000 tons.
- (2) His yearly income approximates to five thousand dollars.

- (3) The crowd approximated a thousand people.
- (4) There were approximately 50 people there.
- (5) The time is approximately ten o'clock.
- (6) There were approximately 10,000 people present.
- (7) The approximate population of China is 1000 million.  
(中国的人口大约为十亿。)
- (8) Forty is the approximate number of books needed in our class.
- (9) An approximation for the circumference of the earth is 25,000 miles.
- (10) 800 is only an approximation of the right number.

## F. 两数之间表示法

from...to, between...and, anywhere...between...and,  
anywhere from...to, to

1) from...to 从...到(有时用 from...till)

- (1) I teach from nine to ten.
- (2) The doctor treats from twenty-five to thirty patients every day.
- (3) The boy can count from one to one hundred.
- (4) The library is open from 10 till 4 o'clock.
- (5) We have lunch from 12:00 to 1:00. Then we start again and go on till 5:30.

2) between...and

- (1) We shall have between thirty and forty people coming to our meeting.
- (2) They will arrive here at between five and six.

- (3) I shall be in the laboratory between two and five o'clock this afternoon.
- (4) The accident took place between 9:30 and 10:30 p.m.
- (5) We must have walked between eleven and twelve miles.
- 3) anywhere between...and 大約...至...
- (1) He'll finish the talk anywhere between ten and ten fifteen.
- (2) She must be anywhere between thirty-two and thirty-six.
- (3) That factory is anywhere between sixteen and twenty miles away.
- 4) anywhere from...to 大約...至...
- (1) It will take anywhere from two to three hours to drive there.
- (2) There are anywhere from 40 to 60 students in the reading-room.
- (3) He left anywhere from 20 to 30 minutes ago.
- 5) to
- (1) I am going to stay here ten to fifteen days.
- (2) The committee would have five to seven members.

### G. “部分”表示法

a part of, a portion of, a section of, percentage, proportion, most, bulk

#### 1) part 一部分, 部分, 局部

- (1) Part of it was spoilt.



- (2) Part of the books have arrived.
- (3) This part of the country is very mountainous.
- (4) The greater part of the highway is very flat.
- (5) Part of the plane is made of plastics.
- (6) Part of the machines are made in China.
- (7) The petroleum industry is a part of our industry.
- (8) Part of them have finished the experiment.
- (9) We have shown you only part of our products.
- (10) These goods are for the most part made in our factory.

## 2) partly *adv.*

- (1) This is partly true. (一部分是真的。= Part of it is true.)
- (2) When gunpower is fired, the chemical energy that was stored in it is released partly as heat and partly as mechanical energy in propelling a bullet.  
(当火药引燃时, 储藏在火药里的化学能被释放出来, 一部分转化为热能, 另一部分转化为机械能, 推动子弹前进。)
- (3) It was made partly of wood and partly of metal.

## 3) portion 部分, 一分

- (1) A portion of the manuscript is illegible.  
(这草稿的一部分不易辨读。)
- (2) A portion of the land was flooded after the heavy rain.

## 4) percentage 部分

- (1) A small percentage of them are useless.
- (2) A large percentage of school books now have pic-

tures.

### 5) proportion 部分

- (1) A large proportion of people were not in favor of him.
- (2) You have not done your proportion of the work.
- (3) A large proportion of the report was researched by someone else.

(4) A certain 

{	part	}	of the world's coal lies
	percentage		
	proportion		

 in this country.

(世界上有一部分煤蕴藏在这个国家。)

(5) A considerable 

{	part	}	of the scientific pa-
	percentage		
	proportion		

 pers are written in English.

(有相当大的一部分科学论文是用英文写的。)

### 6) section

- (1) The class is divided into three sections.
- (2) You must fit together the sections of the machine before using it.

### 7) most, for the most part 大部分

- (1) There are many machines in our plant. Most of them were made in Tientsin after liberation.
- (2) This work took us most of May.
- (3) He did most of the work.
- (4) Some of the people stayed behind but most went.  
(有些人留下来没有走, 但大部分都走了。)
- (5) They are for the most part workers.
- (6) His writings were for the most part written in Ger-

man.

- (7) The earth is for the most part covered with water and mountains.

**8) bulk 大部分, 大半**

- (1) Sugar forms the huge bulk of our exports.  
(糖为我们出口的大宗。)
- (2) Farmers form the bulk of our population.  
(我们人口的大部分是农民。)
- (3) He has paid back the bulk of his debt.  
(他已偿还了大部分的债。)

**H. “够, 不够”表示法**

enough, sufficient, adequate, ample, insufficient, inadequate, not enough, short, lack, want

**1) enough**

- (1) Have you got enough manpower?
- (2) Have I got time enough to go to the bank?
- (3) There is enough food for all of us.
- (4) The noise coming from that room was enough to wake the dead.  
(那个房间的喧闹声简直震耳欲聋。)
- (5) We have enough time to do the experiment.
- (6) Is this box big enough for your books?
- (7) It's late enough for us to stop work.
- (8) It's light enough to read.
- (9) Did you come early enough for the chairman's opening speech?
- (10) Enough has been said on different forms of energy.

## 2) sufficient, sufficiently

- (1) Have you made sufficient investigation?
- (2) We have sufficient fuel to last five months.
- (3) Is one hundred yuan sufficient for the expenses of your journey?
- (4) That will be sufficient for my need.
- (5) There is sufficient time for the experiment.
- (6) Our brigade has a grain reserve sufficient for three years.
- (7) If we cool a gas sufficiently, it becomes a liquid.

## 3) adequate

- (1) His wages are adequate to support three people.
- (2) There was adequate rain and snow last winter.
- (3) Enough  
A sufficient amount of  
An adequate amount of  
The right quantity of  
} heat must be supplied to  
smelt the metal.  
(要熔炼这种金属就必须提供足够的热量。)
- (4) What we have achieved is far from adequate and our experience is far from enough.

## 4) ample 富足的, 充足的

- (1) We have ample time to fulfil the task.
- (2) Fifteen yuan will be ample for my need.
- (3) There is ample room for all of you in the car.
- (4) They have ample evidence to believe what you said is true.
- (5) Agriculture has developed rapidly, thus providing light industry with ample raw materials.

(6) There is ample time, so you don't have to hurry.

(7) They have an ample supply of rice.

5) **not enough**

(1) I am not scholar enough to name this plant.

(我学识不够, 讲不出这种植物的名字。)

(2) What you say isn't enough to convince him.

(3) The meat is not cooked enough.

(4) I haven't got big enough nails to mend the door.

(修理门, 我的钉子不够大。)

(5) The Government's reforms did not go far enough.

(政府的改革不够充分。)

(6) We haven't enough time to catch the train.

(7) They haven't enough manpower.

6) **insufficient**

(1) The food was both bad and insufficient.

(2) He had insufficient funds to get himself up in business.

(3) The old car has insufficient power to get up the hill.

(4) They have an insufficient supply of coal.

(5) The child is weak on account of insufficient food and sunlight.

7) **inadequate**

(1) The food was inadequate for twenty people.

(2) Coal stocks are inadequate for a long winter.

(3) Their clothing was inadequate for such a cold day.

(4) The equipment of this laboratory is inadequate.

8) **short of 不足, 短缺**

(1) We are short of hand at present.

(2) We shall try to finish the work in time though we are short of manpower.

(3) They were still 5 miles short of their destination.

(4) We are now short of fuel.

(5) The encircled enemy troops are running short of food and ammunition.

(被包围的敌军快要弹尽粮绝了。)

### 9) lack, want 缺少, 不足

(1) I sold the business for lack of capital.

(我因资本不足而卖了我的企业。)

(2) The plants drooped for want of water.

(这些植物因缺水枯萎了。)

(3) Your work shows want of care.

(4) Faults may develop in the motor for lack of lubrication.

(电动机可能由于缺少润滑而发生故障。)

(5) He can not operate this machine for lack of practical experience.

(6) He was lacking in mathematical training.

(他数学方面训练不够。)

## 2. 量的其他表示法

### 1) 一群, 一帮

an army of workmen (technicians / troops)

一大群工人 / 技术员 / 一支队伍

an army of locusts

一群蝗虫

a cloud of locusts (stars) 蝗虫 / 星星

a swarm of locusts (people) 蝗虫 / 一群人

a battalion of teachers 一营教师

a bunch of students (boys) 一群学生 / 一群男孩

a brood of daughters 一群女儿

a crowd of people (spectators / players) 一群人

a cluster of people (spectators / players) 一群人

a knot of people (spectators / players) 一群人

a horde of people (spectators / players) 一群人

a clump of people (spectators / players) 一群人

a shoal of people (spectators / players) 一群人

a group of girls (pioneers / journalists) 一群女孩 / 少先队员 / 记者

a host of children (gymnasts / rivals) 一群孩子 / 体操运动员 / 对手

a bevy of girls (women players / actresses) 一群女孩 / 女运动员 / 女演员

a galaxy of talent (beauties) 一群才子 / 美女

a troop of welcomers 一群欢迎的人

a throng of people (film fans) 一群人 / 影迷

a gang of gangsters (robbers / thieves / convicts) 一群匪徒 / 强盗 / 贼 / 犯人

a mob of rioters (blackguards)  
 一群暴徒/恶棍  
 a horde of lazy-bones (ruffians / liars)  
 一群懒汉/流氓/说谎的人  
 a parcel of liars = a pack of liars = a horde of liars  
 a pack of rascals = a horde of ruffians  
 a pack of thieves = a gang of thieves  
 a body of electors  
 一群选举人  
 a flood of people  
 人潮  
 a flock of sheep (geese / ducks / hens / rabbits)  
 一群羊/鹅/鸭子/母鸡/兔子  
 a herd of cattle (elephants / deer)  
 一群牲畜/象/鹿  
 a drove of geese (horses / oxen / camels)  
 一群鹅/一群马/牛/骆驼  
 a pack of wolves / hounds  
 一群狼/猎犬  
 a swarm of bees / ants  
 一群蜜蜂/蚂蚁  
 a shoal of fishes / whales  
 一群鱼/鲸鱼  
 a barrel of monkeys  
 一群猴子  
 a cluster of houses  
 一簇房舍  
 a clump of buildings (islands / bright stars)



(一群建筑物 / 海岛 / 闪闪发光的星星)

2) 一批

a spate of orders

一批定货单

a stock of goods (provision / soap)

一批货物 / 粮食 / 肥皂

a shipment of goods

一批(海运)货物

a load of goods

一批(待运)货物

a load of furniture

一批(待运或正在途中的)家具

a crop of letters

一批信件

a trove of jewels (Chinese porcelain)

一批珠宝 / 一批中国瓷器

a platoon of empty bottles

一批空瓶子

a rush of prohibitions

(突然发布的)一批禁令

a new line of radios

一批新型收音机

a stick of bombs

一批炸弹

a provision of meat

一批肉类供应品

注: (1) rush 指“以突然方式形成的批”;

(2) line 指“按一定生产线制造出来的产品的批”;

(3) stick 指“连续投下或跳下的批”，

(4) provision 指“按供应方式提供的批”。

a batch of documents

一批文件

a batch of students (graduates; returned students, tractors, letters, books)

a brood of modern painting

(一批现代画)

3) 一队

a body of troops

(一队兵)

a band of camels

(一队骆驼)

a gang of slaves (prisoners)

a fleet of fishing boats

a team of workers

a train of horses (camels)

4) 一串

a bunch of keys (grapes)

a cluster of berries (grapes)

a chain of misfortunes (= a train of)

a string of pearls

a series of victories

(一连串的胜利)

5) 一堆

a crowd of papers and books

(一堆文件和书)

a mince of mushrooms

(一堆切碎的蘑菇)	a mountain of rubbish	一堆垃圾
(一堆废物)	a mountain of debts	债台高筑
(债台高筑)	a packet of troubles	一大堆麻烦事
(一大堆麻烦事)	a pile of letters (bricks)	一堆信(砖)
a pile of letters (bricks)	a bank of earth (snow, clouds)	一堆地(雪, 云)
a bank of earth (snow, clouds)	a budget of letters (news)	许多信/消息
a budget of letters (news)	(许多信/消息)	
6) 一捆, 一包, 一袋		
a bundle of welding rods	一捆焊条	
一捆焊条	a card of matches	一包火柴
a card of matches	一包火柴	
一包火柴	a bale of cotton yarn (rayon)	一包棉纱/人造丝
a bale of cotton yarn (rayon)	一包棉纱/人造丝	
一包棉纱/人造丝	a bag (sack) of clothing (grain / wheat / beans)	一袋衣服(粮食/麦子/豆子)
a bag (sack) of clothing (grain / wheat / beans)	一袋衣服(粮食/麦子/豆子)	
一袋衣服(粮食/麦子/豆子)	a pack of cigarettes	一包香烟
a pack of cigarettes	一包香烟	
一包香烟	a packet of letters	一捆文件
a packet of letters	一捆文件	
一捆文件	a screw of tea	一包茶叶
a screw of tea	一包茶叶	
一包茶叶		
7) 一瓶, 一盒, 一箱, 一杯, 一碗, 一罐, 一桶, 一口, 等		
a bottle of ink (alcohol)	一瓶墨水(酒精)	

一瓶墨水(酒精)	a bottle of ink (alcohol)
a box of nails	一盒钉子
一盒钉子	a box of nails
a case of beer	一箱啤酒
一箱啤酒	a case of beer
a chest of spices	一箱香料
一箱香料	a chest of spices
a cup of coffee (tea)	一杯咖啡/茶
一杯咖啡/茶	a cup of coffee (tea)
a mug of soup	一杯汤
一杯汤	a mug of soup
a tumblerful of milk	满满一杯牛奶
满满一杯牛奶	a tumblerful of milk
a glass of water	一玻璃杯水
一玻璃杯水	a glass of water
a bowl of rice	一碗米饭
一碗米饭	a bowl of rice
a can of milk	一罐牛奶
一罐牛奶	a can of milk
a tin of tomato soup (butter, paint)	一听番茄汁(奶油/油漆)
一听番茄汁(奶油/油漆)	a tin of tomato soup (butter, paint)
a pot of tea	一壶茶
一壶茶	a pot of tea
a jugful of water	一满壶水
一满壶水	a jugful of water
a keg of wine (brandy)	一小桶酒/白兰地
一小桶酒/白兰地	a keg of wine (brandy)
a breaker of water	一杯水
一杯水	a breaker of water

一小桶水	一小桶水
a pail of water (milk)	一小桶水
一(提)桶水/牛奶	一(提)桶水/牛奶
a tub of water	一(提)桶水
一大桶水	一大桶水
a bucket of water	一大桶水
一桶水	一桶水
a vat of beer (dye)	一桶水
一大桶啤酒/染料	一大桶啤酒/染料
a barrel of beer (= a wood of beer)	一大桶啤酒/染料
一桶啤酒	一桶啤酒
a cask of cider (beer, wine)	一桶啤酒
一桶苹果酒/啤酒/酒	一桶啤酒
a pipe of vegetable oil	一桶啤酒
一桶植物油	一桶啤酒
a drum of oil	一桶啤酒
一桶油	一桶啤酒
a jar of water (honey, drinks)	一桶啤酒
一壶水/蜂蜜/饮料	一桶啤酒
a mouthful of wine (= a drink of wine)	一桶啤酒
一口酒	一桶啤酒
a mouthful of fresh air (= a breath of fresh air)	一桶啤酒
一口新鲜空气	一桶啤酒
a mouthful of food	一桶啤酒
一口食物	一桶啤酒
a morsel of food	一桶啤酒
一小口食物	一桶啤酒
a sip of water (brandy, tea)	一桶啤酒

一(小)口水/白兰地/茶	一口水
a gulp of water (milk)	(small) sip of water
一(大)口水(牛奶)	一口水
a pull of wine	一口酒
一口酒	a such of wine
a such of wine (smoke, tea)	一口酒/烟/茶
一口酒/烟/茶	a drain of beer (water)
a drain of beer (water)	一口啤酒/水
一口啤酒/水	a swallow of brandy (water, cooked rice)
a swallow of brandy (water, cooked rice)	一口白兰地/水/米饭。
一口白兰地/水/米饭。	
<b>8) 一条, 一块, 一张, 一片, 等</b>	
a bar of soap	一条肥皂
一条肥皂	a loaf of bread
a loaf of bread	一条面包 (three leaves of bread)
一条面包 (three leaves of bread)	a slice of bread
a slice of bread	一块面包(一片面包)
一块面包(一片面包)	a slice of apple
a slice of apple	一块苹果
一块苹果	a slice of territory
a slice of territory	一块领土
一块领土	a slice of cake (ham, melon)
a slice of cake (ham, melon)	一片糕/火腿/西瓜
一片糕/火腿/西瓜	a sheet of steel (metal, iron)
a sheet of steel (metal, iron)	一块钢板/金属板/铁板
一块钢板/金属板/铁板	a slab of bread (stone)
a slab of bread (stone)	一块(厚)面包/石板
一块(厚)面包/石板	

a chunk of bread (wood)  
 一块(短而厚)的面包/木头  
 a block of ice  
 一大块冰  
 a bit of meat (paper)  
 一小块肉/纸  
 a morsel of bread  
 一(小)块面包  
 a knobble of sugar  
 一(小)块面糖  
 a junk of mutton  
 一(大)块羊肉  
 a clot of clay  
 一块泥土  
 a gob of butter  
 一块黄油  
 a chop of beef  
 一块带骨的牛肉  
 a large cut of pork  
 一大块猪肉  
 a bar of chocolate  
 一块巧克力糖  
 a cake of soap  
 一块肥皂  
 a cake of clay  
 一块泥土  
 a lump of sugar  
 一块方糖

a chunk of bread (wood)  
 一块(短而厚)的面包/木头  
 a block of ice  
 一大块冰  
 a bit of meat (paper)  
 一小块肉/纸  
 a morsel of bread  
 一(小)块面包  
 a knobble of sugar  
 一(小)块面糖  
 a junk of mutton  
 一(大)块羊肉  
 a clot of clay  
 一块泥土  
 a gob of butter  
 一块黄油  
 a chop of beef  
 一块带骨的牛肉  
 a large cut of pork  
 一大块猪肉  
 a bar of chocolate  
 一块巧克力糖  
 a cake of soap  
 一块肥皂  
 a cake of clay  
 一块泥土  
 a lump of sugar  
 一块方糖

- a lump of clay (earth)  
一块土
- a lump of gold  
一块金子
- a cob of coal  
一块煤
- a cob of stone  
一块(圆形)石头
- a dollop of ice cream  
一块冰淇淋
- a dollop of pudding (cheese)  
一块布丁/奶酪
- a parcel of land  
一片地
- a piece of land  
一块地
- a strip of paper (cloth)  
一条纸/布
- a slip of paper  
一张细长的纸
- a piece of meat (bread)  
一块肉(面包)
- a piece of leather (oxhide, cloth)  
一块毛皮/皮子/布
- a piece of glass (ore, ice, iron, wood, cake)  
一块玻璃/矿石/冰/木头/蛋糕
- a piece of furniture  
一件家具



a piece of equipment

一台设备

a piece of information

一份资料

a piece of news

一则新闻

a piece of advice

一个忠告

a piece of clothing

一件衣服

a piece of music

一支乐曲

a piece of painting

一幅画

a piece of chalk

一支粉笔

a piece of string

一根绳子

注：需用复数时，只变前边的量词为复数形式 of, 后边的不可数名词不变。

9) 一层，一片

a layer of rock (bricks, clay, earth, coal, stone, sands, paint, snow, dust, jam)

一层岩石 / 砖 / 泥土 / 原煤 / 石头 / 沙土 / 油漆 / 雪 / 灰尘 / 果酱

a veil of cloud (mist)

一层(薄)云 / 薄雾

a new coat of paint

一层新油漆	一层新油漆	一层新油漆
a coat of dust (dirt, sugar, zinc)	一层灰 / 污物 / 糖 / 锌	一层灰 / 污物 / 糖 / 锌
一层灰 / 污物 / 糖 / 锌	a coating of white	一层白油漆
a coating of white	一层白油漆	一层白油漆
一层白油漆	a thin coat of ice	一层薄冰
a thin coat of ice	一层薄冰	一层薄冰
一层薄冰	a film of oil (oxide, dust, plastic / powder)	一层油 / 氧化物 / 灰尘 / 薄塑料膜 / 粉
a film of oil (oxide, dust, plastic / powder)	一层油 / 氧化物 / 灰尘 / 薄塑料膜 / 粉	一层油 / 氧化物 / 灰尘 / 薄塑料膜 / 粉
一层油 / 氧化物 / 灰尘 / 薄塑料膜 / 粉	a bed of yellow clay (straw)	一层黄泥土 / 稻草
a bed of yellow clay (straw)	一层黄泥土 / 稻草	一层黄泥土 / 稻草
一层黄泥土 / 稻草	a flake of rust (cloud)	一层锈 / 一片云
a flake of rust (cloud)	一层锈 / 一片云	一层锈 / 一片云
一层锈 / 一片云	a mantle of snow (= a cloak of snow)	一层雪
a mantle of snow (= a cloak of snow)	一层雪	一层雪
一层雪	a mantle of milk	一层奶油膜
a mantle of milk	一层奶油膜	一层奶油膜
一层奶油膜	a field of ice	一片冰雪
a field of ice	一片冰雪	一片冰雪
一片冰雪	a cloud of dust	一片扬尘
a cloud of dust	一片扬尘	一片扬尘
一片扬尘	a stretch of water	一片汪洋
a stretch of water	一片汪洋	一片汪洋
一片汪洋	a sheet of water	一片汪洋
a sheet of water	一片汪洋	一片汪洋
一片汪洋	a flood of light	一片光明
a flood of light	一片光明	一片光明
一片光明	a blanket of clouds	一片光明
a blanket of clouds	一片光明	一片光明

一层云

10) 一双, 一副, 一把, 一条

a pair of shoes (socks, gloves)

一双鞋 / 短袜 / 手套

a pair of trousers

一条裤子

a pair of scissors (tongs, tweezers)

一把剪子 / 钳子 / 镊子

a pair of scales (reins, spectacles)

一副天秤 / 缰绳 / 眼镜

a pair of compasses

一只双脚规

a pack of cards

一副纸牌

a sheaf of wheat

一把(一捆)麦子

a sheaf of arrows

一把(一束)箭

a sheaf of flowers

一把(一束)鲜花

a sheaf of money

一把钱

a handful of rice

一把米

a fistful of silver (sand)

一把银币 / 沙子

11) 一轴, 一卷, 一团

a reel of cotton

一卷棉线

a reel of motion-picture film

一卷电影片

a roll of cloth

一卷布

a roll of butter

一团奶油

a hank of wool

一卷毛线

a roll of tape (film)

一卷纸带/胶带

12) 一套

a set of instruments (books, tools, scientific apparatus, furniture, rules, stamps, china, buttons, spoons)

一套仪器/书/工具/科学仪器/家具/规章/邮票/瓷器  
/钮扣/汤匙

a series of stamps (history books, oil painting)

一套邮票/历史书/油画作品

a complete set of equipment

一套设备

a set of the Collected Works of Lenin

一套列宁全集

a suit of clothes (sails, New-Year cards)

一套衣服/篷帆/贺年片

a suite of rooms (furniture)

一套房间/家具

a nest of cups (bowls, boxes)

一套茶杯/碗/箱子

13) 一阵

a burst of applause (gun fire, bomb, laughter, thunder, smoke, hail, tears, crachers)

一阵掌声 / 猛烈炮火 / 爆炸声 / 笑声 / 雷声 / 烟 / 冰雹 / 眼泪 / 鞭炮声

a flood of rain (light, tears, anger)

一阵大雨 / 强光 / 眼泪 / 大怒

a spell of warm weather (drought, coughing)

一阵温暖天气 / 干旱 / 咳嗽

a fit of coughing (acute pain, rage, energy)

一阵咳嗽 / 剧痛 / 狂怒 / 激情

a gust of rain (smoke, fire, rage, wind)

一阵暴雨 / 浓烟 / 烈火 / 勃然大怒 / 狂风

a puff of wind

一阵风

a bout of high fever (= an access of high fever)

一阵高烧

a bout of influenza (bad coughing)

一阵流感 / 剧咳

an access of anger

一阵大怒

a stab of anxiety (joy, envy, lumbago)

一阵焦急 / 快乐 / 妒忌 / 腰痛

a flow of angry words

一阵怒言

a hail of bullets (curses)

一阵枪弹 / 咒骂

a peal of laughter (applause)

一阵大笑 / 掌声

a swirl of dust

一阵尘埃

a shower of applause

一阵热烈的掌声

a shower of hail

一阵冰雹

a blast of wind

一阵狂风 (= a violent gust of wind)

#### 14) 其他

a drop of water

一滴水

a copy of book

一本书

a basketful of flowers

满满一篮子花

a pen of sheep

一栏羊

a pink of salt

一撮盐

a spoonful salt

满满一匙盐

an ear of corn

一穗玉米

a grain of sand (rice)

一粒砂 / 米

a ray of hope

一线希望

a shred of hope (reputation)

一点希望 / 名誉

a whole body of knowledge

全部知识

a brood of chickens

一窝小鸡

a bed of onions

一畦洋葱

a ration of coffee

一分咖啡

a ream of paper

一令纸

a lump of money

一大笔钱

a mint of money

大量的钱

a trifle of sugar

少量的糖

a range of mountains

一系列山脉

a mess of fish

一些鱼

### 3. “次数”表示法

#### 1). once 一次

(1) The earth goes round the sun once a year.

(2) A man can die but only once.

(一个人只能死一次。)

(3) He comes once a day.

(4) I've seen him more than once.

(5) Such experience once is enough for me.

(此种经验一次我就够了。)

(6) My mother writes to me once or twice a month.

## 2) twice 两次

(1) Don't commit the same mistake twice.

(2) I have read this book twice.

(3) I advise you to think twice before doing that.

(4) I have met Henry twice or three times in London.

(5) I wrote to him twice or three times, but the letters were unanswered.

(6) I went for bathing two or three times with my brother down at Long Beach.

## 3) thrice (= three times) 三次 four times 四次

(1) Thrice I tried and three times I failed.

(2) He went on a hunting trip three or four times with his brother.

(3) Four times he failed in his business, but four times he succeeded in recouping his loss.

(他做生意失败了四次，但是他四次都恢复起来。)

## 4) again and again 一再，再三，屡次

(1) The same changes took place again and again.

(2) He mentioned it again and again.

(3) This question was discussed again and again without any solution being found.

(4) No one can avoid mistakes, but it is inexcusable to



make the same mistake again and again.

(5) He did try, again and again, but he always failed.

**5) time and again 一再, 再三, 屢次 (= time after time)**

(1) Time and again I have warned him against making the same mistake.

(2) Facts have proved time and again the truth that energy can be changed from one form into another.

(3) He tried it time after time, but in vain.

(4) Time after time we warned him not to do it, but he wouldn't listen to us.

(5) Reed had beaten the man time after time.

(6) I have been there time and again.

**6) once again 再一次, 又一次 (= once more)**

(1) He said he would try once again.

(2) These facts prove once again that energy can be changed from one form into another in different ways.

(3) The workers once more overfulfilled their task.

(4) If you make the experiment once more, you will find that this chemical compound consists of three different elements.

(5) Will you please explain the sentence once again?

(6) I will write to him once more.

**7) once and again 一再, 再三**

(1) He has been told once and again not to slam the door.

(2) He has been admonished, once and again, of his fault.

(他一再被人警告犯了过失。)

8) over and again, over and over again, over and over再三, 反复, 数次

(1) Over and again he failed to pass the college entrance examination.

(他考大学数次都失败了。)

(2) I read the text over and over till I can read it fluently.

(3) That was the question he asked himself over and over.

(4) The teacher has emphasized over and over again the importance of solid basic training in the study of a foreign language.

(5) This problem is rather complicated, so we should analyse and study it over and over again.

(6) Thermoplastic plastics may be heated and cooled over and over again, and they will soften and harden every time.

(热塑性塑料可以反复地加热和冷却, 每一次加热或冷却, 它便变软或变硬。)

(7) The doctor told him { over and over again  
again and again  
time and again  
once and again } to

give up smoking.

(8) I have said so over and over again.

9) many a time 多次

(1) Many a time has he given me good advice.

(2) Many a time he failed because he neglected some

details in his plan.

(他因忽略计划中的一些小节而多次遭到失败。)

- (3) Full many a time he had the chance to succeed, but he failed.

10) each time, every time, at a time 每次

- (1) Each time we adjusted the temperature, the pressure also changed.
- (2) Each time an experiment was performed, he would check and recheck the result obtained.
- (3) Every time he comes, he has something new to say.
- (4) Every time we breathe, take some of the oxygen out of the air.
- (5) Every time there is a change in the state of matter, there is a change in energy.
- (6) I'll think of it every time I listen to music.
- (7) Every time we meet, we have a lot to tell each other.
- (8) You can borrow only two books at a time.
- (9) Do one thing at a time.
- (10) Each child is allowed to take two apples at a time.
- (11) They jumped into the river, two at a time.

1) for the first (second, third, etc.) time 第一(二, 三)次

- (1) It was last autumn that I met him for the first time.

(去年秋天我才第一次见到他。)

- (2) I have come to Beijing for the first time.
- (3) In the 18th century, the steam engine was invented, which for the first time in practice converted heat

into really usable mechanical motion.

(4) The electron microscope has made it possible for doctors and scientists to see certain disease germs for the first time.

(5) The day was exactly fifty years after Bleriot flew in an aeroplane across the Channel for the first time.

(那一天恰好是五十年前布雷里奥乘飞机作历史上首次飞越英吉利海峡的日子。)

(6) For the first time in history, man has built a light strong enough to illuminate a celestial body.

(人类已造出一种强度足以照亮一个天体的光，这在历史上还是第一次。)

(7) He visited China for the second time in 1967.

(8) It was in New York that I met Helen for the second time.

(9) George tried it for the third time, but he failed.

(10) She has won the game for the third time.

## 12) for the last time 最后一次

(1) I'm warning you for the last time.

(2) We met for the last time in 1945.

(3) This is the first and the last time that I will be here.

(4) For the last time, I advised him not to do this.

## 4. “倍数”表示法

### A. 倍数增加表示法

1) “倍数 + as + *adj.* (*adv.*) + as + 对比事物”表示“是…的…倍”。

(1) The oxygen atom is nearly 16 times as heavy as the hydrogen atom.

(2) The earth is 380,000 times as large as the earth.

(3) This room is twice as large as that one.

(4) Mercury is a liquid 13.6 times as heavy as water.

(5) The resistivity of iron is almost six times as much as that of copper.

(铁的电阻率几乎是铜的六倍。)

(6) The speed of sound in water is about four times as great as in air.

(7) Jupiter is five times as far from the sun as is the earth.

(木星离太阳的距离相当于地球离太阳的距离的五倍。)

(8) Helium is a very light gas, nearly four times as heavy as hydrogen.

(9) The coefficient of expansion of air is about twenty times as much as that of mercury.

(10) On the earth everything is six times as heavy as on the moon.

(11) The proton is about 1837 times as heavy as the electron.

- (12) Iron is almost three times as heavy as aluminium.
- (13) Sound travels through iron 15 times as fast as through air.
- (14) Production in this workshop is three times as quick as that in that one.
- (15) The melting point of titanium is almost twice as high as that of platinum.  
(钛的熔点约为铂的两倍。)
- (16) Light travels nearly a million times as fast as sound.
- (17) People could magnify things as much as two thousand times what their diameter really is.  
(人们能够把物体放大到其实际直径的二千倍那么大。)

2) “分数 + as + adj (adv.) + as + 对比事物”表示“是…的几分之几”。

- (1) The new motor is 40% as heavy as the old one.  
(这台新电动机是那台旧的重量的40%(比旧的轻60%。))
- (2) The effort is one-third as great as the resistance.  
(作用力是阻力的1/3。(比阻力少2/3))
- (3) This substance reacts one-tenth as fast as the other one.  
(这种物质的反应速度是另一种物质的1/10(慢十分之九)。
- (4) This box is 20% as heavy as that one.
- (5) Pure magnesium weighs only 65 per cent as much as aluminium.
- (6) This line is two-thirds as long as that line.
- (7) The moon is about one-third as large in diameter as

the earth.

(8) The intensity of light four feet away is  $1/16$ th as great as it is one foot from the source.

(离光源四英尺远的光强是离光源一英尺远的 $1/16$ )

3) “倍数(分数) +  $n$ . (or that) + of + 比较对象” 表示 “是…几分之一”, “是(为)…倍”。

(1) The volume of the sun is 350,000 times that of the earth.

(2) The weight of the proton is about 1837 times that of the electron.

(3) The depth of water in the first tube is four times that in the other.

(4) In 1980 the export value of machine tools was eight times that of 1970.

(5) The area of cotton fields in this production brigade is twice that of vegetable fields.

(6) The earth is 49 times the size of the moon.

(7) This river is twice the width of that river.

(8) This force is nearly 30,000 times the weight of the bullet.

(该力几乎等于子弹重量的30,000倍。)

(9) The output of cotton in 1979 was five times that of 1973.

(10) The number of students after liberation is about nine times that of students before liberation.

(11) The moon's gravity is only about  $1/6$  the gravity of the earth.

(12) The mass of an electron is  $1/1840$  that of a

hydrogen atom.

(13) The circumference of any circle is about  $3\frac{1}{7}$  times the length of the diameter.

(14) In a single second, light can travel over a distance equal to eight times the length of the equator.

4) “表示倍数意义的动词 (double 二倍于, treble 三倍于, quadruple 四倍于) + 宾语” 或 “动词 + 表倍数意义的形容词 + 宾语” 表示 “是(为)…倍”, “增加到…倍”, “增加(倍数-1)倍”。

(1) The production is now double what it was.

(产量是过去的两倍。)

(2) The productivity of our workshop doubled.

(我们车间的生产力翻了一番。)

(3) Twenty is the quadruple of five.

(二十是五的四倍。)

(4) The number has nearly trebled itself.

(数目差不多增至三倍。)

(5) The power has been 

{	doubled.	}	功率已增加到原来
	trebled.		
	quadrupled.		

的 {  
两倍。  
三倍。  
四倍。

(6) Even if you double the price, there will still be people to buy it.

(甚至你把价钱加成双倍, 还是有人买的。)

(7) The output of cotton has doubled this year.



(8) Our opponents scored treble our points.

(我们的敌手所得的分数有我们的三倍。)

(9) Treble the figure, and it will be nearly right.

(三倍那个数, 就差不多了。)

(10) The treble of this figure will be quite near the answer.

(这数目的三倍才近乎那答案。)

(11) The quadruple of my income would be equal to his, i. e., his income is quadruple mine.

(我收入的四倍等于他的, 那就是说, 他的收入为我的四倍。)

(12) The price has quadrupled.

(价钱已增加了三倍。)

(13) Reducing the frequency by one-half will double the period.

(频率减一半, 周期加倍。)

(14) Between 1950 and 1973 the number of telephones in USA more than tripled, with an addition of 90 million telephones.

(1950—1973年间, 美国电话增加9000万只, 总数比原有的多两倍以上。(是原来的三倍多))

(15) The application of tungsten filaments more than doubled the light output.

(使用钨丝使光的输出量增加了一倍以上(为原来的两倍多。))

(16) If the resistance is doubled without changing the voltage, the current becomes only half as strong.

(电压不变, 如果把电阻加大一倍, 电流就减少一半。)

(17) If you treble the distance between two objects, their gravitational attraction gets nine times weaker.

(如果把两个物体之间距离增加两倍, 那么它们之间的万有引力就减弱九分之八。)

5) “表示增加意义的动词 + 倍数 + as against” 表示 “是…的…倍”, “净增(倍数-1)倍”。

(1) The production of various electron tubes has been increased four times as against 1958.

(各种电子管的生产比1958年增加了三倍(是四倍)。)

(2) In 1973, the output value of Beijing's heavy industry increased 3.8 times as against 1965.

(1973年北京重工业产值是1965年的3.8倍。)

(3) The production of cement has been increased five times as against 1960.

(4) The production of various transistors has been increased six times as against 1979.

(5) The production of water pumps has been increased three times as against 1965.

6) “表示增加意义的谓语 + by a factor of + 倍数” 表示 “增加到…倍”, “增加(倍数-1)倍”。

(1) The speed exceeds the average speed by a factor of 2.5.

(该速度超过平均速度一倍半(是2.5倍)。)

(2) Since liberation the area of arable land of our production brigade has increased by a factor of 1.1.

(自从解放以来, 我们生产队的耕地面积增加了10%(增加到1.1倍。)

(8) The power has been increased } by a factor of three.  
 (功率已增到原来的三倍。) } three fold.  
} by twice.  
} (by) 200 percent.

7) be multiplied by + 倍数 } “是...的...倍”, “增加(倍数-1)  
 multiply + 倍数 } 倍”

(1) The sales of TV sets have been multiplied by four since 1976.

(电视机的销售量增加了三倍(是原来的四倍。))

(2) During the past two years the output of the chemical fertilizers of our factory had multiplied four times.

(3) The sales of industrial electronic products has been multiplied by six since 1972.

(4) The world market price of crude oil has been multiplied by six between 1970 and 1975.

(5) Efficiency will be multiplied several times.

(效力将增加数倍。)

8) “half as much (many, large, fast) again as + 比较对象”表示  
 “是...的一倍半”, “比...多(大, 快)一半”

(1) These shoes cost me half as much again as the last pair I bought.

(这双鞋的价钱比我上次买的那双贵半倍。)

(2) Three is half as much again as two.

(三比二多一半。)

(3) The library being built will be half as large again as this one.

(正建的那个图书馆比这一个大一半。)

- (4) This machine turns half as fast again as that one.
- (5) The new building is half again as high as the old one. (= half as high again as)
- (6) This factory has produced half as many TV sets again as that one.
- (7) The star which has been observed by astronomers is half as large again as our sun.
- (8) Wheel A turns half as fast again as wheel B.
- 9) “half as + *adj.* (*adv.*) + as + 比较对象”表示“是…的一半”，“有…的一半”，“比…一半”（第三种译法，要把原中文形容词或副词译成相反的意思。）
- (1) This pipe is half as long as that one.  
(这根管子是那根的一半长。(比那根短一半))
- (2) The output power of this engine is half as great as that of the other one.  
(这台发动机的输出功率是那台的一半大。)
- (3) Oxygen is half as heavy as sulphur.
- 10) “as (much) again as (= again as...as)”表示“是…的两倍”，“两倍于…”，“比…多一倍”。
- (1) This pipe is as long again as that one.  
(这根管子是那根的两倍长(比那根长一倍。))
- (2) Four is as much again as two.
- (3) The laboratory under construction will be as large again as this one.
- (4) This substance reacts as fast again as the other one.
- (5) The leads of the new condenser are again as long as those of the old.  
(新型电容器的引线是老式的两倍长。)

(6) This wheel turns as fast again as that one.

11) “表示增加意义的词 + by + 倍数(或数字)”表示 (by 后边的数表示净增加的数)“比…多(大)…倍”

(1) This year the value of our industrial output has increased by half as compared with that of last year.

(今年的工业产值比去年增加了一半。)

(2) The new method can raise the productivity by 120%

(这种新方法可提高效率120%)

(3) The production of machine tools has been increased by 5 times since 1965.

(4) The per unit area yield of ginned cotton has increased by 15% over the last year.

(皮棉单位面积产量比去年增加了15%。)

(5) The grain output has increased by three times; the output of vegetable crops has gone up from 7 million jin to 10 million jin.

(6) The total value of industrial and agricultural output this year increased by ten percent over last year.

(7) The output of steel has increased by three times.

(8) As compared with last year, the output goes up by four times.

12) “倍数 + 形容词(副词)比较级 + than + 被比对象”表示 (句中的倍数为净增数)“比…多(大)…倍”

(1) The speed of the new machine is five times higher than that of the old one.

(2) This type of machine uses three times more fuel oil

than that type does.

(这种机器的耗油量比那种多三倍。)

(3) The production of electric power is now three times higher than before.

(4) The heat obtained from a nuclear reaction is a million times greater than that from a chemical reaction.

(5) The sun's rays on Mercury are seven times more than those on the earth.

(6) The level of our industry was ten times higher in 1958 than before liberation.

(7) The sun is thousands of times larger than the earth.

(8) The cotton output this year has increased 15% more than last year.

(9) This month we'll produce 20% more bicycles than we did last month.

(10) This pipe is five times longer than that one.

### B. 倍数减少的表示法

当减少的是倍数时，翻译一般不译为减少“...倍”，而译为减少了“几分之几”或减少到“百分之几”，如：

a. reduce 10 times

减少到1/10，或减少了9/10

b. shorten...5 times

使缩短为原来的1/5，或缩短4/5

c. reduce to 20%

降到20%，减少80%

d. reduce by 20%

减少20%，(只有原来的80%)

e. fall by 30%

下降30% = drop by 30%

f. lower by 10%

降低10%

g. cut (cost) 50%

降低(成本)50%

1) “表示减少意义的谓语动词 + by + 倍数(分数或具体数字)”表示净减的数，如：

(1) The cost of radio receivers was reduced by 70%.

(收音机的成本降低了70%。)

(2) The loss of sulphuric acid has been reduced by five-sevenths.

(硫酸损耗减少5/7。)

(3) Now the integrated circuit has reduced by many times the size of the computer.

(集成电路使计算机的体积缩小了许多倍。)

(4) They reduced the size of the apparatus by two-thirds.

(他们把这个装置的体积缩小了2/3。)

(5) The first cost may be cut down by 25% if home-made steels are used.

(如果采用国产钢材，生产成本可降低25%。)

(6) Compared with the corresponding period in 1973, in the first 11 months of 1974, steel production of Britain dropped by 17%.

(同1973年同期相比，1974年前11个月英国的钢产量降低17%。)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(7) The loss has been decreased<br/>(损耗已减少到原来的一半。)</p>                  | <p>{ by twice.<br/>by 50 percent.<br/>by a factor of two.<br/>by half.</p>      |
| <p>The loss has been decreased<br/>(损耗已减少到原来的1/4。)</p> <p>(损耗已减少了3/4。)</p> | <p>{ by four times.<br/>by a factor of four.<br/>by 75 percent.<br/>by 3/4.</p> |

2) “具有减少意义的谓语动词 + to + 倍数(数字)” to 后边的数字为减少后的结果, 即“减少到...”, 如:

- (1) By using this new process the loss of metal was reduced to 20%.  
(利用这个新的工序, 金属的损耗降到20%。)
- (2) The patients have decreased to 200 this month.  
(这个月病人减少到200人。)
- (3) The temperature of the hot gases is reduced to about 850°C
- (4) The compression stroke has reduced the mixture to about 10 percent of its original volume.  
(压缩冲程已将混合气体减小到原来体积的10%左右。)

3) “具有减少意义的谓语动词 + 倍数”表示减少到 $\frac{1}{\text{倍数}}$ , 减少了

$\frac{\text{倍数}-1}{\text{倍数}}$ , 如:

- (1) The automatic assembly line shortened the assembly time five times.  
(这条自动装配线使装配时间减少了4/5(减少到原时间的1/5)。)



(2) The principal advantage is a four-fold reduction in volume.

(主要优点是体积缩小了3/4(或缩小到原来的1/4。))

(3) The switching time of the new-type of transistor is shortened three times.

(新型晶体管的开关时间缩短了2/3。)

(4) By using this new process the loss of metal was reduced four times.

(利用这个新的工序, 金属的损耗减少了3/4。)

(5) The principal advantage over the old-fashioned machine is a three-fold reduction in weight.

(与旧式机器相比的主要优点是重量减少到1/3。)

4) “表示减少意义的谓语动词 + by a factor of + 倍数”, 表

示减少到  $\frac{1}{\text{倍数}}$ , 减少了  $\frac{\text{倍数}-1}{\text{倍数}}$ , 如:

(1) We see that the collector series resistance is reduced by a factor of 5.

(可以见到, 集电极串联电阻降低了4/5。)

(2) The new type of the equipment will reduce the error probability by a factor of 5.

(这种新型的设备将使误差概率降低4/5(或降到1/5。))

(3) The water level in winter falls by a factor of three as against the average level.

(冬天水面要比平均水面下降2/3。)

(4) Under the care of commune doctors, the rate of occurrence of illness among the commune members has decreased by a factor of four.

(5) The new electronic device under development will

reduce error probability by a factor of seven.

(正在研制的新型电子器件, 将使误差概率降低6/7。)

5) “表示减少意义的谓语动词 + 倍数(数字) + as + adj. (adv.) + as

+ 比较对象”表示减少到 $\frac{1}{\text{倍数}}$ , 减少 $\frac{\text{倍数}-1}{\text{倍数}}$ , 如:

(1) Aluminium is almost ~~more than~~ three times as light as copper.

(铅几乎比铜轻 2/3 强。)

(2) This pipe is six times as short as that one.

(这根管子比那根短 5/6。)

6) “表示减少意义的谓语动词 + 倍数(数字) + 形容词(副词)比较

级 + than + 比较对象”表示减少到 $\frac{1}{\text{倍数}+1}$ , 少 $\frac{\text{倍数}}{\text{倍数}+1}$ ,

是 $\frac{1}{\text{倍数}+1}$ , 如:

(1) The plant turned out twice less tractors last year than this year.

(去年拖拉机产量是今年的1/3(或比今年少2/3))

(2) Aluminium is approximately 3.5 times lighter than copper.

(铝的重量约比铜轻3.5倍(为铜的 $\frac{1}{4.5}$ ))

(3) An electron is millions of times smaller than the smallest thing you've ever seen.

(4) The force of gravity on the moon is six times less powerful than that on the earth.

(5) This pipe is six times shorter than that one.

(这根管子的长度是那根管子的1/7(比那根短6/7)。)

## 5. 度量的表示法

### 1) 长度的表示法 (length)

(1) The wire is two meters long.

The wire is two meters in length.

The length of the wire is two meters.

The wire has a length of two meters.

(那根金属线有两米长。)

(2) The tube is about four centimeters long.

The length of the tube is about four centimeters.

The tube has a length of about four centimeters.

(这根试管长约四厘米。)

(3) The tube is approximately four centimeters long.

The tube is approximately four centimeters in length.

The length of the tube is approximately four centimeters.

The approximate length of the tube is four centimeters.

The tube has a length of approximately four centimeters.

The tube has an approximate length of four centimeters.

(这根试管接近四厘米长。)

(4) The tube is exactly four centimeters long.

The exact length of the tube is four centimeters.

The tube is exactly four centimeters in length.

(这根试管的长正好四厘米。)

(5) The tube is over four centimeters long.

The tube is over four centimeters in length.

The length of the tube is over four centimeters.

The tube has a length of over four centimeters.

(这根试管的长度超过四厘米。)

(6) The tube is slightly over four centimeters long.

The tube is a little over four centimeters long.

The tube is slightly over four centimeters in length.

The length of the tube is slightly (a little) over four centimeters.

The tube has a length of a little over four centimeters.

(这根试管的长度稍大于四厘米。)

(7) The tube is under four centimeters long.

(这根试管的长度不足四厘米。)

(8) The tube is just under four centimeters long.

(这根试管的长度刚不足四厘米。)

(9) The tube is a little (slightly) under four centimeters long.

The tube is a little (slightly) under four centimeters in length.

The length of the tube is a little (slightly) under four centimeters.

The tube has a length of slightly (a little) under four centimeters.

(这根试管的长度稍小于四厘米。)

(10) The tube is just over four centimeters long.

(11) Modern bridges are often several kilometers long.

(12) A modern bridge has sometimes a length of several kilometers.

(13) In our workshop, another automatic operation line over 100 meters long was set up.

## 2) 宽度表示法 (width)

(1) The river is 50 meters wide.

The river is 50 meters in width.

The width of the river is 50 meters.

The river has a width of 50 meters.

The river is 50 meters broad.

(这条河有50米宽。)

(2) It is a big room, ten meters long and five meters wide.

(3) A room five meters long and three meters wide will be enough to hold all these instruments.

(4) This room has a length of 7 meters and a width of 4 meters.

(5) The room is ten feet in length and eight feet in breadth.

The street is 20 meters across.

## 3) 高度的表示法 (height)

(1) The new building is 150 meters high.

The new building is 150 meters in height.

The height of the new building is 150 meters.

The new building has a height of 150 meters.

(那座新建筑物有150米高。)

(2) The mountain is 2150 meters high.

(3) The man is 1.75 meters tall.

The man has a height of 1.75 meters.

- (4) The chimney is 15 meters tall.
- (5) Women are usually about 1.50 meters tall.
- (6) That tree is twenty meters tall.
- (7) The telephone poles are 6.5 meters tall.
- (8) The tallest building in the street has a height of 50 meters.

注：表示高度时，一般用 high 来描写比较圆或比较方的物体。用 tall 来描写高度比宽度大得多的实体。

#### 4) 厚度的表示法 (thickness)

- (1) The steel plate is five mm (= millimeters) thick.

The steel plate is five mm in thickness.

The thickness of the steel plate is five mm.

The steel plate has a thickness of five mm.

(这块钢板有五毫米厚。)

- (2) The pipes are 4.5 centimeters thick.

- (3) The thickness of this tree is  $1\frac{1}{2}$  meters.

(这棵树粗 1.5 米。)

- (4) The pipes have a thickness of 20 centimeters.

- (5) The door is 7 feet in height,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet in width, and

$2\frac{1}{2}$  inches in thickness.

- (6) Telephone poles are usually 7 meters long and 20 centimeters thick.

- (7) The walls of the glass container have a thickness of 15 millimeters.

## 5) 深度表示法 (depth)

(1) The river is three meters deep.

The river is three meters in depth.

The depth of the river is three meters.

The river has a depth of three meters.

(2) The well is 45 meters deep.

The well is 45 meters in depth.

The depth of the well is 45 meters.

The well has a depth of 45 meters.

(3) The sea 100 m from the shore has an average depth of 15 m.

(4) The foundations of the building are 3.9 m deep.

## 6) 面积表示法 (area)

(1) The steel plate is six square meters in area.

The steel plate has an area of six square meters.

The area of the steel plate is six square meters.

(那块钢板的面积为六平方米。)

(2) The steel plate measures three by two meters.

The steel plate is three meters in length and two meters in width.

(那块钢板长三米宽两米。)

(3) A room 8 meters long and 5 meters wide has an area of 40 square meters.

(4) The area of a room 7 meters in length and 4 meters in width is 28 square meters.

(5) Cylinder D has a cross-sectional area of  $23.26 \text{ cm}^2$  and a height of 12 cm.

(6) It covers an area of 147,000 square miles.

- (7) The island is only 0.4 square kilometers in area.
- (8) China is a land with an area of 9,600,000 square kilometers.
- (9) It has a total area of 8,000 square kilometers.
- (10) The area of this floor is 600 square feet.

### 7) 体积表示法 (volume)

- (1) The iron block is 12 cubic centimeters in volume.  
The volume of the iron block is 12 cubic centimeters.  
The iron block has a volume of 12 cubic centimeters.  
(这块铁的体积为12立方厘米。)
- (2) Box A has a volume of  $9\text{m}^3$ .
- (3) The store room has a volume of 800 cubic feet.
- (4) The volume of the sun is 1, 200,000 times greater than that of the earth.

### 8) 重量表示法 (weight)

- (1) The machine weighs 1000 kg.  
The machine is 1000 kg in weight.  
The machine has a weight of 1000 kg.  
(这台机器重1000千克。)
- (2) This stone has a weight of 85 grams.  
This stone weighs 85 grams.  
This stone is 85 grams in weight.  
The weight of this stone is 85 grams.
- (3) This type of car has a weight of 950 kilograms.
- (4) One gallon of water weighs 813 pounds.  
(一加仑水重813磅。)



(5) The weight of an excavator is about one thousand tons.

(一部挖土机约重1千吨。)

(6) A giant panda can weigh as much as 150 kg when fully grown.

(一只大熊猫长大了重量可达150公斤。)

(7) The samples have weights of 18.6, 21.1 and 19.5 kilograms.

(8) The two cylinders of oxygen are 38 kg and 41 kg in weight.

#### 9) 速度表示法 (speed)

(1) Such high-speed jet aircraft have a speed of 700 miles per hour.

The speed of such high-speed jet aircraft is 700 miles per hour.

Such high-speed jet aircraft travel at a speed of 700 miles per hour.

Such high-speed jet aircraft travel at 700 miles per hour.

(这些高速喷气式飞机的速度为700英里/小时。)

(2) The train is running at a rate of 50 miles an hour.

(3) Light travels at the rate of 300,000 kilometers per second.

(4) The electrons move around the nucleus in orbit at a high speed.

(电子围绕原子核沿轨道高速度地旋转。)

(5) As long as thrust and drag equal each other, the plane flies at a constant speed.

- (只要推力与阻力彼此相等, 飞机就以等速飞行。)
- (6) Light has a speed through water of 224 million meters per second.
- (7) Fitted with the new jet engine, a plane can fly at a supersonic speed.  
(装备了新式喷气发动机, 飞机能以超音速飞行。)
- (8) The train was travelling at an ordinary speed.
- (9) Radio waves travel at the speed of light.
- (10) The machine is running at its full speed.
- (11) A few radio active elements break up at a rapid rate.
- (12) It is necessary to develop our industry and agriculture at a great rate.
- (13) The machine run at the rate of 350 revolutions per minute.  
(这台机器以每分钟 350 转速度运转。)
- (14) Light and radiant heat both travel at the tremendous speed of 186,000 miles per second in a vacuum.  
(在真空中光和辐射热都以 186,000 英里/秒的巨大速度传播。)
- (15) Sound waves usually travel through the air at the rate of about three hundred and thirty meters a second.
- (16) We were travelling at a speed of thirty miles an hour.
- (17) A bullet goes from this gun with a velocity of 3,000 feet per second.

#### 10) 温度的表示法 (temperature)

- (1) Alcohol boils at 78°C.

- The boiling point for alcohol is  $78^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
- (2) In air at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  the speed of sound is about 1,087 feet per second.
- (3) Water freezes at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ .  
The freezing point for water is  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
- (4) Water boils at  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$ .  
Water has a boiling point of  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$ .  
The boiling point for water is  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
- (5) At higher temperatures the speed of sound is greater, increasing at the rate of about two feet per second for each degree centigrade.
- (6) His temperature is as high as  $39^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
- (7) The nurse took the temperatures of all the patients.
- (8) The temperature of a person who has a fever is over  $38^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
- (9) Aluminium is a metal which has a melting point of  $660^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
- (10) The temperature in the furnace averages  $900^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

### 11) 角度表示法 (angle)

- (1) These two straight lines pass across each other at right angles.  
(这两条直线交叉成直角。)
- (2) Pressure in a liquid is at right angles to the walls of a container.  
(液体的压力与容器壁垂直。)
- (3) The angle contained by the lines AB and AC is a right angle.  
(AB与AC两线的夹角为一直角。)

(4) Rope A makes an angle of  $30^\circ$  with rope B.

(绳索A与绳索B构成 $30^\circ$ 夹角。)

(5) X axis is  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{normal} \\ \text{perpendicular} \\ \text{at right angles} \end{array} \right\}$  to Y axis.

(x轴与y轴垂直。)

(6) The road turns an abrupt right angle.

(这路突然作九十度的转弯。)

(7) These two lines form a right angle.

(8) The two roads lie at an angle of about 45 degrees.

(这两条路交叉成四十五度角。)

(9) The tree stood at a  $90^\circ$  angle to the ground.

(10) The two planes are at right angles to each other.

(这两个平面互相垂直(或互成直角)。)

## 12) 距离表示法 (distance)

(1) The distance between the two contacts is 2.5 mm.

(2) The distance from London to Paris is about 320 km.

(3) A straight line is the shortest distance between two points.

(4) Our house is ten miles out of town.

(5) Our factory is four miles out of the city.

(6) It is a long way from Beijing to Shanghai.

(7) His home is a long way off.

(8) From the farm to the town is a distance of five miles.

(9) The town is a great distance off.

(10) The farm is at a distance from any railroad.

(农场距任何铁路线均甚远。)

### 13) 半径、直径和圆周表示法 (radius, diameter, circumference)

- (1) Circle A has a radius of three centimeters.
- (2) Circle A has a diameter of six centimeters.
- (3) Circle A has a circumference of 18.84 centimeters.
- (4) Please prepare a pipe 2 meters in length and ten centimeters in diameter to replace this one.

(5) The diameter of the cheaper kinds of household electric wire is approximately 1.3 mm.

The cheaper kinds of household electric wire are 1.3 mm across.

(6) The moon has a radius of 1736 km.

(7) The diameter of the sun is about 7,926 miles,

The sun is about 7,926 miles in diameter.

The sun has a diameter of 7,026 miles.

(8) They cut down a big tree which has a diameter of 12 feet.

(9) This tree has a circumference of six feet.

The circumference of the tree is six feet.

## 6. “种类、分类”表示法

A. 名词: kind, type, variety, sort, form

### 1) kind 种类

(1) This kind of lock is all sold out. we're expecting some in tomorrow.

(这种锁卖完了, 明天就有货到。)

(2) We looked over several kinds of new cars before

choosing one to buy.

(8) He is not the kind of man I like.  
(他不是我所喜欢的那种人。)

(4) The shop is well stocked with goods of all kinds.  
(这家商店里各色货物, 一应俱全。)

(5) These books are all of a kind.  
(这些书都是同一类的。)

(6) What kind of a job are you going to take?

(7) Iron is a kind of matter, but rust is a different kind of matter.

(8) They produce many kinds of industrial products.

(9) This kind of water is hard water.

(10) There are two kinds of relay stations. One kind is on the earth and the other kind is in space.

## 2) sort 种类

(1) The shelves were filled with all sorts of vegetables—eggplants, cucumbers, cabbages, tomatoes.

(2) That's the sort of thing I want.

(3) All sorts of unexpected difficulties cropped up.

(4) What sort of book do you want?

(5) I do dislike doing that sort of thing.

(6) How did he get this sort of ideas into his head?

(7) Try this sort of green tea.

(8) The universities have a special responsibility to send people of that sort out into the world, because by their influence and example in the community at large they can extend the work of the universities to every corner of the world.

(大学应该向社会输送这样的人才，这是他们的特殊职责。因为通过这些人在社会上的影响和榜样，可以把学校的工作推广到社会的每一个角落。)

(9) You can find all sorts of animals in that zoo.

(10) He is a good hand at all sorts of games.

### 3) type 型式, 类型

(1) This is just the type of house I require.

(这正是我所需要的那种房子。)

(2) This type of machine uses three times more fuel oil than that type does.

(3) The switching time of the new-type of transistor is shortened three times.

(新型晶体管的开关时间缩短了2/3。)

(4) The new type of the equipment will reduce the error probability by a factor of 5.

(这种新型的设备将使误差概率降低4/5。)

(5) This type of car has a weight of 950 kilograms.

(6) At present, our country can design and produce semiconductor devices of all types.

(7) Radios of the old type are being replaced by new ones.

(8) The old worker recognized the type of machine directly he saw it.

(9) There are different types of hearings for different purposes.

(10) Bearings are of two types.

### 4) a variety of 各式各样的, 多种多样的, 种种, 各种

(1) Compressed air system aboard ship has a wide vari-

ety of uses.

(船上的压缩空气系统有各种各样的用途。)

- (2) A wide variety of steels have been developed for use in machinery parts.

(已研制出制造机器零件用的各种各样的钢。)

- (3) Among the items of essential equipment in a ship are pumps for a great variety of purposes.

(在船舶必要设备的项目中包括有各式各样用途的泵。)

- (4) This tool is capable of meeting a variety of uses.

(这把刀具能用于各种用途。)

- (5) This shop has a variety of toys.

- (6) His failure was due to a variety of reasons.

- (7) Before you go into the jungle, learn to recognize the varieties of plants that can be eaten.

(在进入丛林之前，你要学会识别各种能吃的植物。)

- (8) Man's knowledge about himself and nature has grown into a variety of sciences.

#### 5) form 形式

- (1) Solids, liquids and gases are all forms of matter.

- (2) Ice, snow, and steam are forms of water.

- (3) All sounds travel in the form of waves.

- (4) Fuels give up their chemical energy in the form of heat energy.

- (5) There are different forms of energy, such as heat energy, sound energy, electric energy and chemical energy.

- (6) Electricity can easily be changed into other forms of energy, such as heat, light and chemical energy.



(7) With the help of symbols, we can express our thoughts in the forms of formulae.

(凭借各种符号的帮助, 我们能用公式的形式表达思想。)

(8) They are different in form but not in meaning.

(9) All forms of matter are composed tiny particles called molecules.

(10) Only aluminium may be largely used in the form of a simple metal.

(只有铝会以纯金属的形式大量地使用。)

## B. 动词

classify, divide into, group, grade, sort

### 1) classify

(1) Elements can be classified as metals and nonmetals.

(2) Friction is usually classified as sliding or rolling.

(摩擦通常划分为滑动摩擦和滚动摩擦。)

(3) Radio waves are classified according to their frequency or wavelength.

(4) We can classify bearings according to their position on the shaft.

(5) These machines can be further classified into five main types.

(6) In the library, books are usually classified by subjects.

(7) Acids and bases can be classified by the properties of their water solution.

(8) Electrical machines are classified as generators and

motors.

## 2) divide into

- (1) These oils can be divided into two categories.  
(这些油可分为两类。)
- (2) We can divide bearings into several classes according to their position on the shaft.
- (3) Compounds can be divided into a number of different classes, the most important of which are acids, bases and salts.
- (4) We divide fluids into liquids and gases.
- (5) Elements may be divided into two groups, metals and non-metals.
- (6) All of the chemical substances we know may be divided into three classes: elements, compounds, and mixtures.

## 3) fall into

- (1) Flow control valves fall into two basic categories.  
(流量控制阀基本上分为两类。)
- (2) The medical application of radioactive materials falls into three main categories.  
(放射性物质在医学上的应用分为三个主要范畴。)
- (3) All changes of matter may fall into two kinds: physical changes and chemical changes.
- (4) Plastics fall into two main groups, thermoplastic and thermosetting.  
(塑料分为两大类: 即热塑性塑料和热固性塑料。)
- (5) These problems fell naturally into several main classes.

(6) Marine pumping equipment falls into two broad classes.

(船用抽水设备可分为两大类。)

(7) Newton's scientific work falls into three main groups, astronomy, optics, and the pure mathematics.

(8) The trees grown here fall roughly into three categories.

(9) In the long history of man's inventiveness, discoveries seem to fall into two classes.

#### 4) group 把...分类, 分组

(1) The data can be grouped under three heads.

(这些资料可分为三大类。)

(2) We can group animals into several types.

(3) It would be better if these books were grouped together under "author" rather than under "subject".

(4) The objects were grouped together according to colour and shape.

(5) Group the shoes together according to size.

#### 5) grade 分等级, 分类

(1) Potatoes are graded according to size and quality.

(2) He graded the students according to ability.

(3) They graded the products according to quality.

#### 6) sort 分类, 整理

(1) Sort these cards according to their colours.

(2) They sorted the eggs according to their size.

## 11. 否定形式

英语中否定的方法很多，按照其不同的形式和意义大致可以归纳为部分否定，全部否定，意义上的否定和双重否定四大类。

### 1. 部分否定(Partial Negation)

具有总括意义的代词，形容词和副词与否定词 not 连用，构成部分否定，表示“不都，并非都”之义。常用的这些词，如：

all, both, every, everybody, everything, altogether, entirely, complete, completely, quite, total, totally, whole, wholly 等。

#### 1) all...not (= not all)

(1) All these things are not mine. = Not all these things are mine.

(这些东西不都是我的。)

(2) All metals are not good conductors. = Not all metals are good conductors.

(3) All of them are not students.

(4) Not all sounds can be heard by the human ear.

(5) Not all matter is visible. Air is not visible, but it is matter.

(6) All forms of matter do not have the same properties.

(7) In a thermal power plant, all the chemical energy of the fuel is not converted into heat.

(在热电站中，燃料的化学能并不全部都转变成热能。)

(8) All metals do not conduct electricity equally well.

(9) All these light metals are not suitable for the making of airplane parts.

(10) All is not gold that glitters.

(发光的东西并非都是金子。)

(11) I do not know all of them.

(对于他们我不是个个都认识的。)

(12) All my friends do not know English.

(13) All minerals do not come from mines.

(14) All uranium atoms do not have the same atomic weight.

(15) All thermometers do not consist of mercury in a glass tube.

(并不是所有的温度计都是用水银装在玻璃管中构成的。)

注：有时“not all the + 名词”这种形式不表部分否定，而表让步意义，表示“即使…也不”，“尽管…也不”，如：

(1) Not all the things we call pleasure could give me any relish. = Even all the things we call pleasure couldn't give me any relish.

(即使我们所有的所谓乐事，也不能给我半点乐趣。)

(2) Not all their nuclear weapons would avail then.

(那时，尽管有多少核武器，也将无济于事了。)

(3) All the weapons of war will not arm fear.

(如果心存胆怯, 尽管有多少件武器, 也壮不起胆来。)

(4) All the wishful thinking in the world won't change this.

(不管怎么样的幻想都改变不了这一点。)

2) both...not (= not both...)

(1) Both the instruments are not precision ones.

= Not both the instruments are precision ones.

(这两件仪器并不全是精密仪器。)

(2) Both of them are not useful.

(它们两个不是都有用。)

(3) Both of the substances do not dissolve in water.

(4) Both of the pens can't be used.

(不是两支笔都能用。)

(5) Both of us don't go there.

(6) Both the answers are not correct.

(7) I can not promote both of you.

(你们两位我不能都提升。)

(8) Both his parents are not at home.

(他的父母不一定都在家。)

(9) Both your plans are not practical.

(你的两个计划不是都可以实行的。)

(10) I don't like both of the novels.

(这两本小说我不是都喜欢。)

3) Every (everybody (one), everything, everywhere) ...not( = not every...)

(1) Not every lathe can work such high-precision tools.

(= Every lathe can not work...)

(不是每一部车床都能加工这种高精度的工具。)

(2) Every machine here is not produced in our factory.

(这里的机器并不全是我们厂生产的。)

(3) Everyone can not do this test.

(并非人人都能做这个试验。)

(4) Everybody doesn't know it.

(5) Everything isn't ready.

(6) Every doctor can't do such an operation.

(7) Such a thing is not found everywhere.

(8) I don't know everything about her.

(9) Not everybody can do the same.

(10) Not everyone who enjoys sporting events likes to participate in them.

(喜欢体育运动的人并不都喜欢参加体育运动。)

(11) Every man cannot be a poet.

(12) Everybody, it is true, wouldn't like it.

#### 4) always (often) 与 not 连用

(1) He is not always late.

(2) Forces do not always produce movement.

(力并不一定总能引起运动。)

(3) A cubic foot of air does not always weigh the same amount.

(4) He is not always happy.

(5) An engine may not always do work at its rated horse-power.

(发动机并非总是以额定马力工作的。)

(6) Friction is not always useless, in certain cases it

becomes a helpful necessity.

(摩擦并非总是无用的,在某些情况下,它是有益的,必需的。)

(7) The good and the beautiful do not always go together.

(善和美不一定时常是相连的。)

(8) A man of learning is not always a man of wisdom.

(有学问的人并不一定是有智慧的人。)

(9) Sounds are produced by vibrating bodies. The vibrations are not often visible but they occur none the less.

(声音是由振动体产生的。振动并不是经常能看得到的,但仍然发生了振动。)

(10) They don't often go to bed late.

5) whole, wholly, entirely, complete, completely, quite, total, totally 等与 not 连用。

(1) The whole plan does not want changing.

(并非全部计划都需要改变。)

(2) He isn't wholly to blame.

(不能全怪他。)

(3) I don't wholly agree.

(我并不完全同意。)

(4) He hasn't paid the whole amount.

(他并未付清全部款项。)

(5) You are not entirely mistaken.

(你并不全错。)

(6) I don't quite agree with you.



(我不完全同意你的意见。)

- (7) He was not completely happy.
- (8) He is not totally wrong.
- (9) We needn't do the whole exercise. Ten sentences will be enough.
- (10) I am afraid I haven't quite finished my essay; could you come back in an hour or so?
- (11) It was quite an attractive town, I suppose, but I don't particularly want to go there again.
- (12) We are not entirely satisfied with the result.
- (13) I can see what you mean. I am not totally blind.

注(1)当 all, everybody, always 等词不是同 not 连用而是与含有否定意义的动词连用时, 不是表部分否定, 而是表全部否定, 如:

- (1) All this is unnecessary. (= Nothing is necessary.)  
(什么也不需要。)
- (2) Everybody was unkind. (= Nobody was kind.)  
(大家都不客气。)
- (3) He was always dissatisfied. (= He was never satisfied.)
- (4) Everyone fails. (= No one succeeds.)
- (5) Both visitors are unwelcome.

注(2) some, somebody, something, somewhere 等词可用来表示部分否定或部分肯定, 如:

- (1) Some people like that sort of thing; some don't.
- (2) Some machines are made by our factory; some are not.

## 2. 全部否定(Absolute Negation)

全部否定表示一种绝对没有的情况，常译作“任何…都不”，“大家都不…”，“全都没有…”，“任何时候都不…”，“无论何处都不…”等。常用的否定词有：no, none, nobody, nothing, nowhere, neither, never, no longer, not…any longer, auxiliary (mod.) v. + not + v. 等。

### 1) no (adj.)

(1) No machine here is produced in our factory.

(2) No lathe can work such high-precision tools.

(3) No one will be allowed smoking here.

(4) Neutrons carry no charge.

(5) No one has ever found a way to create energy out of nothing.

(谁也没有找到一种凭空产生能量的办法。)

(6) No substance is a perfect insulator.

(7) No one is born wise.

(没有人是生来就聪明的。)

(8) She made no comment.

(她没有发表意见。)

(9) To learn a foreign language well is no easy matter.

(10) We have no English classes on Friday.

(11) A physical change is one in which no new substance is formed.

(12) There may be living things on Venus, but we have no evidence of their actual existence.

(13) There was no water for drinking, to say nothing for the watering of the fields.

(14) No one shall violate the regulations for technical operation.

(任何人不得违反技术操作规程。)

## 2) none

(1) None of these electronic devices have ever been used.

(2) None of us will do such a thing.

(3) I wanted some ink, but there was none in the house.

(4) We have none of that paper left.

(5) That's none of your business.

(6) I like none of the books.

(7) None of the students could answer the question.

(8) None of the things are mine.

(9) None of us has bought a bike.

(10) None of us are cadres.

(11) They were all very tired, but none of them would stop to take a rest.

(12) He came to realize his mistake none too late.

(他开始认识到自己的错误为时还不晚。)

(13) The service in this restaurant is none too good.

(这家饭店的服务很不周到。)

注(1) none 指两个以上的人或物。指不可数名词时，谓语用单数，指可数名词时，可用单数，也可用复数谓语动词。no one 只指人，不指物，和它连用的动词用单数。no one, 有时代 none, 以加强语气。

(2) 同 no, no one, none 相应的表部分否定的词是 not

all, 试比较:

(1) None of my friends smoke.

All my friends do not smoke.

(2) No one knows English here.

Not all the students know English here.

(3) No student can do such an experiment.

Not all the students can do such an experiment.

### 3) nobody, nothing

(1) Everybody talks about the weather, but nobody does anything about it.

(人人都在谈论天气, 但面对天气个个无能为力。)

(2) Nobody agrees with you.

(3) Nobody is in the classroom.

(4) Nothing is hard in this world if you dare to scale the height.

(5) I know nothing about German.

(6) I saw nothing wrong with the radio.

(7) There will be nothing mysterious or difficult about the subject if the reader will take one step at a time.

(只要读者循序渐进地进行研究, 那么这门学科就既不神秘也不困难。)

(8) Nothing in the world is difficult for one who sets his mind to it.

(9) There is nobody at the bus stop.

(10) Nobody knows the size of these oilfields. They might be very large, or they might be very small.

(11) Nothing shall prevent us from attaining the advanced

world level in science in the shortest possible period of time.

注：与 nobody 相应的表部分否定的词是 not everybody；与 nothing 相应的表部分否定的词是 not everything, 试比较：

(1) Nobody can do the same.

(没有一个人能这样做。)

Not everybody can do the same.

(并非每个人都能同样做。)

(2) I know nothing about her.

(她的情况我一无所知。)

I don't know everything about her.

(她的情况我并不全知道。)

#### 4) nowhere 无处

(1) The book was nowhere to be found.

(2) My pen is nowhere to be seen.

(3) I have nowhere to go.

(4) The purse is nowhere to be found.

(5) That will take you nowhere.

(你那样做不会成功的。)

(6) I have nowhere to plant them in my garden.

(7) Such methods will get you nowhere.

(这些办法都不会使你得到什么结果。)

(8) There was nowhere for him to go but a small workmen's cafe.

(9) There was nowhere else for me to go.

(10) Your argument is nowhere near convincing.

(你的论点没有一点说服力。)

注：与 nowhere 相应的表示部分否定的词是 not everywhere, 试比较：

Such a thing is nowhere to be found.

(这种事那里都不会有。)

Such a thing is not to be found everywhere.

(这种事并非到处可见。)

5) 助动词(情态动词) + not + 动词 + any(a)... (not 否定谓语句)

(1) The plan does not want any change.

(这个计划完全不需要修改。)

(2) He isn't to blame in any way.

(一点不能怪他。)

(3) You are not mistaken in the least.

(你一点也不错。)

(4) He has not any opportunity for hearing good music.

(5) There isn't going to be any film this week.

(6) There isn't any body in absolute state of rest in the world.

(7) I did not receive any letters yesterday.

(8) He had not seen tall buildings before he came to the big city.

(9) We didn't produce this type of aircraft before.

(10) He did go to meet us at the station, but didn't see us.

(11) We couldn't make tractors before liberation.

(12) We can not see air, but we can breathe it.

(13) You mustn't take the instrument out of the laborat-

ory.

- (14) The instrument may not be where it was.
- (15) I was afraid they might not like the film.
- (16) The book must be in the drawer. It can't be anywhere else.
- (17) You needn't repair the machine, for it operates quite well.
- (18) I didn't have to translate it for him, for he understands English.
- (19) We don't have to work on Saturday afternoons.
- (20) You needn't write to him, for he will be here tomorrow.
- (21) He dare not take up the task alone.
- (22) We shall not see that new film.
- (23) They are not used to the dry weather.
- (24) He is not used to riding the train.
- (25) She used not to do the shopping on her way home from the office.
- used to 的否定式可有下列几种形式:
- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| a. used not to   | b. didn't use to  |
| c. usedn't to    | d. doesn't use to |
| e. never used to |                   |
- (26) He didn't notice the change in temperature.
- (27) Gases do not have any definite shape.
- (28) Air is not a good conductor.
- (29) These electrons are not flowing in the same direction.
- (30) The football match is not to be played today.

(31) You may not leave the laboratory while the experiment is going on.

(32) Plastics don't have to be painted like metal.

(33) Nuclear power station needn't be near railway lines or deep water channels.

(核电站不必靠近铁路线与深水河流旁边。)

(34) This house has not been wired for electricity.

(这屋子还没有装好电线。)

(35) Only atomic energy is not from the sun.

注(1)有的语法家把“用 not 去否定谓语动词”叫做“一般否定 (General Negation)”。

“don't + 主语”所构成的否定疑问句，一般用来表示说话人的“怀疑，不满意”的情绪，往往不是表否定意义，而是含有一种反面意思的肯定句。译时，常有“难道”之语，有“言外”之意的意思，如：

a. Don't you consider it wrong to cheat in examination?

(你不认为考试作弊是不对的?)

b. Didn't I tell you that the machine should be handled with care?

(我不是告诉你要小心操作机器吗?)

c. Don't you know that air, food, and water are indispensable to life?

(你一定知道空气、食物和水对生命是不可缺少的。)

d. Isn't he old?

(意思是 He is very old.)

e. Don't you think it better to translate it this



way?

(难道你不认为这样翻译更好些吗?)

- f. Who doesn't know that? (= Everybody knows that.)

注(3) to be not 与 to be no, to have not 与 have no 的区别:

“no + n.” 常可与 “not a + n.” “not any + n.” 互换使用没有什么差别, 只是 not a, not any 较之 no 更口语化, 更习惯些, 如:

a. I have no tickets. =  $\begin{cases} \text{I have not a ticket.} \\ \text{I have not any tickets.} \end{cases}$

b. I heard him say nothing. = I did not hear him say anything.

c. There are no books on the table. = There are not any books on the table.

d. There is no sugar in the bowl. = There is not any sugar in the bowl.

但必须注意, “be no + n.” 与 “be not + n.” 的意义有所不同。“be no + n.” 表示强烈的否定, 带有感情色彩, 译成“决非, 可不是”。“be not + n.” 是对事实的客观叙述, 不带感情色彩, 译作“不是……”, 如:

a. He isn't a poet.

(他不是诗人。)

He is no poet.

(他决非诗人。)

b. Revolution is not an easy matter.

(革命不是件容易的事。)

Socialist construction is no easy matter.

(社会主义建设决不是一件容易的事。)

c. He is not a technician.

(他不是技术员。)

He is no technician.

(他不懂技术。)

d. It is not a joke.

(这不是笑话。)

It is no joke.

(这是正经事。)

not 否定数词时，译作“少于，不到”，如：

a. The desk is not two feet high. (= The desk is less than two feet high.)

b. My wage is not 100 yuan a month. (= My wage is less than 100 yuan a month.)

c. This building is not twenty meters high.

d. This pipe is not five meters long.

如果“not+数词”意义为“more than”时，要重读数词，如：He is not thirty-five years old, but thirty-seven.

“not+one (once)”意义为“不止一个 (= more than one)”，如：

Not once or twice have the workers of our factory succeeded in inventing new machines. (我们工厂的工人们发明新机器，已经好几次了。one. once 要重读。)

“no+比较级+than” (= as...as) 与“not+比较级+than”意义不同，试比较：

a. Your knife is not sharper than mine.

(你的小刀没有我的锋利。)

Your knife is no sharper than mine.

(两把小刀都不锋利。)

b. This radio is not better than that one.

(这台收音机没有那台好。)

This radio is no better than that one.

(这台收音机同那台一样坏。注意翻译时,要译成与句中形容词所表示的意义正好相反。)

c. This machine is not worse than that one.

(这部机器不会比那部更坏。)

This machine is no worse than that one.

(这部机器同那台机器一样好。)

d. Harry runs not faster than Davy.

(哈里不比戴维跑得更快。)

Harry runs no faster than Davy.

(哈里跑得和戴维一样慢。)

“not less than + 数词”译作“至少、不少于(也许超过)”; “no less than + 数词”译作“有...之多、居然有...”(强调多)。试比较:

a. He has not less than six English books.

(他至少有六本英语书。)(也可能还多,但决不至于少于六本。)

He has no less than six English books.

(他居然有六本英语书。)(意思是:他有六本英语书,可真不少呀!强调多。)

b. There are no less than 50 students in this class.

(这个班的学生有50人之多。)(= just as many as)

There are not less than 50 students in this class.

(这个班的学生至少有50人。)(= at least)

- c. Our school has no less than fifty thousand books in the library.

(我们学校图书馆居然有五万册书。)(表示说话人对这么多的书很惊奇。)

Our school has not less than fifty thousand books in the library.

(我们学校图书馆至少有五万册书。)

- d. There are no less than sixty lathes in the workshop.

(车间的车床有六十台之多。)

- e. He has been studying electronics for no less than ten years.

(他一直在研究电子学不下十年了。)

- f. There are not less than 1000 people at the meeting.

(到会的至少有1000人。)

- g. They have designed not less than six kinds of lathes.

(他们设计了至少六种车床。)

- h. The number of the students is no less than 100.

(学生数有100名之多。)

“no less than + 名词”译作“原来就是…”，如：

He is no less than the Party secretary.

(原来他就是党支书。)

“no more than (= only) + 数词”译作“仅仅、只有、不过”，强调少。“not more than + 数词”(= at most)译作“最多、不超过”。试比较：

a. There are not more than twenty lessons in the text-book.

(这本教科书里至多有二十课。)(可能还不到二十课。)

There are no more than twenty lessons in the text-book.

(这本教科书只有二十课。)(强调太少了。)

b. I have no more than five hundred yuan.

(我仅有500元人民币。)

I have not more than five hundred yuan.

(我至多有500元人民币。)

no more than 后边还可以跟名词、从句等, 如:

Computers do no more than you tell them to do.(计算机只能做你叫它做的事。)

He is no more than an ordinary English teacher.

(他仅仅是个普通的英语教师。)

It's no more than a spot.

(那只不过是一个污点。)

no less...than (= as...as) 同...一样(表示肯定);

not less...than 不亚于, 不次于, 不下于(也许超过),

试比较:

a. He is not less careful than you.

(他的细心不亚于你。)(也许还超过你)

He is no less careful than you.

(他和你一样细心。)

b. This metal is not less hard than that one.

(这种金属的硬度不次于那种。)

This metal is no less hard than that one.

(这种金属和那种金属的硬度是一样的。)

- c. This problem is not less complicated than that one.

(这个问题的复杂程度不亚于那个问题。)

This problem is no less complicated than that one.

(这个问题与那个问题一样复杂。)

- d. The pressure of a gas plays no less important a part than that of a liquid.

(气体压力和液体压力起着同样重要的作用。)

- e. Action is no less necessary to us than thought.

(对我们来说,行为和思想是同样必要的。)

no more...than 译作“同...一样不”(= not any more...than), 表否定; not more...than 译作“不比...更...(也许不如)”, 试比较:

- a. He is not more careful than you.

(他不比你更仔细。)(两人都仔细,但他不如你仔细。)

He is no more careful than you. (= He is not any more careful than you.)

(他和你一样都不够仔细。)(表示两事物比较时,否定双方。)

- b. This tool is not more useful than that one.

(这种工具不比那种更有用。)(两件都有用,但这件不如那件。)

This tool is no more useful than that one.

(这件工具不比那件有用。)(两件都没有用)

- c. He is not more diligent than you.

(他不比你更用功。)(两人都用功,但他比不上你)

He is no more diligent than you.

(你不用功,他同样不用功。)

d. He can no more swim than I can fly.

(他不能游泳,就跟我不能飞行一样。)

e. Knowledge can no more be acquired without hard work than swimming can be learned without constant practice.

(不下苦功夫学不到知识,正如不经常实践学不会游泳一样。)

“not half + 某些行为动词”表“非常”,“相当”。

not half bad = not at all bad “相当好,很不错,挺好”。

a. Your room is not half bad.

(你的房间相当好。)

b. The show was not half bad.

(这个电影很不错。)

c. His first attempts at painting are not half bad.

(他初学绘画的成绩相当好。)

d. They didn't half support my proposal.

(他们十分支持我的建议。)

e. She didn't half cry.

(她号啕大哭。)

f. We didn't half enjoy ourselves.

(我们过得十分愉快。)

## 6) not + 非谓语句动词

A. 用 not 否定不定式(短语)

(1) You must take care not to damage the machinery.

- (2) You must always remember not to become conceited.
- (3) She walked softly so as not to make any noise.
- (4) He listened attentively so as not to miss a single word.
- (5) We hurried so as not to be late.
- (6) Thermal expansion of solids is so small as not to be detected by our eyes.
- (7) Be sure not to make mistakes in your calculations.
- (8) I am sorry not to have done the work well.
- (9) They thought it a pity not to have invited her.
- (10) He pretended not to have seen me.
- (11) I went to see him off, not to meet him.
- (12) The teacher told his pupils not to make such a mistake again.

B. 用 not 否定分词(短语):

- (1) Not knowing what to say, he kept silent.
- (2) Not having been told when to start, he came late.
- (3) Not wanting to interrupt them, he remained motionless, as if asleep.
- (4) The little child, not knowing what to do, started to cry.
- (5) Not understanding its meaning, he asked the teacher to explain the word.
- (6) Not given careful consideration, the work can not be easily completed.

C. 用 not 否定动名词(短语)

- (1) We feel sorry for not coming on time.



(2) We made it the rule not being allowed to smoke in the room.

(我们制定一项规定，不许在室内吸烟。)

(3) It's no use buying books but not reading them.

(4) One of the advantages of synthetic materials is not being corroded by rust.

(合成材料的优点之一就是不会锈蚀。)

(5) I must apologize for not letting you know earlier.

(6) I don't like the idea of our not helping him at all.

(7) What's troubling them is their not having machine tools.

(8) I regret not having seen the exhibition.

#### 7) 用 not 否定状语

当主句是否定式谓语，后接状语时，有时否定的不是主句的谓语动词，而是状语，如：

(1) You can't judge a thing only by its looks.

(你不能光凭外表来判断一件事情。)

(2) I'm not feeling very well today. My head aches.

(我今天感到不舒服，头痛。)

(3) Oil is not the only common lubricant; graphite is also commonly used.

(油不是唯一常见的润滑剂，石墨也用得很普遍。)

(4) In general, the speed of sound is not very much greater in a liquid than in a gas.

(一般说来，声音在液体中传播的速度比在气体中高出不  
是很多。)

(5) Most synthetic fibres do not easily take in moisture.

(大多数合成纤维不容易吸收水分。)

## 8) 用 not 否定宾语补足语

- (1) I found myself not very well.  
(我觉得自己身体不舒服。)
- (2) I found it not difficult to divert his attention.  
(我觉得要转移他的注意力是不难的。)
- (3) We found it not difficult to transform a. c. into d. c.
- (4) They found it not possible to get everything ready in time.

## 9) not 否定宾语从句

英语中有些带宾语从句的复合句，表面上看起来否定的是主句，实际上否定的是从句，要求这类宾语从句的词如：think, believe, expect, suppose, fancy, imagine 等。

- (1) I don't think it will rain.  
(我想不会下雨。)
- (2) He doesn't believe you are right.  
(他认为你不对。)
- (3) I don't suppose anyone will object to the plan.  
(我想不会有谁反对这个计划。)
- (4) I do not fancy we can win easy victories.  
(我认为不能轻易取胜。)
- (5) He doesn't expect we need worry.  
(他认为我们不必着急。)
- (6) I don't imagine they have finished the job yet.  
(我想他们还没有完成工作。)
- (7) I don't believe he's coming back soon.  
(我认为他不会很快回来。)
- (8) I don't think it's right to make such a hasty decision.

(我认为如此仓促地作出决定是不正确的。)

(9) I don't think that you will have any difficulty in getting a driving licence.

(我想你领一张驾驶执照是没有问题的。)

(10) I don't imagine these young people are dropouts.

(我想这些年轻人不是退学生。)

(11) I don't feel I can stand it much longer.

(我觉得我不能再忍受下去了。)

(12) I don't expect he needs help.

(我想他不需要帮助。)

(18) I like him, but I don't think he is the right person for the job.

(我喜欢他, 但我认为他干这工作不合适。)

#### 10) not 否定原因状语从句或短语

当主句是否定式谓语, 后接表原因的 because 从句或短语时, 中间如无逗号分开, 否定的重点很可能不是主句的谓语动词, 而是 because 从句或短语, 如:

(1) He wasn't late because he started late.

(他不是因为动身晚了才迟到的。)(= He was late not because...)

(2) The mountain is not valuable because it is high. (=

The mountain is valuable not because...)

(山并不因其高而有价值。)

(3) We didn't call because we were afraid.

(我们不是因为怕而去访问的。)

(4) The machine does not stop on account of the shortage of oil.

(这台机器不是因缺油而停转。)

- (5) Don't give up because it is difficult.  
(不要因为困难放弃。)
- (6) I didn't despise him because he was inexperienced.
- (7) You shouldn't despise a man because he is poor.  
(别因他贫穷而加以轻视。)
- (8) I didn't leave home because I was afraid of my father.
- (9) They didn't take away the box because they were in need of firewood.  
(他们不是因为要柴火而把木箱拿走。)
- (10) They didn't turn him down because his English was inadequate.

#### 11) never

- (1) The two terminals of the d. c. source should never be interchanged.  
(直流电源的两端决不应互换。)
- (2) They have never seen such a device.
- (3) The moon will never be so large as the sun.
- (4) A compound never looks like or is like the elements that compose it.  
(化合物看上去从来不象，或者说根本不同于它的组成元素。)
- (5) Never get on or off the bus before it comes to a stand still.  
(车未停稳，切勿上下。)
- (6) People have never stopped their research for new and better materials.
- (7) Each element always breaks up into one that has

less, never more, atomic energy.

(每一种元素总是蜕变成一种具有较小而决非更大原子能的元素。)

(8) Never in my life have I heard or seen such a thing.

(9) Never has a machine been so efficient and accurate as the electronic computer.

(10) Never has oil been so important as it is today.

注：与 never 相应的表示部分否定的词是 not always, 试比较：He is never here in the morning. (他上午从不在这里。)

He is not always here in the morning.

(他上午并不都在这里。)

12) neither (nor) (*adj. pron. conj. adv.*)

(1) Neither book is exactly what I want.

(2) The lesson was not long. Neither was it difficult. (= It was not difficult either.)

(3) The enemy could neither make any advance, nor could they retreat.

(4) A gas has neither shape nor volume of its own.

(5) Glass does not conduct electricity. Neither (or not) does wood.

(6) About a century ago men had neither electric light nor electric motor.

(7) The early planes could fly neither high nor far.

注 (1) 注意 neither 与 not...either 的转换, 如:

a. He doesn't work in a factory, and neither do they. = He doesn't work in a factory. They don't work in a factory, either.

- b. You didn't need any help, and neither did he.  
= You didn't need any help. He didn't either.
- c. He hasn't finished his experiment yet. Neither have I. = He hasn't finished his experiment. I haven't either.
- d. A gas has neither shape nor volume of its own.  
A gas has no volume of its own, and it has no shape of its own either.

但要注意下列句中的 neither 与 either 的意思，一个表否定，一个表肯定，如：

Neither of the two books is good.

(这两本书都不好。)

Either of the two books is good.

(这两本书随便那一本都好。)

注(2)当 neither 用作副词时，一般可用 nor 代替，但 neither 只表示两个人或物，nor 可用于两个或多个个人或物。因此当表示多个人或物时，二者不能互换，只能用 nor，如：

He can't understand the book. Nor can I, nor can you, nor can anybody.

注(3)与 neither 或 not...either 相应的表部分否定的词是 not both. 试比较：

I can not promote both of you.

(你们两位我不能都提升。)

I can not promote either of you. (= I can promote neither of you.)

(你们两位我都不能提升。)

13) no longer = not...any longer 不再，已不

(1) China today is no longer the China of the past.

- (2) No longer is television just a laboratory marvel.  
(电视已经不再仅仅是实验室的奇迹了。)
- (3) Since we have opened up a number of big oilfields, our country does not depend on foreign countries for oil any longer.
- (4) He was no longer allowed to enter the school.
- (5) She is no longer living here.
- (6) Science is no longer on march but on swift wings.  
(科学不再是往前迈进, 而是在往前飞奔。)
- (7) The dry steam is no longer a vapour, and may be considered as a gas.  
(干蒸气不再是水蒸气, 而可以当作一般气体。)
- (8) No longer does the airman have to guess what lies ahead of him in the way of weather.  
(飞行员不再需要猜测未来气候情况如何。)
- (9) Most apparatuses are no longer imported but are made in our own factories.  
(大部分仪器已经不再从外国进口, 而是由我们自己的工厂制造。)
- (10) Taming the deserts is no longer a dream of remote future but a practical activity.  
(驯服沙漠已经不再是遥远将来的理想, 而是一个实际行动。)
- (11) The new lathe must be sent to our workshop at once, we can't wait any longer.
- (12) Once nitrogen is combined, it is not chemically inert any longer.  
(氮气一经化合, 在化学上就不再是惰性气体了。)

14) no more = not...any more 不再, 再也不, 也不

- (1) The sound was heard no more.
- (2) He broke his leg. He can't play football any more.
- (3) People can't close their eyes to the facts any more.  
(人们再也不能闭眼不看事实了。)
- (4) The temperature of the boiling water does not rise any more.
- (5) He took care not to make the same mistake in calculation any more.
- (6) He sold his camera. He doesn't have it any more.
- (7) They moved away from Fifth Street. They don't live there any more.
- (8) Time lost will return no more.  
(失去的时间不会再来。)
- (9) You don't know Spanish, no more does he. (= nor does he.)
- (10) Glass can not conduct electricity, no more can rubber. (= neither can rubber.)

注: no more, no longer, not...any more, not...any longer 四者意思相同。一般表示数量及程度时, 多用no more; 表示时间时用 not...any more, no longer, not... any longer.

15) There be + no + v-ing 不可能...; 无法...

to be no use / no good + v-ing ...是无益的; ...没有用处

- (1) There is no holding back the wheel of history.  
(历史车轮不可阻挡。)
- (2) There is no mistaking it.



(不可能误会这一点。)

- (3) There is no failing in the test.  
(不可能在实验中失败。)
- (4) There is no telling what will happen.  
(无法预言将会发生什么情况。)
- (5) There is no saying what he'll be doing next.
- (6) There is no hiding of evil but not to do it.
- (7) There's no bearing such rude remarks.
- (8) There is no knowing whether he will come or not.
- (9) There is no telling what he's going to do.
- (10) There's no denying the fact that their products are better in quality than ours.
- (11) It's no use buying books but not reading them.
- (12) It's no use your pretending that you didn't know the rules.
- (13) It's no use trying to phone him.
- (14) It's no good talking with him about it any more.
- (15) It's no use getting impatient when you are stuck in a traffic jam.
- (16) It's no good arguing—you can't go out tonight, and that's final!
- (17) It's no use putting a notice up; no one will ever read it.
- (18) I shall never be able to afford a new car, so it's no use even thinking about it.
- (19) It's no good pretending to know what you don't know.
- (20) It's no good heating the material to such a tempera-

ture.

(21) It's no use taking English lessons if you are not ready to work hard.

(22) It would be no good our having more garden than we could manage.

(23) It wouldn't be any good my asking for his help.

(24) It wasn't much use my telling them that I didn't know the rules.

16) not so much as

without so much as

} 甚至不，连…都不… (= not even)

(1) He does not so much as understand this law.

(他甚至连这个定律都不了解。)

(2) He hurried away without so much as leaving an address.

(他匆忙离去，连地址都没有留下。)

(3) He did not so much as turn his face.

(他连头也没有回一下。)

(4) He went away without so much as saying good-bye to me.

(5) I don't know him, indeed I have not so much as heard his name.

(6) He can not so much as write his own name.

(7) Half an hour having passed, he hadn't so much as started writing.

(8) I haven't so much as heard of the material, much less do I know its properties.

(9) He didn't so much as say thank you.

17) not the least, not in the least 一点也不, 一点也没有

(1) Though I had given him my address, I did not in the least expect that he would come to see me.

(2) I don't understand in the least what the author is trying to say.

(3) I am not in the least against putting the meeting off.

(我一点也不反对会议延期。)

18) to say nothing of = not to mention = not to speak of = let alone. 不要说...; 不提...; 更不必说; 更何况

(1) The structure of the simple sentence is not clear to me, to say nothing of the complex sentence.

(我连简单句都搞不清楚, 更不用说复合句了。)

(2) Even the students found the story difficult to understand, not to mention the pupils.

(就是大学生也感到这个故事不好理解, 别说小学生了。)

(3) In old China there was no electronics industry, not to speak of making computers.

(4) She has not learnt the alphabet, not to mention words.

(她连字母都没学, 别说单词了。)

(5) He does not know English, not to mention French and German.

(6) He could not even swim across a small stream, not to mention a river as broad as this.

### 3. 意义上的否定(Negation in meaning)

英语中有些句子，从字面上看并无否定词，但却表达否定意义，这种否定形式叫做意义上的否定，有的语法家也叫做“半否定式”(semi-negation)。

#### 1) 含有否定意义的动词：

A. fail + to + inf. 没有、不能、忘记

(1) I failed to understand.

(2) They have failed to give any answer.

(他们未能作出答复。)

(3) Newton's laws fail to describe the motion of electrons in atoms.

(牛顿的一些定律未能阐述电子在原子里面的运动。)

(4) Galileo recognized the problem of the water pump, but failed to solve it.

(伽利略曾意识到水泵的问题，但未能解决。)

(5) From time to time a theory fails to account for a new observation.

(常常一种理论不能解释某种新观察到的现象。)

(6) The experiment fails to show the ratios that we expected.

(这个试验没有能表明我们所预期的比率。)

(7) This model fails to provide a satisfactory explanation for some of the behaviour of light that we observed.

(这种模型未能对我们所观察到的光的某些性能提供满意的解释。)

(8) He failed to come on time. We had to go without him.

(9) He failed to see my meaning.

(10) I'm sorry I've failed to live up to the expectation of the Party.

B. decline 不肯(接受), 婉言谢绝

(1) They declined to stay here for supper.

(他们不肯留下吃晚饭。)

(2) They declined further comment on the proposal.

(他们不肯对这项建议作更多的评论。)

(3) He declined to say at what hour the attack was to be launched.

(他不肯说明将在什么时候时发起进攻。)

(4) She declined, naturally, to have anything to do with us.

(不出所料, 她不肯同我们交往。)

(5) The witness declined to answer certain questions put to him.

(证人不肯回答向他提出的某些问题。)

(6) They declined to come to our party.

(他们不肯来参加我们的晚会。)

(7) He declined the invitation with thanks.

(他辞谢了邀请。)

(8) The man declined my offer of help.

(那人婉谢我的援助之意。)

C. refuse 拒绝, 不肯接受

(1) When very ill, she refused medicine.

(病重时, 她药也不肯吃了。)

- (2) The motor refused to start.  
(马达开不动。)
- (3) He was wounded but refused to leave the line.  
(他受了伤, 但不肯离开火线。)
- (4) They worked round the clock, refusing to go home.  
(他们日夜不停地干, 家都不肯回了。)
- (5) He stubbornly refused to be taught by these mistakes.

(他顽固地不肯从这些错误中吸取教训。)

- (6) He refused my offer of help.

D. deny 否认, 否定, 不给予

- (1) He denied that he had leaked their reports to Anderson.

(他否认把他们的报告泄漏给了安得森。)

- (2) He denied making any statement to that effect.

(他否认作过这样的声明。)

- (3) He denied having ever been there.

(他否认到过那里。)

- (4) Lots of people were thus denied the right to vote.

(就这样许多人被剥夺了选举权。)

- (5) He was glad to be denied this opportunity.

(没给他这个机会, 他倒也很高兴。)

- (6) We should deny ourselves every luxury and extravagance.

(我们应该放弃一切奢侈和挥霍。)

- (7) He was too busy so he denied himself to the visitors yesterday.

(他昨天太忙了所以不会客。)

E. lack 缺乏, 不具备 v. n.

- (1) We still lack experience in the building of socialism.  
(在社会主义建设中, 我们经验还不足。)
- (2) They lacked some raw materials.  
(他们缺乏一些原料。)
- (3) They lacked a clear understanding of the problem.  
(他们对这个问题缺乏清楚的认识。)
- (4) Some of the works lack artistic quality.  
(有些作品艺术性不强。)
- (5) He is lacking in common sense.  
(他缺乏常识。)
- (6) Some comrades, however, were lacking enthusiasm.  
(但是有些同志还缺乏热情。)
- (7) Money was still lacking for the project.  
(这项工程还缺资金。)
- (8) All that is lacking of good co-ordination.  
(现在就是配合不够。)
- (9) The plants died for lack of water.
- (10) Faults may develop in the motor for lack of lubrication.  
(电动机可能由于缺少润滑而发生故障。)
- (11) His behavior shows his lack of consideration for others.  
(他的行为显示出他没有顾到别人。)

F. want 缺少, 差

- (1) The book wants a page at the end.  
(这本书最后缺一页。)
- (2) It wants half an hour to the appointed time.

(离约定的时间还差半小时。)

(3) His answer wants politeness.

(他的回答不够客气。)

(4) The picture wants something of perfection.

(这张画有些美中不足。)

(5) It wants one inch of the regular length.

(它比规定的长度少一寸。)

(6) The plants died for want of water.

(7) Your work shows want of care.

(8) There is a want of confidence in him.

(9) He failed for want of help.

(他因为没有帮助而失败了。)

G. keep...from 使...不做某事, 防止, 阻止

(1) Urgent business kept me from calling on you.

(我有急事, 因此无法拜访你。)

(2) We must keep them from getting to know our plans.

(千万不要让他们知道我们的计划。)

(3) The rain kept us from going out.

(4) Because germs cause disease, it is important to keep these tiny creatures from entering the body with our food.

(5) Good lubrication keeps the bearings from being damaged.

(6) Keep the news from him, he will tell everyone about it.

(7) The doctor advised me to keep from smoking.

(8) Keep from drink and you will be all right in a few days.



(把酒戒掉, 过几天你就好了。)

(9) The noise from the street kept him from sleeping.

(10) Nowadays we try to keep our rivers free of (or from) town and factory waste.

(现在我们努力使河流不受城镇和工厂废物的污染。)

H. prevent...from 使...不致于; 阻止

(1) Urgent business prevented me from calling on you.

(我因急事没能去拜访你。)

(2) What prevented you from coming to the meeting yesterday?

(3) Gravity prevents us from falling off the earth.

(4) We must prevent the trouble from spreading.

(5) This prevents the water from escaping.

(6) The heavy snow prevented us from coming.

(7) Bad weather prevented them from finishing the work in time.

(8) As rubber prevents electricity from passing through it, it is often used as an insulating material.

(9) Very loud sounds can even prevent people from hearing clearly.

(10) I was prevented from arriving on time by a delay in the railway system.

注: prevent...from 与 keep...from 意义和用法相同, 二者可以互换使用。类似的词还有 hinder, deter, stop, prohibit, restrain 等。forbid 后边不能用 from, 只能接不定式, 如:

(1) His father prohibited him from smoking.

His father forbade him to smoke.

(2) They ought to stop the rich from robbing the poor.

(他们应当不让富人再掠夺穷人。)

(3) They built a fence to restrain local children from falling into the swimming pool.

(4) Your endless talking hinders me from my work.

(5) The fence along the middle of the road is intended to hinder the traffic from crashing.

(6) How do you stop children from playing with matches?

(7) Why do park keepers always prohibit people from walking on the grass?

(8) Visitors are prohibited from feeding the animals.

(9) Will atomic weapons deter powerful nations from war?

(10) Bad weather deterred us from going out.

I. be free from (of) 不受, 没有, 脱离

(1) We should be free from arrogance and rashness at any time.

(我们在任何时候都应该不骄不躁。)

(2) This laboratory is free from outside sound.

(这座实验室不受外界声音的干扰。)

(3) In some substances the external electrons of the atoms are relatively free from the attractive force of the nucleus.

(某些物质的外层电子相对的不受原子核吸引力的束缚。)

(4) The working place must be kept free from chips and

dirt.

(工作场地必须保持没有切屑和脏物。)

(5) A telescope in space would be free of atmospheric disturbing effects.

(在太空中望远镜就会免受大气层干扰的影响。)

(6) I am free from work today.

(我今天不上班。)

(7) The multi-purpose use of industrial waste makes it possible to keep the environment free from pollution.

(8) This lake is free of ice in winter.

(这湖冬天不结冰。)

(9) The feed-water should be pure, and free from dissolved salts.

(锅炉给水必须纯净, 不含溶解的盐分。)

(10) These elements are shielded so that they are free from the influence of magnetic field.

(这些元件已加屏蔽, 因此不受磁场影响。)

J. be short of 不足, 短缺

(1) We are short of hands at present.

(2) We shall try to finish the work in time though we are short of manpower.

(3) Uranium-235 differs from u-238 in being short of 3 neutrons.

(4) The result fell short of my expectation.

(这个结果出乎我的预料。)

(5) The arrow fell short of mark.

(箭未击中。)

(6) We have run short of tea.

(7) We have reason to believe that our education falls short of what we should wish it to be.

(我们有充分的理由认为我国的教育还没有达到所理想的境地。)

(8) we are now short of fuel.

(9) The encircled enemy troops are running short of food and ammunition.

(被包围的敌军快要弹尽粮绝了。)

K. blind to, to be blind to

(使)…看不见

(1) You can not blind yourself to the true facts, the position is hopeless.

(2) The desire to climb the mountain blinded Jim to all the difficulties.

(3) His feelings for her beauty blinded him to her faults.

## 2) 含有否定意义的副词

A. hardly, scarcely 几乎不…, 很难

(1) We can hardly consider the theory apart from the facts on which it is based.

(我们不能把理论与它所依据的事实分开考虑。)

(2) This transistor radio is so light that you hardly notice you are carrying it.

(这种晶体管收音机很轻, 几乎感觉不到是带在身边。)

(3) Pure water hardly conducts an electric current at all, but it becomes a good conductor if salt is dissolved in it.

(4) He would hardly recognize his hometown if he saw

it now.

(5) Hardly is it possible to increase the speed of this car.

(6) Scarcely did he speak about the difficulties in his work.

(7) There are many substances through which currents will scarcely flow at all.

(有很多物质几乎是完全不导电的。)

(8) There are scarcely any power plant which can convert more than 55% of the fuel energy into electric energy.

(9) He can scarcely make both ends meet.

(他几乎不能使收支平衡。)

(10) It scarcely matters.

(没有什么关系。)

(11) He said she had hardly ever been late for work; in fact, she had usually been one of the first to arrive.

(12) when I first went to Germany, I could hardly speak a word of the language.

(13) We must get some tea tomorrow, there's hardly any left.

(14) He hardly ever goes to work on Saturdays.

(15) He's no friend of mine; in fact I hardly know him.

(16) Hardly any of the students did well on the test, so the teacher explained the lesson again.

B. seldom, rarely 很少, 难得

- (1) He seldom goes out on Sunday.  
(他很少在星期天出去。)
- (2) We seldom if ever observe a body that has no force acting on it.  
(我们很难观察到不受力作用的物体。)
- (3) Seldom have I read a novel so touching as this.
- (4) Seldom does a single metal have all the properties needed for a particular job.  
(单单一种金属很少会具有某一特定工作所需要的全部性能。)
- (5) He seldom gets a chance to read.
- (6) We rarely go dancing.
- (7) You seldom hear a pure tone, which would be one wavelength of sound, and you seldom see a "pure" color of a single wavelength.  
(你难得听到一个纯音调, 即仅仅是单一波长的声音, 你也难得看到单一波长的“纯”颜色。)
- (8) I have seldom made such a terrible mistake.
- (9) Seldom did they think of going there, and they never had a chance.

### 3) 含有否定意义的代词 little, few “没有多少, 几乎没有”

- (1) There is little oil in the tank.  
(油箱里没有什么油了。)
- (2) Metals, generally, offer little resistance and are good conductors.  
(通常, 金属几乎没有电阻, 因而是良导体。)
- (3) There's little point in doing anything about it, is there?

(对这件事做什么也没有多大用处, 是不是?)

(4) An insulator is a substance that contains few free electrons.

(绝缘体是一种几乎不含有自由电子的物质。)

(5) Before liberation, there were few large factories in the town.

(6) He has few good reasons for staying, has he?

(他没有多大理由留下来, 是不是?)

(7) This early theory of atoms was of little practical use.

(8) Indeed, if metals were unable to form alloys, they would be of little service to man.

(9) Rockets can go where there is little or no air, and far beyond the range of balloons and aeroplanes.

(火箭能够到达几乎没有或根本没有空气的地方, 因此大大超过了气球和飞机的飞行范围。)

(10) There are few people who have covered the whole range of disciplines.

(对所有专业都进行过研究的人几乎没有。)

(11) Little did we think his speech had made so deep an impression on his audience.

(我们没有想到他的报告给听众留下那么深刻的印象。)

(12) Little do we suspect that this district is rich in mineral resources.

(我们不怎么怀疑这个地区矿产资源丰富。)

(13) The government did its best to control inflation. However, these efforts met with little success.

#### 4) 含有否定意义的连词

A. unless = if...not

- (1) Unless the water is pure, it will need further treatment.
- (2) Unless you work hard, you will let down the Party.  
(如果你工作不努力, 就对不起党。)
- (3) Unless she comes soon, I'm going to leave.
- (4) Unless it rains this afternoon, we'll play tennis.
- (5) We'll lose the game unless we practice a lot.
- (6) Unless you obey the rules, you'll get in trouble.
- (7) You'll have to leave the classroom unless you stop talking.
- (8) Unless she gets up right away, she'll be late.
- (9) I'll wait for you unless it rains.
- (10) I'd be tired unless I got enough sleep every night.

B. rather than, sooner than 而不是...

这种表示“选择, 取舍”的句子, 后面一部分含有否定意义。

- (1) It may be easier to apply a force by pushing down rather than by pulling up.  
(向下推容易用力, 向上举不容易用力。)
- (2) Such very close unions are known as compounds rather than mixtures.  
(这种非常紧密的结合物叫做化合物而不是混合物。)
- (3) When the cutting speed is over 500 meters per second, cutting temperatures decrease rather than increase.



(当切削速度超过每秒500米时, 切削温度下降而不是上升。)

(4) He would sooner die than surrender.

(宁死不屈。)

(5) In a solid-fuel rocket, the reaction of fuel mixture is relatively slow and steady rather than explosive.

(在固体燃料火箭中, 燃料混合物的反应比较缓慢而稳定, 而不是爆发性的。)

(rather than 的用法, 请参阅《比较表示法》4.2))

(6) He is an ordinary worker rather than a cadre.

C. more than, more...than

more than 引导的从句往往有否定意义。

(1) This work is more than I can.

(这项工作非我所能胜任。)

(2) He is more brave than wise.

(他有勇无谋。)

(3) The beauty of the West Lake is more than words can tell.

(西湖之美非言语所能描述。)

(4) He is wiser than to do so.

(他不至于这样做。)

(5) Clearly New China was more beloved abroad than Chinese knew.

(显然新中国在国外受到的爱戴是中国人所不知道的。)

(6) His violent temper is more than I can stand.

(他那粗暴的脾气, 我受不了。)

(7) Science is more than a mere accumulation of carefully collected facts.

(科学不仅是许多仔细收集起来的事实的积累。)

(8) China now is more than self-sufficient in grain.

(现在中国在粮食方面不仅是自给自足。)

D. other than, otherwise than

(1) He is otherwise than I thought.

(他不是我所想象的那样的人。)

(2) How can it be otherwise than fatal?

(这怎么可能不是致命的呢?)

(3) How can I do otherwise than laugh?

(我怎能禁得住不笑呢?)

(4) The result was quite other than what we expected.

(结果跟我们所预料的完全不同。)

(other than 的用法请参阅《比较表示法》7.5)

E. let alone 至于...更不必说,且莫提,更不用说(常用于否定句)(= to say nothing of = not to mention = not to speak of)

(1) In those days the peasants couldn't send their children to middle school, let alone college.

(2) Before liberation this factory could not even repair a car, let alone manufacture one.

(3) At that time we didn't have enough water to drink, let alone water to irrigate the land.

(4) He can't drive a car, let alone a truck.

(5) We do not hesitate to give our lives for communism, let alone suffer some hardships.

(我们不惜为共产主义献出生命,更不必说吃点苦了。)

- (6) We've no hospital, let alone an isolation ward.  
 (7) He can't add two and two, let alone do fractions.

F. much less, still less } 更不...; 何况...  
 much more, still more }

- (1) We fear no death, still less difficulties.  
 (= still less do we fear difficulties.)  
 (我们死都不怕, 何况困难。)
- (2) I don't like smoking, much less drinking.  
 (我不喜欢吸烟, 更不必说喝酒了。)
- (3) I didn't even speak to him, much less (did I) discuss  
 your problem with him.
- (4) George can hardly understand arithmetic, much less  
 algebra.  
 (乔治连算术都不会, 更别提代数了。)
- (5) I didn't even see Old Wang, much less speak to  
 him.
- (6) I was forbidden to see him, still more to talk  
 to him. (= and I was still more forbidden to talk  
 to him.)  
 (我见他都不准, 更不用说同他谈话了。)
- (7) It is difficult to understand his books, much more  
 his lectures. (= and it is much more difficult to...)

### 5) 介词所表达的否定意义

A. without

- (1) The catalyst accelerates reactions without changing  
 itself.
- (2) He has gone without (talking) his umbrella.
- (3) They left the room without locking the front door.

- (4) They went out without telling us where they were going.
- (5) We drove through several towns without stopping.
- (6) He put the envelope in his pocket without opening it.
- (7) For several days they were without food.
- (8) We are still without news of the missing vessel.
- (9) She went to work without any breakfast.
- (10) He went out without saying a word.
- (11) He was without fear in face of danger.

(他临危不惧。)

- (12) My teacher told me his mind without reserve.

(我老师毫无保留地跟我谈了心。)

B. instead of

- (1) Instead of losing hope, he went on working with fresh courage.
- (2) Instead of borrowing a book from the library, she borrowed two magazines.
- (3) Instead of ringing her up, I wrote her a long letter.
- (4) We're spending our holidays at home this year instead of going to the seaside.
- (5) They went there on foot instead of by bus.
- (6) Instead of criticizing her, we ought to praise her for it.
- (7) In radio, television, and radar, messages are carried

by radio waves instead of electric current.

(在无线电、电视和雷达里, 信息是由无线电波而不是由电流传送。)

(8) It is gravity that makes things fall down instead of up.

(9) Production increases quickly instead of slowly.

(10) That increased instead of decreased our anxiety.

(11) The experiment is to be made in the open instead air instead of in the laboratory.

(12) They insisted to stay in instead of to go out.

(13) That English letter was type written instead of printed.

C. above

(1) He is above deceit.

(他不会欺骗人。)

(2) The problem is above me.

(这个问题我不懂。)

(3) They are certainly above telling lies.

(他们当然不会撒谎。)

(4) All these men are honest and above bribery.

(这些人都很诚实, 不会行贿、受贿。)

(5) His conduct is above criticism.

(他的行为是无可非议的。)

(6) I am sure he is above such pretty tricks.

(我肯定他不会搞这种卑鄙勾当。)

D. beyond

(1) The book is quite beyond me.

(我看不懂这本书。)

(2) His story is beyond belief.

(他所讲的不足信。)

(3) The work is beyond the child's power.

(这孩子不会做这工作。)

(4) The work is beyond the reach of my ability.

(我不能任这项工作。)

(5) The scenery is beautiful beyond my description.

(风景之美，我简直无法形容。)

(6) The success of this experiment is beyond comparison.

(这次实验的成功是无可比拟的。)

(7) The failure arose from circumstances beyond our control.

(失败是由于一些我们无法控制的情况造成的。)

(8) This is beyond my comprehension.

(我真不能理解这个。)

E. out of

(1) This book is out of print.

(这本书不再复印了。)

(2) We are talking him out of doing this.

(我们正在说服他不要做这件事。)

(3) What you have said is out of the question.

(你所说的是不可能的。)

(4) They watched the balloon till it was out of sight.

(他们注视着气球，一直到看不见为止。)

(5) His proposal was quite out of place.

(他的提议是很不适当的。)

(6) The machine seems to be out of gear.

- (这台机器似乎是开不动。)
- (7) He is out of the office today.  
(他今天不在办公室。)
- (8) The team leader's feeling thoroughly out of sorts this morning.  
(队长今天早上感到身体很不好。)
- (9) He has been out of touch with most of his old friends.  
(他至今与大多数老朋友不相往来。)
- F. but (anything but = not in the least)
- (1) The work is anything but easy.  
(这工作一点也不容易。)
- (2) He is anything but prudent.  
(他一点也不谨慎。)
- (3) That support is anything but safe.  
(这个支柱一点也不安全。)
- (4) I found the laboratory anything but sunny.  
(我发觉这个实验室阳光并不充足。)
- (5) He is anything but a scholar.  
(他决不是一个学者。)
- (6) The story is anything but complete.  
(这个故事很不完整。)
- (7) He is anything but a good teacher.  
(他并不是一个好老师。)
- (8) We found the scenery anything but spectacular.  
(我们觉得这个风景并不壮丽。)
- (9) She looks anything but well.  
(她气色一点不好。)

(10) He was anything but pleased when he heard the news.

(他听到这消息一点也不高兴。)

G. from

(1) The equation is far from being complicated.

(这个方程式一点也不复杂。)

(2) The lake is far from ice in winter.

(这个湖冬天不结冰。)

(3) I am far from liking this novel.

(我毫不喜欢这部小说。)

(4) Our experience is far from adequate and there are not a few shortcomings in our work.

(我们的经验还很不足，工作中的缺点还不少。)

(5) Ocean-going ships, equipped with radar, are safe from collision with other ships.

(远洋船只要装上雷达后，就不会跟其他船相撞。)

(6) This composition is far from being well written.

(这篇文章写得并不好。)

(7) The result of the experiment is far from satisfactory.

(实验结果并不令人满意。)

(8) She is far from being satisfied with the result of the test.

(她很不满意实验的结果。)

(9) So far from being ashamed of it, he glories in it.

(他非但不以为耻，反而引以为荣。)

(10) So far from being true, the news is false.



(这消息决不可靠, 而是虚假的。)

H. off

(1) He's off smoking.

(他不吸烟了。)

(2) Your novel is still a long way off perfection.

(你的小说依旧很不充实。)

(3) Keep off the grass.

(勿踩草地。)

(4) He looks rather off colour.

(他的气色看着不大好。)

(5) He's off playing football now.

(他现在不喜欢踢足球了。)

(6) Half of what he said was off the subject.

(他讲的内容有一半与这个题目无关。)

I. at a loss 不知所措

(1) He was at a loss as to what to do when the machine was out of order.

(机器发生了故障, 他不知道怎么办。)

(2) The question was so unexpected that he was at a loss how to reply it.

(问题提得这么突然, 他不知道怎样回答才好。)

(3) We missed the last train, and were at a loss what to do.

(4) The policeman is at a loss for an explanation of the affair.

(5) We are at a loss to know what he means.

(6) The student is at a loss to explain the sentence.

(7) I am at a loss to recollect his name.

(我一下子记不起他的名字。)

#### 6) "too...to..."结构表否定

(1) Bacteria are too tiny to be seen with the naked eye.

(2) The speed of light is too great for us to measure in simple units.

(3) Modern high-strength alloys are often too hard for ordinary machine tools to cut.

(4) His eyesight is too poor to read such small letters.

(5) I am too tired to think of anything now.

(6) The injections were too weak to kill the bacteria.

(7) She was too excited to fall asleep.

注: too...to 结构有两种不同的意义:

一、表否定。too = more than enough “太, 过分”。这时 too 后边的形容词或副词多是表性质或特征的, too 对其后的形容词或副词起一种消极作用, 句中的主语可是人, 也可是物, 例1—7。

二、表肯定。too = very, extremely, exceedingly “很, 非常”。too 后边的形容词或副词一般仅限于表态度、心情或倾向的词, too 对这些词起积极作用。句中主语多为人, 如:

(1) She is too willing to study English.

(她很愿意学习英语。)

(2) She was too eager to know the result of her experiment.

(她迫切想知道实验结果。)

(3) Beginners are too apt to make mistakes in grammar.

(初学者很容易犯语法错误。)

(4) We are only too pleased to meet you.

(5) Without this computer we are but too liable to make miscalculations.

(如果不用计算机,我们就很容易算错。)

(but = only adv.)

(6) The students are only too pleased to speak English with the foreigners.

(7) We are but too ready to do so.

(我们太喜欢这样做了。)

常用这类词有: ready, apt, liable, easy, willing, glad, happy, pleased, eager 等。

7) absence, absent 没有, 不存在, 不在

(1) He told me nothing that happened in my absence.

(我不在的时候, 所发生的事情, 他没有一件告诉我。)

(2) In the absence of a force, a body will either remain at rest, or continue to move with constant speed in a straight line.

(在没有外力作用的情况下, 物体将保持静止或作匀速直线运动。)

(3) Did anything happen in my absence?

(4) I shall take your place in your absence.

(5) His absence from school was caused by illness

(6) Darkness is the absence of light.

(7) We were obliged to accept it as true in the absence

of other evidence.

(8) A major problem is the absence of detailed standard rules of organization.

(9) He was absent from the meeting without due notice.

(他没有出席会议，但事前并未正式通知。)

(10) If you absent yourself from more than two practices, you will be asked to leave.

(11) What's the reason for our teacher's absence from classes today?

(今天我们的老师没有来上课是什么缘故?)

(12) There is no reason for your absence from school.

(你没有理由不去上学。)

(13) In the absence of evidence, it is hard to convict him of theft.

(在缺乏证据的情况下很难判处他犯了盗窃罪。)

(14) In the absence of the Director, Comrade Wang is in charge of the office.

(当王同志不在的时候，王同志负责处理办公室的事务。)

(15) He frequently absents himself from home.

(他常常不在家。)

**8) 肯定形式的反问句，都含有语气较强的否定概念。**

(1) Who knows? (= No one knows.)

(2) Why should he? (= There's no reason why he should)

(3) What does it matter? (= It doesn't matter.)

(4) Shall I ever forget him? (= I'll never forget him.)

- (5) Are we such fools as to believe it? (= We are not such fools as...)
- (6) Who would have believed it possible? (= Nobody believed...)
- (7) Who cares where you slept? (= Nobody cares ...)
- (8) Can anyone doubt the truth of his statement?  
(= Surely no one would doubt it.)

**9) 在讥讽的反语中, 常用肯定形式来表达强烈的否定概念**

- (1) Old Zhang is teaching you English! Much he knows of it himself.  
(老张在教你们英语! 他自己又知多少! )
- (2) Much good may it do you!  
(但愿此事与你无益。)
- (3) I should worry. (= I'll never worry.)
- (4) Much I care. (= I don't care at all.)
- (5) That's a likely story. (= It can not be believed.)

**10) 利用起誓、诅咒或其他形式来表示强烈的否定概念**

- (1) I'll be damned if I'll go.  
(我决不会去的。)
  - (2) I'll be damned if that's true.
  - (3) I'll be blest if that's true.
  - (4) I'll be dashed if that's true.
  - (5) I'll be shot if that's true.
  - (6) God knows how deep the sea is!
  - (7) Heaven knows how deep the sea is!
  - (8) Deuce knows how deep the sea is!
  - (9) Catch me playing football.  
(我决不会踢足球的。)
- } (那决不会是真的。)
- } (天知道这海有多深! )

(10) Tell that to the Jews!

(谁信你那一套!)

11) last 最不合适的; 决不至于...; 极少可能的

(1) That is the last thing he will do

(那是他最不愿意做的事。)

(2) He is the last person to look for help in such matters.

(这种事可别找他帮忙。)

(3) He would be the last man to say such things.

(他决不会说这样的话。)

(4) I am the last man to like wine.

(我最不喜欢喝酒。)

(5) That's the last thing I should expect him to do.

(真想不到他会做这种事。)

(6) He is the last person to do such a thing.

(他决不会干这种事。)

(7) This is the last place where I expect to have met you.

(真想不到会在这里碰见你。)

12) 带有否定意义的词缀的词表否定

(1) Apparently he was displeased with my answer.

(2) The conclusions disagree with the facts.

(结论与事实不一致。)

(3) It is impossible to finish the work before the end of the month.

(4) I dislike to read poems, still more to write a poem.

(别说写诗, 连读诗我都不喜欢。)

(5) Aircraft can travel everywhere independent of surface conditions.

(飞机可以飞行到任何地方，而不取决于地面情况。)

(6) His argument is incompatible with logic.

(他的论点不合逻辑。)

(7) The human ear is unable to hear sounds whose frequency is lower than about 20 cycles per second.

(人类的耳朵听不到频率大约为20周/秒以下的声音。)

(8) A less difficult problem would have already been solved.

(问题要是不那么困难，早就给解决了。)

13) “all (both, every) v. + 含否定意义的单词” 表全部否定

(1) All germs are invisible to the naked eye.

(一切细菌都是肉眼看不见的。)

(2) All his plans came to nothing.

(他的一切计划都没有实现。)

(3) All this is unnecessary.

(什么也不需要。)

(4) All of them were dissatisfied with the result of the experiment.

(5) Every plan made by him is impossible of execution.

(他所做的一切计划都是不能实现的。)

(6) We all disbelieve in the existence of God.

#### 4. 双重否定(Double Negation)

双重否定句形式上是否定，实质上是肯定，语气较强。

译时，可译成双重否定，也可译成肯定。

1) 主句(否定结构) + if 条件句(否定结构)表“没有…就没有…”

- (1) If there were no energy, there would be no force and work.  
(没有能量，就没有力和功。)
- (2) If there is no one to program the computer, it just won't work.
- (3) If there were no gravity, we should not be able to walk.
- (4) Were it not for the leadership of the Party, we could not live a happy life.
- (5) If synthetics had not been created, many of the objects we now use could not have been made for lack of good enough raw material.
- (6) No animals would have the food they need if it were not for green plants.
- (7) Were there no plants, there would be no animals.
- (8) I shouldn't have believed it if I had not seen it with my own eyes.
- (9) If it had not been for your help, we could not have done the experiment in time.

2) no (not)…unless

- (1) No part of the soil can act as plant food unless it is first dissolved in water.  
(如果不先溶解于水中，没有一份土壤能起到植物养料的作用。)
- (2) The space ship can not fly at such a high speed unless the crucial material problems are solved.



(如果一些关键性的材料问题不解决, 宇宙飞船就不能以这样高的速度飞行。)

(8) The atomic furnace will not work unless it has enough fuel.

(原子反应堆若没有足够的燃料是不能运转的。)

(4) You can never be successful unless you work hard.

(5) You can't pass the examination unless you work hard.

(6) Unless you take the necessary precautions, you can not prevent damages and, therefore, there will be much trouble.

(7) You can not see any object unless light from that object gets into your eyes.

(8) Unless the water is pure, it is not drinkable.

(9) You can not work out the problem unless you do it with the help of an electronic computer.

(10) Many chemical changes will not take place unless materials are heated to a high temperature.

### 3) 主句(否定结构) + 定语从句(否定结构)

(1) There's not a man that lives who has not known his god-like hours.

(凡是活在世上的人都曾经有过神仙的几段绝好的时光。)

(2) There is not one who knew him, I believe, that will not give cheerfully.

(我相信凡是曾经认识他的人, 都乐于给他一些资助。)

(3) There was nothing which you could do which I had not already done.

(凡是你能做的事情我都已经做了。)

(4) Nothing was useful which was not honest.

(凡不正当者即无用之物。)

(5) Nothing can be wholly beautiful that is not useful.

(凡是没有用的东西就不可能达到完点。)

(6) He has never committed one act that was not in the interests of his people.

(他从来没有做过一件不是有利于人民的事情。)

(7) There is no grammatical rule that does not have exceptions.

(没有无例外的语法规则。)

(8) In practice, there is not any machine which has no energy loss.

(实际上, 不损耗能量的机器是没有的。)

(9) There will be no difficulty in the world which they cannot overcome.

(10) In fact, there is hardly any sphere of life where electricity may not find useful application.

(事实上, 几乎没有任何一个生活领域不利用电。)

4) not + 带有否定前缀的单词 (这种用法, 表示一种委婉说法, 因此语气比肯定句弱一些。)

(1) We have been not unmindful of these requirements.

(我们并不是不关心这些要求。)

(2) It is impossible not to do the experiment.

(3) We are not unprepared for the outcome of the conference.

(为了这个会议取得成果，我们是有所准备的。)

(4) Apparently he was not displeased with my answer.

(显然他对我的回答是感到满意的。)

(5) Comrade Ling is not incapable.

(6) It is not impossible to finish the work before the end of the month.

(7) The old man's pulse beat was not unsteady.

(这个老头儿的脉搏跳动是正常的。)

(8) Friction is not always undesirable.

(摩擦并非在任何场合都不需要。)

(9) He was never dissatisfied with my work.

(他从来没有对我的工作不满。)

(10) She is utterly unpredictable; there's no knowing what she will do next.

(11) But for friction, our world would be unimaginable.

(12) In fact, it is impossible for no force to be exerted on a body, since in this world everything is subject to the force of gravity.

(事实上，物体上不可能没有力作用，因为在这个世界上任何物体都受到重力的作用。)

(13) If we knew nothing about the structure of the atom, it would be impossible for us to study nuclear physics.

(14) A man has not any more right to say an uncivil thing than to act one.

(对人，行动上不应该无礼，同样说话也不应该无礼。)

## 5) not (no, never) + 带有否定意义的动词

(1) They do not deny that their work leaves much to be desired.

(他们并不否认他们的工作是有许多缺点的。)

(2) We shall not fail to help you when necessary.

(在必要时，我们一定会帮助你。)

(3) Perhaps you are not ignorant of the fact that science and technology have no class nature.

(或许你们懂得科学技术是没有阶级性的这个事实。)

(4) We will never neglect our duties.

(我们会永远尽我们的职责。)

(5) We can not refuse him such a reasonable request.

(这样一个合理的要求，我们是不会拒绝的。)

(6) What's done cannot be undone.

(已经做了的事后悔也无用。)

(7) There is no denying the fact that we met problems in the job.

(不可否认的事实是我们在这项工作中碰到过好多困难。)

(8) We have to lose no time to overcome these difficulties.

(我们必须抓紧时间克服这些困难。)

(9) Nobody who drives in the tramcar is free of charge.

(凡乘电车，皆不免费。)

## 6) never fail, without fail

(1) Premier Zhou never failed to greet the sun every morning.

(周总理是夜夜工作到天明。)

(2) A good engineer will never fail to understand the importance of choice of materials.

(作为工程师决不会不理解(一定要懂得)选材的重要性。)

(3) I promise to be here at nine o'clock without fail.

(我答应九点一定到这里。)

(4) He promised me he would pay the bill this week without fail.

(5) You must be here without fail by ten o'clock tomorrow morning.

(6) Whoever studies hard can not fail to succeed.

7) not...without; not without

(1) You mustn't take it upon yourself to spend such a large sum without the Treasurer's approval.

(没有经过财务主管的同意你不得擅自动用这么大笔款。)

(2) Without electricity, there would be no modern industry.

(3) Without the atmosphere, we would not be able to live on the earth.

(4) Without the sun's heat and light, there would be no life on the earth.

(5) Without gravity there would be no air and no sound of any kind.

(6) A gas can not be liquified without cooling it below a certain critical temperature.

(如不冷却到一定的临界温度以下, 气体就不能液化。)

(7) The confusion between science and its application is not without excuse.

(科学与科学的应用之间的混淆并不是没有原因的。)

(8) He can not speak English without making mistakes.

(他讲英语一开口就错。)

(9) No one may enter or leave without permission.

(任何人未经许可不得擅自进出。)

(10) I can't do the experiment without your help.

(11) He replied, not without hesitation, that he was ready to go.

(他略为踌躇了一下, 就回答说准备去。)

(12) I cannot read the book without shedding tears.

(我一读这本书就感动得流泪。)

(13) I cannot read the book without our eyes.

(14) There is no smoke without fire.

(有烟必有火。即无风不起浪。)

(15) We could not have achieved so much without the comrades' help.

(16) An engine can not run without fuel.

(17) The air can not hold any more steam without a rise in temperature.

(温度不上升, 空气中就不能容纳更多的水蒸气。)

(18) Without iron and steel we can not develop heavy industry.

(19) There is no right to speak without investigation.

(没有调查就没有发言权。)

(20) I rejected his proposal, and not without reason.

(拒绝他的建议,这并不是没有理由的。)

(21) You shouldn't go out without a coat this weather.

(22) There are not without examples in the world where a country is developing its economy at a high speed by introducing advanced techniques and equipment from abroad.

(世界上有不少实例,一个国家由于向国外引进先进的技术和设备,而使经济高速度发展起来。)

(23) There's no doing anything well without perseverance.

(没有毅力,什么事都不可能做好。)

(24) You cannot succeed without persevering.

**8) impossible (not possible) ... without**

(1) Without knowledge of science and technology it is impossible to build socialism.

(2) It is impossible for your team to win without constant training.

(3) For practical reasons, it is impossible to maintain this figure in manufacturing without great cost.

(由于实际原因,要在制造中保持这一数学就必然要花很大成本。)

(4) Life would be impossible without enzymes.

(没有酶就没有生命。)

**9) never...without 每逢...总是... 没有...就不...**

(1) Heat can never be converted into a certain energy

without something lost.

(热能每逢转换成某种能量时,总是有些损耗。)

(2) We can never build up socialism without the leadership of the Chinese Communist Party.

(3) The two can never meet without quarreling.

(他们两人每次见面都吵架。)

(4) She can never hear such a story without weeping.

(5) You should never cross the road without looking both ways first.

10) never...but = never...without + v-ing 每...必...

(but conj. 除与 never 连用外,还可与其他否定词连用。)

(1) It never rains but it pours. (= It never rains without pouring.)

(不雨则已,雨则倾盆。)(祸不单行。)

(2) I never see you but I think of my brother.

(看见你,我就不由得想起我哥哥来。)

(3) I never hear such a story but I laugh.

(我听见这种故事就要笑了。)

(4) He never reads a book but he digests it.

(他不读书则已,读则必融会贯通。)

(5) They never meet but they discuss this problem.

(他们没有一次不是碰在一起就讨论这个问题。)

(6) I seldom went out but I met him.

(我出门难得不遇见他的。)

(7) I never go past my old school but I think of Mr. Wilkins, the headmaster.

(8) She never comes but she brings something for the children.



(9) We never arrange a cricket match but it rains.

(我们每次板球比赛都下雨。)

(10) Never a month passes but she writes to her old parents.

(每个月她必定给她年老的父母写信。)

1) 否定词 + but (but = unless or if it were not for, conj.)

(1) Nothing will content him but I give up my opinion.

(除非我放弃观点，否则无法使他满意。)

(2) There is nothing either good or bad, but thinking makes it so.

(人若无思想，事情也就无好坏之分。)

(3) Nothing would content him but I must come.

(4) But he was invited, he would not have attended our dinner. (but = but that)

(5) But that the sun shines on the earth, there would be no tree.

(6) But that I saw the machine, I could not have imagined how efficiently it works.

(7) Nothing would do but that I should come in.

(一切都无用，除非我进来。)

注：but that: 有的语法家把 but that 看作一个连词；有的语法家把 but 看作介词后跟 that 从句作宾语。

12) nothing (no one) ... so ... but } 即使(尽管)...也...;  
not ... such ... but } 还没有...不能

but = that ... not, but conj.

(1) Comrade Wang is not yet so old but he may learn.

(=that he may not learn.)

(王同志还没有老到不能学习的地步。)

(2) He is not such a fool but he can tell it.

(他还没有笨得连这个也不知道。)

(3) No task is so difficult but we can accomplish it.

(任务尽管再难, 我们总可以完成。)

(4) There is nothing so difficult but it may be conquered by perseverance.

(事情尽管再难, 总可以凭毅力加以克服。)

(5) Nothing is so good but there is room for improvement.

(事情尽管再好, 也总有改进的余地。)

(6) The streets were not so crowded but our car could go through.

(街上并不是拥挤得不能通车。)

(7) It was not such a cold night but we could go out.

(那天夜里并不是冷的不能出去。)

13) but for ... no (not, never) (but for, prep.)

(1) But for the nucleus, there would be no atomic weight.

(2) But for atoms, there would be no atomic energy.

(3) But for the imitation of some rare materials, plastics might not have been created.

(4) But for the leadership of the Party, we could not live a happy life.

(5) But for their common efforts, they could not have achieved so much in their research.

- (6) But for your help, we should not have got the result so soon.
- (7) But for electronic computers, many problems involving complicated calculations could not have been solved so quickly and accurately, even if they could be done manually.
- (8) But for the air, no life on the earth could have been developed.
- (9) But for the leadership of the Party, we could never have succeeded in building up a socialist state in China.

14) nobody (on one) but 只有...才...; 除...外, 没有... (but, prep.)

- (1) Nobody but a child would do such a thing.  
(除孩子外, 没人会做这样的事。)
- (2) None but the students and teachers of our school are allowed to enter the reading-room.  
(非我校师生不许进阅览室。)
- (3) Nobody but me could nurse you.
- (4) No one but me saw him.
- (5) No one but he (him) showed much interest in the proposal.
- (6) No one can do it but him.
- (7) No one is qualified for the job but Comrade Li.
- (8) You'll have nobody but yourself to blame.
- (9) No one but myself knows what really happened.
- (10) His failure was a surprise to no one but himself.

(11) None but the aged and the sick stayed at home.

(只有年老和生命的人留在家中。)

(12) They chose none but the best.

(他们只选最好的。)

(13) None but a Communist can do such a hard work.

15) nothing but 只是，不过是

(1) Don't worry about my conditions, what I need is nothing but a few day's rest.

(不要为我操心，我只不过需要歇几天。)

(2) It is nothing but a common bike.

(这只不过是一辆普通的自行车。)

(3) Heat energy is nothing but the energy of motion of molecules.

(热能不过是分子的动能。)

(4) Nothing but patient study can make one familiar with English idiom.

(只有孜孜不倦的钻研才能使我们通晓英语的惯用语。)

(5) The electronic computer is nothing but a powerful means created and used by man.

(电子计算机不过是人们所创造的和使用的一种强有力的工具。)

(6) Different as the forms of matter are, they are nothing but matter in motion.

(尽管物质的形式各不相同，它们都只不过是运动中的物质。)

(7) The weight of a body is nothing but the pull of gravity toward the earth.

(物质的重量不过是拉向地心的引力。)

(8) Indeed, it is possible that electrons are made of nothing but negative electricity.

(9) A heat engine is nothing but an energy conversion system.

(热机只是一种能量转换系统。)

(10) Energy is nothing but the capacity to do work.

(11) I have no dictionary but this one.

(我只有这一本词典。)

(12) That car has given me nothing but trouble ever since I have had it.

注: what...but = nothing but, 如:

(1) What is there but air in the empty bottle?  
(= There is nothing but air in the empty bottle.)

(2) What is coal but a kind of product out of plant?  
(= Coal is nothing but a kind of product out of plant.)

(煤只是植物的一种产物。)

16) nothing + but + v. 只有, 只是 (but, prep.)

(1) Our frontier fighters had nothing to do but (to) fight the battle out.

(我们的边防战士只有打到底。)

(2) There's nothing to do but repeat the experiment.

(3) They could do nothing but wait for the doctor to arrive.

(4) He did nothing but read in the whole morning.

(5) He did nothing but consider what the teacher had said to him.

- (6) The enemy had no choice but to lay down their arms.
- (7) He does nothing recently but think over the matter only.
- (8) She desires nothing but to do the experiment well.

17) can not but + v. = can not help doing sth. 不得不, 不能不; 不会不; 必然, 只能(but prep.)

(1) He could not but admit that they were justified in this.

(他不得不承认他们在这点上是对的。)

(2) From various experiments we can not but think the theory still holds good.

(根据各种实验我们不能不承认这个理论依然是行之有效的。)

(3) They can not but admit that in certain aspects of science and technology we are way ahead of them.

(他们不得不承认在某些科学技术方面我们远远走在他们的前面。)

(4) We can not but read books to increase our knowledge.

(我们不得不读书以增加我们的知识。)

(5) He can not but admit that he was wrong.

(6) One's world outlook can not but appear in what one says and does.

(一个人的世界观必然在他的言行中表现出来。)

(7) When the country calls you for help, you can not but go.

(8) I can not but admit the truth of your remarks, although they go against my interests.

注 (1) *can not help but* 和 *can not but* 意义相同, 如:

(1) I can't help but be impressed with the practicality of this education.

(这种教育确实有效, 不能不给我留下深刻的印象。)

(2) How can we not help but feel like working twice as hard.

(我们怎么能不感到应加倍努力呢?)

注 (2) 有时还用 *can not choose but* + 动词原形, 如:

(3) They can not choose but to take up arms.

(他们除了拿起武器外, 别无其他选择。)

18) *not...any...but* 只能, 除...外, 没有... (*but, prep.*)

(1) You can't get the book anywhere but here.

(只有这里能买到这本书。)

(2) We can't discover any material in an element but itself.

(在一种元素里, 除该元素本身外, 我们不可能发现任何别的物质。)

(3) Don't touch any Parts but the antenna.

(除天线外, 别动其他部件。)

19) *no one (no n.) + but + v.* 没有...不...的

*but = who...not (that...not, which...not) rel. pron.*

(1) There is no body but knows our country in the world.

(世界上没有不知道我们国家的人。)

(2) There is no one in our class but works hard at

English.

(我们班没有一个人不努力学习英语的。)

- (3) There is no one but admires the young hero.  
(没有人不佩服这位年轻的英雄。)
- (4) There is no one but wishes to go.  
(我们谁都想去。)
- (5) There is no old habit but may be cured by a strong will power.  
(只要有坚强的意志, 没有一个旧习惯是不能改掉的。)
- (6) There is no material but will deform more or less under the action of force.  
(在力的作用下, 各种材料或多或少都要变形。)
- (7) Almost nobody visited the lane factory but was deeply impressed by the revolutionary spirit the workers there had been displaying.  
(参观过那家里弄工厂的人, 几乎没有一个不深为工人  
的革命精神所感动。)
- (8) There is no man but has his faults.  
(没有人没有缺点。)
- (9) There is no rule but has exceptions.  
(没有无例外的规则。)
- (10) There is no pure sulfuric acid, if applied to the skin, but produces bad burns.  
(没有纯硫酸洒在皮肤上不产生烧伤的。)
- (11) With the introduction of the electronic computer there is no complicated problem but can be solved quickly.  
(采用电子计算机, 没有什么复杂的问题不能迅速计算)



出来的。)

(12) There is no one of us but wishes to help you.

(我们中间没有一个人不愿帮助你。)

(13) There is no technique so difficult but becomes easy by practice.

(没有什么难的技术通过实践还不容易掌握的。)

(14) There is no man but knows him.

(没有一个人不认识他。)

(15) There is scarcely a man but has his weak side.

(人皆有缺点。)

(16) There has not been a scientist of eminence but was a man of industry.

(没有哪个有成就的科学家不是勤奋的。)

(17) None sought his aid but were helped.

(请求他援助的人，没有不受到援助的。)

20) can not...too 无论怎样...，也不过分；越...越好

(1) We can not be too careful in performing an experiment.

(我们做实验无论怎样细致也不过分。)

(2) They can not praise him too much.

(他们无论怎样称赞他也不算过分。)

(3) You can not criticize her too much.

(你无论怎样批评他，也不会过分。)

(4) I can not thank you too much for your help.

(对你的帮助，我感激不尽。)

(5) One can not be too faithful to one's duties.

(对自己的职责，越忠实越好。)

(6) You can't be too careful in crossing the street.

(横过马路时越当心越好。)

(7) You can not begin the practice too early.

(练习开始得越早越好。)

(8) It can not be too much emphasized that mathematics is the basis of all other sciences.

(应尽量强调数学是其他一切科学的基础。)

(9) One can never be too careful in the choice of one's friends.

(人之择友，越谨慎越好。)

(10) You can not pay too much attention to the diet of the patient.

(你对这病人的饮食越注意越好。)

(11) Its importance can not be emphasized too much.

(其重要性怎么强调也不会过分。)

(12) Not too much can be said about the value of early rising.

(早起的好处说不完。)

(13) The importance of making an on-the-spot investigation can not be emphasized too much.

(进行现场调查的重要性无论怎样强调也不会过分的。)

(14) It can not be too much emphasized that agriculture is the foundation of the national economy.

(应尽量强调农业是国民经济的基础。)

(15) No man can have too much knowledge and practice.

(知识和实践越多越好。)

21) be impossible (or difficult) to...too (or over + v.)

be scarcely possible to...too

can never (hardly, scarcely) enough

can never over + v. (or can not over + v.)

无论怎样…也不过；越…越好(= can not...too)

(1) It is impossible for you to be too careful.

(= You can not be too careful.) (越小心越好。)

(2) It is impossible to estimate the value of the fine arts too highly.

You can not overestimate the value of the fine arts.

You can not estimate the value of the fine arts too highly.

(艺术的价值不论怎样高估都不嫌过分。)

(3) It is impossible for you to overpraise his novels.

You can not overpraise his novels.

You can not praise his novels too much.

It is impossible to praise his novels too much.

(他的小说无论怎样称赞也不过分。)

(4) It is impossible to overestimate its importance.

(其重要性估计得再怎么高也不过分。)

(5) It is impossible to say too much about fresh air.

(新鲜空气的好处应大讲特讲。)

(6) We can never (scarcely, hardly) thank you enough for your help.

(对你的帮助感激不尽。)

(7) It is scarcely possible for too much attention to be devoted to this subject.

(对这个课题必须下足功夫进行研究。)

(8) The importance of scientific researches can not be

overvalued.

(科研的重要性, 无论怎样估计也不会过分。)

- (9) The importance of physical training can not be overestimated.

(体育锻炼之重要无论如何高估也只不过分。)

- (10) You can not be over careful.

You can not be careful enough.

You can not be sufficiently careful.

You can not take enough care.

You can not take sufficient care.

} = You can not  
be too careful.

- (11) The role of private enterprise in the life of that country can hardly be exaggerated.

(在那个国家的生活中, 私人企业的作用无论怎么说也不嫌太夸张。)

- (12) The importance of proper lubrication can not be overemphasized.

(应特别强调适当进行润滑的重要性。)

**22) cannot help doing sth. = can not keep (refrain) from doing sth. = can not but do sth. 不能不; 不禁**

- (1) We can not help acknowledging the importance of this discovery.

(我们不能不承认这个发现的重要性。)

- (2) I can't help admiring the picture whenever I look at it.

(每逢我看见这张画, 我不禁就要赞美它。)

- (3) If they have no "figures" in their heads, they can not help making mistakes.

(如果他们心中“无数”, 就难免要犯错误。)

(4) I can't help thinking he's wrong.

(我不禁认为他错了。)

(5) He can not help flaring up when he finds a comrade neglecting his duties.

(他看到哪个同志玩忽职守，就禁不住要火起来。)

(6) We couldn't help being impressed by their zeal for labour.

(他们的劳动热情不能不给我们留下深刻印象。)

**23) nothing if not 很；极其；非常**

(1) He is nothing if not optimistic.

(他非常乐观。)

(2) The young man was nothing if not sophisticated.

(这年轻人够老练的了。)

(3) He was nothing if not stubborn.

(他这个人非常顽固。)

(4) He is nothing if not careful.

(谨慎是他最大长处。)

(5) She's nothing if not polite.

(她十分有礼貌。)

**24) not...for (out of) nothing 并非无用(无益)**

(1) We would, however, not be getting something for nothing.

(但是，我们要有所得，就得付出代价。)

(2) The reprocessing isn't done for nothing.

(进行重新处理并非不花钱。)

(3) I'll take it then, Not for nothing. I'll give you something in return.

(那末我就拿了。作为回报，我将送你一些东西。)

- (4) You can't make something out of nothing.  
(巧妇难为无米之炊。)
- (5) The students have not made the experiment for nothing.  
(学生们做这个实验并不是没有益处的。)
- (6) We have not had all the sufferings for nothing.  
(我们那些苦难并没有白受。)
- (7) It was not for nothing that they spent three years studying the subject.  
(他们研究这个课题花了三年时间，不是没有收获的。)
- 25) nothing more than 只不过是，仅仅是，恰好是
- (1) An explosion is nothing more than a tremendously rapid burning.  
(爆炸只不过是非常急速的燃烧。)
- (2) Wind is nothing more than air in motion.  
(风只不过是空气在运动。)
- (3) Sound is nothing more than vibrating air.  
(声音只不过是振动着的空气。)
- (4) The electrical "fluid" is nothing more than electrons flowing along a wire.  
(电的“流体”不过是导线流动的电子。)
- (5) A complex machine is nothing more than a combination of two or more simple machines.  
(复杂的机器只不过是两部以上简单机器的联合体。)
- (6) If you could slow down the moving parts of a hydrogen atom, you would see that it consists of nothing more than two particles.  
(假如你能使氢原子内部运动的速度放慢，那么你就会

看到它仅仅是由两个粒子构成的。)

(7) Energy of a body is nothing more than the ability to do work.

(8) An integrated circuit looks like nothing more than a piece of metal.

(9) The thermostat is nothing more than electric switch that opens and closes itself at the proper temperature  
(恒温器只不过是到达适当温度就自动开关的电闸。)

26) nothing ... 形容词(副词)比较级 + that 没有...比得上...  
nothing like

nothing (no other + n.) ... so ... as 没有...比更...

(1) Nothing in the world moves faster than light.

(世界上没有东西比光传播得更快。)

(2) Nothing is more precious than time.

(没有任何东西比光阴更可贵。)

(= Nothing is so precious as time.)

(3) Nothing can be more attractive to the eye than this.

(没有比这更好看的東西。)

(4) Nothing is more valuable than health.

(5) There is nothing more important to life than the

sun.

(6) There is nothing like mineral water to quench one's thirst.

(矿泉水是解渴的最好饮料。)

(7) There is nothing like jogging as a means of exercise.

(再没有比跑步更好的锻炼方式了。)

(8) There is nothing like leather for shoes.

(做鞋, 没有比皮革更好的材料。)

(9) Nothing will do you so much good as a change of air (will do).

(再没有比易地疗养对你更为有益的了。)

(10) In fact no other substance in the world is as light as hydrogen.

27) nothing less than = nothing short of 和...一模一样, 完全等于, 简直

(1) The setting up of this plant in three months is nothing short of a miracle.

(三个月就建成了这座工厂, 简直是个奇迹。)

(2) It is nothing less than another industrial revolution.

(这完全等于另一次工业革命。)

(3) What we expected is nothing less than a technical revolution.

(技术革命正是我们所盼望的。)

28) nothing more nor less than 无非是

1) The rainbow is nothing more nor less than the spectrum of sun light.

(虹无非是太阳光的光谱。)

(2) The meter is nothing more nor less than a small electric motor.

(电表无非是小型的电动机。)

(3) A fuse is nothing more nor less than a piece of lead or lead-alloy wire.

(保险丝无非是一小截铅丝或铅合金丝。)

29) nothing else than } 只是, 不过是  
nothing else but }

(1) His failure was due to nothing else than his own



carelessness.

(他的失败就是由于不小心。)

(2) It is nothing else than zinc.

(这就是锌。)

(3) It is not correct to say that matter contains molecules, because all matter is composed of nothing else but molecules.

(物质包含分子这种说法是不正确的, 因为一切物质都只不过是分子构成的。)

(4) Indeed, it is possible that electrons are made of nothing else but negative electricity.

(事实上, 很可能电子只不过是由负电荷构成的。)

(5) The situation is nothing else but (or than) fine.

(形势是最好不过的了。)

**30) no less than = as many (much) as; exactly**

**有...之多, 和...一样**

(1) China's women, no less than man, are participating in all kinds of work in the socialist construction of their country.

(中国妇女和男子一样, 在社会主义建设中参加各项工作。)

(2) He has no less than 100 *yuan* in his pocket.

(3) They have designed no less than ten kinds of lathes.

(4) The number of the students attending the lecture is no less than 1000.

(5) There are no less than 800 teachers in our college.

(6) He has been studying English for no less than ten years.

(7) He no less than you is diligent.

**31) no less...than 和...一样**

(1) This work piece is no less hard than that one.

(这个工件的硬度和那件一样。)

(2) This problem is no less complicated than that one.

(3) The pressure of a gas plays no less important a part than that of a liquid.

(气体压力和液体压力一样起着很重要的作用。)

(4) His mind is no less alert than yours.

(他的思路同你一样敏捷。)

(5) Our village is no less beautiful than this picture.

(6) This room is no less clean than that one.

(7) This job is no less hard than that one.

**32) no more than 只, 不过, 仅仅, 只有**

(1) All together, the planets total no more than a sevenhundredth of the mass of the sun.

(这些行星的总质量仅是太阳质量的七百分之一。)

(2) Coal is sometimes found in thick seams, but usually in seams no more than a man's height.

(有时煤层很厚, 但是通常只有一人高。)

(3) Computers do no more than you tell them to do.

(计算机只能做你叫它做的事。)

(4) I have no more than two dictionaries.

(我只有两本辞典。)

(5) He is no more than an ordinary worker.

(他仅仅是个普通工人。)

**33) no (none) other than 不是别的, 恰恰是, 正是...**

(1) He was no other than the famous scientist.

(他正是那位著名的科学家。)

(2) I guess this is no other than a cyclotron.

(我猜这正是一台回旋加速器。)

(3) This crisis has been created by none other than the imperialists themselves.

(这个危机正是帝国主义者自己制造的。)

(4) It was none other than Smith.

(一定是史密斯。)

(5) It is nothing other than the usual difficulty.

(这不过是一般的困难而已。)

(6) This is no other than my old friend, John.

(这位不是别人，正是我的老朋友约翰。)

(7) The man standing before him was none other than the Party branch secretary.

(站在他面前的那个人正是党支部书记。)

34) no other + n. + than } 除...外，没有别的；只有  
no other + n. + but }

(1) We can think of no other method than this.

(除了这个方法之外，我们想不出别的来了。)

(2) I have no other book but this.

(我只有这本书。)

(3) I have not read any of Dicken's novels other than David Copperfield.

(除了《大卫·考柏菲尔》以外，我没有读过狄更斯的任何其他小说。)

(4) I can think of no other example than this.

(5) No fuels other than petroleum will be fit for this purpose.

(除了石油外, 其他燃料都将不适于这种用途。)

(6) No other book has had a greater influence on my life than this.

(7) The space station requires no power other than inertia to keep it in its orbit.

(为了把宇宙空间站保持在轨道里, 需要的正是惯性这种力。)

**35) 否定词 + except 除...外, 没有...; 只有...; 只得**

(1) Nature can not be commanded except by being obeyed.

(只有服从自然规律, 才能控制自然规律。)

(2) None of the planets is inhabited except the earth.

(除地球外, 其他星球都没有人。)

(3) There is no one else in the house except those on duty.

(4) I take no orders except from the commander.

(我只接受司令员的命令。)

(5) I received nothing except what was due to me.

(除了我应得的以外, 我并未接受任何东西。)

(6) I know nothing about him except that he lives next door.

(7) The window is never opened except in summer.

(8) He thinks nothing except to be a teacher.

(他一心只想当医生。)

(9) He did nothing except write a letter the whole morning.

(10) Everybody must observe the rule not excepting the principal.

(人人皆应遵守规章制度，校长也不例外。)

- (11) Everyone, not excepting the pilot, survived the crash.  
(每一个人，其中包括飞行员，在这次飞机坠毁事件都幸免于难。)

**36) not a few, not a little 许多，不少**

no fewer than (= as many as) 有...之多，至少有...

- (1) There are not a few who hold such views.

(有许多人持有这种观点。)

- (2) Not a few of his plays are masterpieces.

(他的许多剧本都是杰作。)

- (3) I met not a few friends there.

- (4) Not a few of them have been elected to leading posts at various levels.

(他们中许多人都被选拔到各级领导岗位上来了。)

- (5) Not a few readers wrote letters of commendation to the magazine.

(不少读者向这个杂志写了赞扬信。)

- (6) He has not a few books on nuclear physics.

- (7) There are not a few vacuum tubes in the laboratory.

- (8) We have achieved not a few successes in our work.

- (9) The project requires no fewer than 1000 workers.

(这项工程需要至少1000名工人。)

- (10) There were no fewer than 500 people present.

(出席的有500人之多。)

- (11) There were no fewer than 5 students absent from class today.

- (12) Comrade Li profited not a little from this lesson.

(李同志从这一次课中受益不浅。)

(18) There is not a little petrol left in the tank.

注: not a little 还作“极、很, 相当”解, 如:

(1) He was not a little tired.

(他极为疲倦。)

(2) He was not a little annoyed when he heard the news.

(他听到这消息时, 相当烦恼。)

(3) She was not a little sorry.

(她很抱歉。)

37) none the less, none the worse 还是, 仍旧, 一点也不减少  
(一点也不差)

(1) He is none the worse for his failure.

(他并不因为失败而一蹶不振。)

(2) The machine is working none the worse for its long service.

(这台机器并不因为使用已久而运转不灵。)

(3) He is studying none the worse for so many difficulties in his study.

(他在学习中并不知难而退。)

(4) I like him none the worse for being outspoken.

(我并不因为他讲话直爽而讨厌他。)

(5) We treat them none the less kindly because they have committed mistakes.

(我们并不因为他们犯了错误而待他不好。)

(6) The two men were not all alike, but they agreed none the worse.

(他们二人全不相象, 但他们能情投意合。)

(7) The situation is none the less difficult for that.

(形势的艰难一点也不因此而减少。)

- (8) Although he met with some difficulties, he was none the less sure of his success.

(尽管他遇到一些困难, 他依然坚信他将取得成功。)

- (9) He is none the worse for a single failure.

(他绝不由于仅仅一次失败而垮了下来。)

**38) not only...but (also) 不但...而且**

- (1) Air not only occupies space but it also has weight.

- (2) Electricity, in leaking away, not only causes a loss of power but it may do damage as well.

(漏电不仅浪费电力, 而且可能造成危害。)

- (3) Laboratory work needs not only accurate measurements but also correct calculation.

- (4) Our purpose is not only to conquer nature but also to remake nature.

(我们的目的不仅要征服自然, 而且要改造自然。)

- (5) Gases expand and contract not only when the temperature alters but also when the pressure alters.

- (6) Not only this one particular law, but a great many laws govern the behaviour of electricity.

(不仅这条特殊的定律, 而且还有许多其他定律支配着电的性能。)

- (7) Velocity has not only magnitude but also direction.

(速度不仅有大小, 而且有方向。)

- (8) Physicists study not only light but also sound, heat, and electricity.

- (9) Man's hand can not only use tools but also make them.

- (10) We learned not only from books, but also from practice.
- (11) They had a good harvest not only this year but also last year.
- (12) A gas changes not only in shape but also in volume.
- (13) Not only is his right lung affected but his left lung is also.
- (14) He is not only a scientist but also a fighter for peace.
- (15) The machine can not only memorize but also analyse the data fed into it.

39) not...until 直到...才

- (1) It was not until the twelfth century that the Europeans began to learn how to use the compass on their ships.  
(直到十二世纪欧洲人才开始学会在船上怎样使用指南针。)
- (2) Not until the invention of high altitude rocket did the direct study of the upper atmosphere become possible.  
(直到高空火箭发明以后, 直接研究高层大气才成为可能。)
- (3) Not until recent years, after electrons and ions had been discovered, could the reason for the flow of electricity be understood.  
(直到最近这些年, 在发现了电子和离子以后, 电流动的原因才被人们所理解。)



- (4) It was not until evening that we got the news.
- (5) It was not until last year that they began to study English.
- (6) It was not until an outside force acts upon it that an object changes its motion.
- (7) They will not set off until everything is ready.
- (8) No man really becomes a fool until he stops asking questions.

(人要停止发问, 就会变得愚蠢。)

- (9) Until recently I know nothing about it.  
(直到最近我才知道。)
- (10) Until you go by air, you can't get to Shanghai in time.  
(除非乘飞机, 否则你就不能及时赶到上海。)
- (11) No further progress can be made until this idea is given up.  
(如不放弃这种见解, 就不能再取得进展。)
- (12) Don't let go off the rope until I tell you.  
(除非我通知你, 千万不要把绳子松开。)

**40) 否定结构 + in the absence 没有...就没有...**

- (1) Water can't evaporate in the absence of heat.
- (2) In the absence of the sun's heat and light, no life could exist on the earth.
- (8) Burning could not take place in the absence of oxygen.
- (4) In the absence of electricity, we could not listen to the radio and neither could we watch television.
- (5) In the absence of gravity, there would be no air

around the earth.

(6) In the absence of mathematics, science would not exist.

(7) In the absence of the atmosphere, we would not be able to live on the earth.

(8) Neither plants nor animals can exist in the absence of water.

1991 2000 2010 2020 2030 2040 2050 2060 2070 2080 2090 2100

1991 2000 2010 2020 2030 2040 2050 2060 2070 2080 2090 2100

## “除外”表示法

### 1. “除了…还(也)…” 的表示法

#### 1) besides 除…外, 还有; 在…上外加

(1) Besides English, we study Politics, Chinese and many other subjects.

(2) Besides electrons, an atom contain protons and neutrons.

(3) Besides coal, the most important natural fuels are gas and oil.

(4) Besides reacting to light, semiconductors react to all kinds of radiation.

(半导体除了和光起作用外, 还和各种辐射起作用。)

(5) Besides uranium, we can use another metal, thorium, to give us nuclear power.

(除铀外, 我们还能用另一种金属——钍为我们提供核能。)

(6) This design has many other advantages besides lower cost.

(7) Two other students were on duty besides Xiao Wang.

(8) There were five of us besides our teacher.

(9) Forty-eight comrades went there besides Susan.

(10) Besides its being of no use to you, it is worse than no use to me.

(这东西除对你没有用处, 对我更没有用。)

注: besides表示“已有了……再加……”在整体中加入一部分。

2)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{aside from} \\ \text{apart from} \end{array} \right\}$  除了…以外, 还…:

(1) Apart from the teacher, there are twenty people here.

(2) Apart from its lightness, aluminium has several other advantages.

(3) Apart from the earth, how many planets revolve round the sun?

(4) Apart from oxygen, there are some other gases in the air.

(5) Apart from the cost, it will take a lot of time.

(6) Apart from the wind mill and water wheel, the first mechanically driven machine was the steam engine.

(7) Apart from electromagnetic relays, there are also thermal relays.

(除了电磁继电器外, 还有热继电器。)

(8) Apart from English, he has a good command of Russian and French.

(9) Apart from the cost, there is the problem of man power to be considered.

(10) Aside from performing experiments in physics and chemistry, he often attended lectures on science.

(11) Aside from other considerations, time is a factor.

注: apart from主要用于英国, aside from用于美国, 二者

意思完全相同。

3) In addition to

- (1) In addition to its lightness, aluminium has several other advantages.
- (2) In addition to copper, there are many other metals which are good conductors.
- (3) The motion of a body, in addition to varying speed, may also vary in direction.
- (4) In addition to chemistry we like to study physics.
- (5) In addition to swimming, he likes tennis.
- (6) On the first day over three hundred people visited the exhibition in addition to those who were present at the opening ceremony.
- (7) In addition to being used as a building material, wood is also manufactured into paper.
- (8) In addition to English, he has to study a second foreign language.
- (9) In addition to a large collection of scientific works in Chinese, our library contains many scientific books in foreign languages.
- (10) He studies two hours every evening in addition to attending classes all morning and all afternoon.

4) other than

- (1) Other than frequency, there are other essential properties of radio waves.  
(除了频率以外, 无线电波还有其他基本的性能。)
- (2) There are many forms of potential energy other than gravitational potential energy.

(除了重力的势能以外, 还有许多种形式的势能。)

(8) There is a factor other than electromotive force, or potential difference, that affects electrical flow.

(除电动势和电位差以外, 还有一个可影响电流的因素。)

(4) The law takes into account forms of energy other than those discussed so far.

(除了到目前为止所讨论的那些能量形式之外, 该定律还考虑了其他能量形式。)

(5) Under some conditions chemical energy is liberated during a chemical reaction in forms other than heat.

(在某些条件下, 在化学反应期间, 化学能还能以除了热能以外的其他形式释放出来。)

(6) How many short stories and plays has the author written other than those mentioned in the preface?

(除了在序言中所提到的以外, 这个作家还写了多少篇小说和剧本?)

#### 5) next to (= besides)

(1) Next to oxygen, the most abundant element in the earth's crust is silicon.

(除了氧气, 地壳中含量最丰富的元素是硅。)

(2) Next to the sense of sight, the sense of hearing furnishes the most reports.

(除了视觉之外, 听觉提供的情况最多。)

(3) Next to acquiring good friends, the best acquisition is that of good books.

(除了获得益友之外, 最有意义的获得就是获得好书。)

(4) That's the top news next to the war.

(除了战争新闻外,这是最大的新闻。)

(5) Next to hydrogen, helium is the lightest material in the world.

(6) New York is the largest city next to London.

(7) Next to rice, wheat is their most important staple.

(8) Next to music, he loves tennis best.

**6) after (= besides)**

(1) After Taiwan, Hainan is easily the largest of all our islands.

(2) Which country after China has the largest population?

(3) After swimming, I like table-tennis best.

(4) Nothing in our life, after health and virtue, is more estimable than knowledge.

(5) After the brain, the immune system is probably the most complex system in the human body.

(除了脑子,免疫系统也许是人体最复杂的系统。)

**7) over and above (= besides)**

(1) We mailed them an extra copy over and above the books they'd ordered.

(除了他们预定的之外,我们还给他们多寄了一本书去。)

(2) He gets a number of perquisites, over and above his salary.

(除了工资外,他还拿了不少津贴。)

(3) I had to give the lawyer one hundred dollars for expenses over and above the fee agreed upon.

(4) Over and above this consideration, there is another worth mentioning.

(5) We two countries have common interests over and above our differences.

(6) Over and above our regular pay, we have ample additional benefits from the state—free education, free medical care, paid leave, etc.

(除了正常工资,我们还享受国家给予的充分额外利益,包括免费教育,公费医疗,拿工资休假等。)

(7) Over and above being highly intelligent, the students are all very industrious.

(除了很聪明,这些学生都非常勤奋。)

8) on top of (= besides)

(1) On top of these facts, you may consider this also.

(2) In agriculture an all-round rich harvest has been won on top of the consecutive rich harvests of the past three years.

(在农业方面,除了过去三年的连续丰收,又获得一次全面的丰收。)

(3) One would do well to have some useful hobby on top of one's regular occupation.

(除了日常工作,一个人最好应有个有益的业余爱好。)

(4) He gets commission, on top of his salary.

(5) If you go by that train, you'll have to pay a special Pullman fee, on top of the ordinary fare.

(6) She baby-sits with one of her neighbours on top of her regular job as a typist.

(除了正常的打字员工作外,她还给一位邻居照看小孩。)

(7) The hailstones, on top of the gale, caused serious



damages to the crops.

(冰雹外加暴风给庄稼造成严重损失。)

9) **as well as** 除了...外, 也(还)...; 不但...而且...

(1) They have many mathematics books as well as the chemistry book.

(除了这本化学书外, 他们还有许多数学书。)

(2) I bought a map of the world as well as some picture books.

(我买了几本连环画, 还买了一张世界地图。)

(3) The three gas laws are true of all gases, as well as of air.

(气体三定律除了适用于空气外, 也适用于所有的气体。)

(4) Students of physics study chemistry as well as physics.

(5) When you look up a word, notice its pronunciation as well as its meaning.

(6) In this way we reclaimed a lot of valuable materials, as well as getting rid of a big source of pollution.

(这样, 我们除了去掉了一个污染源, 同时也回收了好多有价值的物资。)

(7) This instrument can be used as a radio as well as a telegraph.

注: as well as 连接两个同等成分时, 强调的是 as well as 前边的成分, 但翻译成中文时, 要翻译其后边的成分。

10) **exclusive of** 除了...外, 还...; 不计算在内

(1) We have forty days of vacation exclusive of the

regular holidays.

(我们除了规定假日外, 还有40天的假期。)

(2) This book costs two dollars exclusive of postage.

(除邮费外, 这本书值两元钱。)

(3) The passenger train consisted of as many as twenty cars, exclusive of baggage and mail cars.

(这一列客车除了行李车和邮车以外, 还有二十节车厢之多。)

(4) There are twenty-seven days in July, exclusive of Sundays.

(5) We need five hundred yuan exclusive of hotel expenses.

(6) We are forty in all exclusive of the children.

(除了小孩, 我们总共有40人。)

(7) Our holiday cost us just over two hundred yuan, exclusive of incidental expenses such as taxi fares and gratuities to hotel staff.

(8) The ship has a crew of 57 exclusive of officers.

(该船有水手57人, 职员在外。)

(9) The building will cost about 2,500,000 yuan, exclusive of the machinery equipment.

(10) The hotel charges 6 yuan a day, exclusive of meals.

**11) excluding 不计算...在内(在意义上相当于exclusive of)**

(1) There were fifty-two people present, excluding the officials.

(官员不算在内, 有五十二人出席。)

(2) There were thirty people in the hotel, excluding the hotel workers.

(工作人员不计算在内, 这家旅馆住有30人。)

(8) The ship has a crew of 57, excluding officers.

(这船有57名水手, 军官不计在内。)

## 12) among 除...外, 还

(1) He, among other things, talked about the excellent situation at home and abroad.

(除了其他话题, 他还谈到国内外的大好形势。)

(2) The book is very practical. Among other things, it tells you how to make your own furniture.

(3) To be a good short story writer one needs, among other things, a very vivid imagination.

(4) It has even been suggested, among other forecasts of doom, that supersonic aircraft may disturb the upper atmosphere to such an extent that dangerous radiation from the sun might reach the earth, with unimaginable effects on life there.

(除了对未来厄运有过一些预测外, 人们一直指出, 超音速飞机可能搅乱了上层大气层, 其程度使得危险的射线有可能射到地球上, 对生命产生想象不到的影响。)

## 2. “除了...外, 都...”表示法

1) except 表示“除去”的意思, 即从整数中除去一部分。作“除外”讲时, 通常和all, every, any等不定代词连用。

(1) Every atomic nucleus contains neutrons, except the nucleus of the hydrogen atom.

(2) Everyone of us, except Li Ping went to the exhibition.

- (3) We have English classes every day except Thursday.
- (4) Everyone was present at the meeting except Comrade Zhang.
- (5) There is no one else in the house except those on duty.
- (6) All the radios are good in quality except this one.
- (7) They have gathered all the crops except beans.
- (8) None of the planets is inhabited except the earth.
- (9) There is nothing in the world except matter in motion.
- (10) Nature cannot be commanded except by being obeyed.  
(只有服从自然规律, 才能控制自然规律。)
- (11) He did nothing except repair some farm tools.
- (12) There was nothing left to the peasant except to fight back.  
(这个农民只有反抗。)
- (13) We can do nothing except repeat the experiment.

注: **except** 后可跟不定式, 表示“只是, 只得”。如果主句谓语动词是 **do**, **except** 后的不定式可省略 **to**, 其他情况时一般带 **to**, 如: (11), (12), (13)。

## 2) **except for** 除...外, 只是...

- (1) Except for its high cost, this type of machine would be very suitable.
- (2) Your composition is good except for a few mistakes.
- (3) This paper is well written except for a little miscalculation.
- (4) Except for this, everything is in order.
- (5) The room is bare except for a few chairs.

(这间房里除了几张椅子外，一无摆设。)

- (6) He answered all the questions **except for** (= **except**) the last one.
- (7) Such machines can be run without attention **except for** loading and unloading.  
(除了装料和卸料外，这样的机器操作时不需要看管。)
- (8) **Except for** the earth, none of the planets is inhabited.
- (9) **Except for** ice and a few others, all solids expand when they liquefy.
- (10) **Except for** the teacher, everyone in the room comes from Egypt.

注：(1) **except for** 主要用于“在说明基本情况后，对某个具体的细节问题加以修正。”这时候不能用 **except** 来代替 **except for**。

(2) 当被除外的事物不同于被包括在内的事物时，常用 **except for** 不用 **except**。**except** 表示“除外”时，被排除的人或事物与句中所述的人或事物属于同类，如：

All the radios are good in quality **except this** one.

The new radio is good in quality **except for** the case.

(3) **except for** 可位于句首，**except** 引导的短语一般不能位于句首。

(4) **except for** 后只能跟名词或代词，**except** 后除接名词外，还可接介词短语，动词不定式以及 **that** 从句，如：

a. The window is never opened **except in** summer.

b. Nothing remains for us to do, except to enjoy the fruits of our labour.

c. I know nothing about him except that he lives next door.

d. My brother usually goes to work on his bike except when it rains.

**3) excepting (一般位于句首或用于 not, without, always 之后)**

(1) Excepting him, we were all present at the meeting.

(2) Every one must act upon the decision, not excepting the director.

(人人都必须按决议办事, 连主任也不例外。)

(3) All of us, not excepting the cadres, should study science.

(我们都应该学科学, 干部也不例外。)

(4) Everybody must obey the law, not excepting those who are in high positions.

(每个人都必须遵守法律, 职位高的人也不例外。)

(5) Everyone, not excepting the pilot, survived the crash.

(每个人, 其中包括飞行员, 在这次坠机事件中都幸免于难。)

(6) Everyone was tired, always excepting John.

(大家都累了, 约翰却总是不累。)

(7) There was nobody in the classroom excepting Susan.

(8) Excepting this one, they are all right.

注: excepting 在意义上相当于 except.

**4) except that + 从句 = except for 只是... (在说明情况后, 对某个具体细节问题加以修正)**

(1) The account is correct except that the carriage is

omitted. (除了运费未列之外, 账目都很对。)

(除了运费未列之外, 账目都很对。)

(2) He is a very good student except that he is occasionally careless.

(他是个很好的学生, 只是有时粗心大意。)

(3) The exercises are well done except that there are a few careless mistakes.

(4) The molecules of ice and steam are exactly the same except that they are moving at different speeds.

(5) This second atom has exactly the same properties as the first, except that it is twice as heavy.

(6) We know nothing about the living conditions on Venus, except, perhaps, that the temperature on its surface may reach  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

(7) This suit fits me well, except that the trousers are too long.

(8) Wireless is exactly the same thing as light and heat, except that its wavelength is immeasurably longer.

(无线电与光和热完全一样, 除了其波长要长得多。)

(9) This new radio is very well made, except that its case is not so beautiful.

(10) Optical glass is similar to window glass except that it is made with particular care.

(光学玻璃同窗子上用的玻璃相似, 不过制造特别仔细。)

(11) It's a very satisfactory hat, except that it doesn't fit me.

注: except 后边也常跟由其他连词引导的从句, 如:

a. I know nothing about the accident **except** what I read in the paper.

b. He never came **except** when he was in trouble.

c. **Except** where absolutely necessary, use no compulsion.

(除了绝对必要, 不要使用强制手段。)

注: (2) **except** 后边的连词有时省去, 如:

He has no special fault **except** he smokes too much.

#### 5) with the exception of

(1) All kinds of atoms, with the exception of hydrogen has neutrons.

(2) With the exception of ice and a few other substances, all solids expand when they liquify.

(3) With the exception of the earth, no planets have been found to support any form of life.

(4) With the exception of one or two, none of us has had any previous training in the subject.

(除了一、二人以外, 我们之中没有一个人在这门科目方面先前曾受过任何训练。)

(5) The majority of bacteria, with the exception of a few, will grow better in the presence of oxygen.

(6) All the pupils passed the examination with the exception of William.

(7) I invited everybody with the exception of James.

(8) With the exception of Harry, all the boys were anxious to go.

(9) With the exception of mercury, the coefficient of



expansion of liquid varies with the temperature.

- (10) With the exception of some minor points, this textbook is admirably adapted to our use.

(除了某些小毛病之外, 这教科书对我们非常适用。)

注: with the exception of 在意义上同 except (例1—9) 或同 except for (例10)。

### 6) but

(1) All are present but one.

(2) No one but Sherlock Holmes can solve this problem.

(除了福尔摩斯, 没有人能解决这个问题。)

(3) I have no dictionary but this one.

(4) No one is qualified for the job but Comrade Wang.

(5) Energy is nothing but the capacity to do work.

(6) Don't touch any parts but the antenna.

(除天线外, 别动其他部件。)

(7) He has read all the reference books on the shelf but this one.

(8) Everybody went to the exhibition but John.

(9) I have told everybody but you.

(10) I have done all my exercises but one.

(11) Who but a fool would do such a thing?

(12) Who should be in but Mr. Smith?

(13) Whose pen is this but hers?

(14) The weight of a body is nothing but the pull of gravity toward the earth.

(物体的重量不过是拉向地心的引力。)

(15) What is there but air in the empty bottle?

(空瓶里只不过是空气。)

注(1) But用作介词时，意义为“除...外”，相当于except，常与 no, nobody, nothing, all, everybody, anywhere 一类词或与 who, what, where 等疑问词连用。

还和形容词最高级或表顺序的形容词连用，如：

a. He is the tallest student in their class but Tom.  
(除了汤姆外，他们是他们班里最高的学生。)

b. The phrase is in the last line but one on this page.  
(这个短语在这一页的倒数第二行。)

c. The laboratory stands next door but one to the office.  
(实验室就在办公室隔壁第二间。)

d. He is the last but one.  
(他是倒数第二。)

注(2) but 同 except 一样，后跟不定式，如：

a. There's nothing to do but repeat the experiment.

b. Our frontier fighters had nothing to do but to fight the battle out.  
(我边防战士只有打到底。)

c. He did nothing but consider what the teacher had said to him.

注(3) 表示“除...外”时，but 与 except 都表示整体中除去一部分，但在用 but 的句子里，着重在整体，而在 except 的句中着重在除去的部分。

## 7) apart from, aside from

(1) Apart from a slight mistake, the answer is correct.

(2) Apart from fair wear and tear, the bicycle is in excellent condition.

(除了一般的磨损外,这自行车还很好。)

(3) Apart from this one, you will have no chance to get a job.

(4) Apart from this consideration, there is no reason why we should not do so.

(5) Apart from this, I know nothing about it.

(6) Aside from the fact that they serve as a means of exchange, bank notes have practically no value of their own.

(除了起到一种交易手段的作用,钞票本身几乎没有任何使用价值。)

(7) Others aside from the captain had noticed this.

(除了船长之外,其他人都注意到了这一点。)

(8) Aside from that, the house is very modern.

(9) Small problems aside, the exhibition was a success.

(除了一些小问题,那个展览会成功的。)

(10) Aside from a fright, I was uninjured.

(除了受惊之外,我一点都没受伤。)

8) save, saving

(1) I am quite well save that I have a slight cold.

(除了稍有感冒,我身体很好。)

(2) Lei-feng never used to spend any money save to assist others.

(雷锋从不花任何钱,除了为帮助别人。)

(3) All lights are off save the one over the staircase.

(除了楼梯上面的一盏外,所有的灯都熄了。)

(4) The whole class save Peter arrived on time.

(5) All is lost save honour.

(除名誉外, 一切都丧失了。)

(6) It is a very satisfactory hat, save that it doesn't fit me.

(7) In this life we got nothing save by effort.

(在人世间, 我们不努力就一无所得。)

(8) All save him have gone to see the film.

(9) The streets are deserted save for a few cars.

(街上行人绝迹, 只有几辆汽车在行驶。)

(10) At this hour the great tunnel was quiet, save when a train roared above.

(这时分, 大隧道极其宁静, 除非火车从上轰轰隆隆轰隆隆驶过。)

(11) Nothing is wrong with him saving a slight deafness.

(12) Saving a few stones, nothing remained of the building.

9) beyond 除...以外(常用于否定句或疑问句)

(1) I know nothing about the matter beyond what we have read in the paper.

(2) Beyond writing an experiment report, I did nothing yesterday afternoon.

(3) Beyond his name, I know nothing about him.

(4) Is there anything else I can do for you, beyond what I've done?

(5) I know nothing about the matter beyond what I have been told in the letter.

(6) Have you got any other dictionary beyond this?

(7) He did nothing beyond writing one letter.

(8) We can do nothing beyond what have been done

already.

- (9) Beyond that, there is nothing more I can say.
- (10) There's not much we can do for him, beyond giving him our sympathy.
- (11) There were some so-called schools, but no other qualification was ever required of a teacher beyond "reading, writing and adding".

(那里有一些所谓的学校, 在那种学校里, 教师除了“会读, 会写和会做加法”以外, 不要求具备其他条件了。)

10) than 除...以外

- (1) How else can we come than on foot?  
(除了步行外, 我们还有什么办法前来?)
- (2) I have no other pens than this one.
- (3) To what they asked for, I could say nothing else than "no".  
(对他们的要求, 除了“不行”外, 我没有别的可说。)
- (4) The enemy had no choice than to surrender.

11) outside, outside of

- (1) Everything outside of the mind is objective reality.  
(除了我们的思想以外, 一切都是客观现实。)
- (2) Outside of this fact, I know nothing.
- (3) No one objected outside one or two.  
(除了一二人外, 没有人反对。)
- (4) No one knows where he is outside his wife.
- (5) He has few hobbies or interests outside golf and gardening.

(除了打高尔夫球和从事园艺外, 他没有什么其他的癖好或兴趣。)

- (6) Outside of John, none of us liked the play.  
 (7) Everybody will be going, outside of Comrade Chen.

**12) barring 除...以外(=bar)**

- (1) The whole group was at the party, barring John.  
 (2) Barring accidents, we ought to be there in time.  
 (3) Barring rain, we leave tonight.  
 (4) Barring a few minor defects, it is an excellent film.  
 (除了一些小缺点以外,这是一部很好的影片。)

(5) He is the best student, bar none.  
 (他是最好的学生,无人可比。)

(6) Barring those, we have ten more tapes.  
 (除了这些,我们还有十盘带子。)

**13) unless 除...以外,除非**

(1) No other metal unless iron can be used here.  
 (除了铁之外,其他金属都不能用在这里。)

(2) I am well unless that I have a cold.  
 (除了伤风外,我没有别的病。)

(3) Some wild animals are not easily tamed unless caught young.  
 (有一些野生动物,除非在其幼小时捕获,一般不容易驯养。)

(4) A body at rest remains at rest unless acted upon by an external force.  
 (除了受外力的作用,静止的物体永远保持静止。)

(5) Unless compelled to stay in (by bad weather), I go for a walk every morning.  
 (除非天气不好,不得不呆在家里,每天早晨我总要出去散步。)

(除非天气不好,不得不呆在家里,每天早晨我总要出去散步。)

(6) Unless it rains this afternoon, we'll play tennis.

(7) Nothing will come out of it, unless disaster.

(除了引起灾祸之外, 这件事不会有什么结果。)

#### 14) short of

(1) He will do anything short of murder to achieve his end.

(为了达到他的目的, 除了杀人外, 什么事他都可以做。)

(2) This is the only thing to do, short of scrapping the whole project.

(除了废弃整个计划外, 这是唯一可以办的事。)

(8) What force, short of an earthquake, could thus shake the solid walls of this building?

(除了地震, 能有什么力量这样震撼这座建筑的坚固墙壁?)

(4) The only way to visualize a brain tumor, short of a surgical brain operation, is through a complicated radio-isotope procedure.

(要直接地看到脑瘤, 除了进行颅切手术外, 唯一的办法是采用复杂的放射性同位素处理。)

(5) Short of theft, I will do anything I can do for you.

(除了偷窃外, 我什么都愿为您效劳。)

(6) Short of some tremendous accident or untoward event, it would not be anything else.

(除了是一件重大事件或不幸事件外, 这不可能是别的事。)

(7) Nothing short of an apology would satisfy him.

(唯有道歉也许能使他满意。)

(8) He expected nothing short of your happiness.

(他唯一期望的是你能幸福。)

(9) There doesn't seem to be any way of dealing with that student short of expelling him from college.

(除了开除学籍外，看来再没有什么办法来处理这个学生了。)

#### 15) other than 除...之外

(1) Any person other than yourself will be fit.

(除了你之外，任何人都合适。)

(2) It is nothing other than the usual difficulty.

(这不过是一般的困难而已。)

(8) Have you no other dictionary than this?

(你就这一本字典吗?)

(4) All metals other than noble ones are "base" metals.

(除贵重金属以外，所有的金属都是“基本”金属。)

(5) All parts of the bike other than the brakes are in good condition.

(6) No fuels other than petroleum will be fit for this purpose.

(除了石油外，其他燃料都将不适于这种用途。)

(7) We can think of no other example than this.

(除了这个例子外，我们想不出别的来了。)

(8) What result can you expect other than failure?

(除了失败以外，你能指望什么结果呢?)